

Technical Description



FibeAir[®] IP-20C

April 2019 | ETSI Version

CeraOS Release: 10.7 | Rev A

© Copyright 2019 by Ceragon Networks Ltd. All rights reserved.

Notice

This document contains information that is proprietary to Ceragon Networks Ltd. No part of this publication may be reproduced, modified, or distributed without prior written authorization of Ceragon Networks Ltd. This document is provided as is, without warranty of any kind.

Trademarks

Ceragon Networks®, FibeAir® and CeraView® are trademarks of Ceragon Networks Ltd., registered in the United States and other countries.

Ceragon® is a trademark of Ceragon Networks Ltd., registered in various countries.

CeraMap™, PolyView™, EncryptAir™, ConfigAir™, CeraMon™, EtherAir™, CeraBuild™, CeraWeb™, and QuickAir™, are trademarks of Ceragon Networks Ltd.

Other names mentioned in this publication are owned by their respective holders.

Statement of Conditions

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Ceragon Networks Ltd. shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for damage in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this document or equipment supplied with it.

Open Source Statement

The Product may use open source software, among them O/S software released under the GPL or GPL alike license ("Open Source License"). Inasmuch that such software is being used, it is released under the Open Source License, accordingly. The complete list of the software being used in this product including their respective license and the aforementioned public available changes is accessible at:

Network element site: <ftp://ne-open-source.license-system.com>

NMS site: <ftp://nms-open-source.license-system.com/>

Information to User

Any changes or modifications of equipment not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate the equipment and the warranty for such equipment.

Intended Use/Limitation

Fixed point-to-point radio links for private networks.

Authorized to Use

Only entities with individual authorization from the National Regulator to operate the mentioned radio equipment.

The equipment can be used in the following EU countries:

Austria (AT) - Belgium (BE) - Bulgaria (BG) - Switzerland/Liechtenstein (CH) - Cyprus (CY) - Czech Republic (CZ) - Germany (DE) – Denmark (DK) - Estonia (EE) - Finland (FI) - France (FR) -Greece (GR) - Hungary (HU) - Ireland (IE) – Iceland (IS) – Italy (IT) – Lithuania (LT) - Luxembourg (LU) – Latvia (LV) - Malta (MT) - Netherlands (NL) - Norway (NO) - Portugal (PT) - Romania (RO) - Sweden (SE) - Slovenia (SI) - Slovak Republic (SK) – United Kingdom (UK) – Spain (SP) – Poland (PL)

Table of Contents

1. Synonyms and Acronyms	15
2. Introduction.....	18
2.1 Product Overview	18
2.2 Unique IP-20C Feature Set.....	19
2.3 System Configurations	20
2.3.1 MultiCore 2+0 Single or Dual Polarization Direct Mount.....	21
2.3.2 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Single Polarization	22
2.3.3 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Dual Polarization	23
2.3.4 MultiCore 2+2 HSB Single Polarization	24
2.3.5 MultiCore 2+2 HSB Dual Polarization XPIC	25
2.3.6 1+1 HSB-SD	26
2.3.7 4x4 LoS MIMO.....	27
2.3.8 2x2 LoS MIMO.....	28
2.4 FibeAir IP-20C Interoperability with Other Ceragon Products.....	29
2.5 FibeAir IP-20 Assured Platform	30
2.6 New Features in CeraOS 10.5.5 and 10.7.....	31
3. IP-20C Hardware Description.....	32
3.1 IP-20C Unit Description	32
3.1.1 Hardware Architecture	33
3.1.2 Interfaces	34
3.1.3 Channel-Port Mapping to Polarization	37
3.1.4 Management Connection for 4x4 MIMO and 1+1/2+2 HSB Configurations	39
3.2 MultiCore Mediation Devices (MCMD).....	41
3.3 PoE Injector	43
3.3.1 PoE Injector Interfaces.....	43
3.4 Voltage Alarm Thresholds and PMs.....	44
3.5 Offshore and ATEX Compatibility.....	45
3.5.1 Offshore Durability	45
3.5.2 ATEX Zone II Certification.....	45
4. Activation Keys	46
4.1 Working with Activation Keys	46
4.2 Demo Mode	46
4.3 Activation Key Reclaim.....	47
4.4 Activation Key-Enabled Features	47
5. Feature Description.....	53
5.1 Unique MultiCore Architecture.....	53
5.1.1 Flexible Operating Modes with MultiCore Architecture.....	54
5.1.2 TCO Savings as a Result of MultiCore Architecture	57
5.2 Innovative Techniques to Boost Capacity and Reduce Latency	59

5.2.1	Capacity Summary	60
5.2.2	Line of Sight (LoS) MIMO	60
5.2.3	Space Diversity	69
5.2.4	Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)	72
5.2.5	Advanced Frequency Reuse (AFR)	74
5.2.6	Header De-Duplication.....	81
5.2.7	Frame Cut-Through	84
5.2.8	Multi-Carrier ABC.....	86
5.2.9	Adaptive Coding Modulation (ACM)	91
5.2.10	Multiband (Enhanced Multi-Carrier ABC)	95
5.2.10.1	Multiband Operation	95
5.2.10.2	Synchronization with Multiband Operation	97
5.2.10.3	Multiband Management	98
5.2.10.4	Limitations and Interoperability of Multiband with other Features	98
5.2.11	Cross Polarization Interference Canceller (XPIC)	99
5.2.12	Unit (External) Protection	102
5.2.13	ATPC.....	106
5.2.14	Radio Signal Quality PMs	107
5.2.15	Radio Utilization PMs	108
5.3	Ethernet Features	109
5.3.1	Ethernet Services Overview	109
5.3.2	IP-20C’s Ethernet Capabilities	125
5.3.3	Supported Standards	126
5.3.4	Ethernet Service Model	126
5.3.5	Ethernet Interfaces	142
5.3.6	Quality of Service (QoS)	151
5.3.7	Global Switch Configuration	178
5.3.8	Automatic State Propagation and Link Loss Forwarding	178
5.3.9	Adaptive Bandwidth Notification (EOAM)	181
5.3.10	Network Resiliency	182
5.3.11	OAM	187
5.4	Synchronization	192
5.4.1	IP-20C Synchronization Solution	192
5.4.2	Available Synchronization Interfaces	193
5.4.3	Synchronous Ethernet (SyncE).....	193
5.4.4	IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport	194
5.4.5	SSM Support and Loop Prevention	201
5.5	Radio Payload Encryption and FIPS.....	202
5.5.1	AES-256 Payload Encryption	202
5.5.2	FIPS 140-2 Compliance.....	203
6.	FibeAir IP-20C Management	205
6.1	Management Overview	206
6.2	Automatic Network Topology Discovery with LLDP Protocol	207
6.3	Management Communication Channels and Protocols	208
6.4	Web-Based Element Management System (Web EMS)	209
6.5	Command Line Interface (CLI).....	210
6.6	Configuration Management.....	210

6.7	Software Management	211
6.7.1	Backup Software Version	211
6.8	CeraPlan Service for Creating Pre-Defined Configuration Files	212
6.9	IPv6 Support.....	212
6.10	In-Band Management	212
6.11	Local Management	213
6.12	Alarms	213
6.12.1	Configurable BER Threshold for Alarms and Traps	213
6.12.2	RSL Threshold Alarm	213
6.12.3	Editing and Disabling Alarms and Events	213
6.12.4	Timeout for Trap Generation	213
6.13	NTP Support.....	214
6.14	UTC Support.....	214
6.15	System Security Features	214
6.15.1	Ceragon’s Layered Security Concept.....	214
6.15.2	Defenses in Management Communication Channels	215
6.15.3	Defenses in User and System Authentication Procedures.....	216
6.15.4	Secure Communication Channels	218
6.15.5	Security Log.....	220
7.	Standards and Certifications.....	223
7.1	Supported Ethernet Standards	223
7.2	MEF Certifications for Ethernet Services	224
8.	Specifications.....	225
8.1	General Radio Specifications	226
8.2	Frequency Accuracy	227
8.3	Radio Scripts	227
8.4	Radio Capacity Specifications	229
8.4.1	3.5 MHz – Script ID 1523.....	229
8.4.2	7 MHz – Script ID 1508.....	230
8.4.3	14MHz – Script ID 1509.....	230
8.4.4	28 MHz – Script ID 1504.....	231
8.4.5	28 MHz – Script ID 1505.....	231
8.4.6	28 MHz – Script IDs 1901 and 1951	232
8.4.7	28 MHz – Script ID 1534.....	232
8.4.8	40 MHz – Script ID 1507.....	233
8.4.9	40 MHz – Script ID 1527.....	233
8.4.10	40 MHz – Script ID 1902.....	234
8.4.11	40 MHz – Script ID 1537.....	234
8.4.12	56 MHz – Script ID 1502.....	235
8.4.13	56 MHz – Script ID 1506.....	235
8.4.14	56 MHz – Script IDs 1903 and 1953	236
8.4.15	80 MHz – Script ID 1501.....	236
8.5	Transmit Power Specifications.....	237
8.5.1	Pmin Power	238

- 8.6 Receiver Threshold Specifications239
- 8.6.1 Overload Thresholds246
- 8.7 Frequency Bands.....247
- 8.8 Mediation Device Losses.....259
- 8.9 Ethernet Latency Specifications260
- 8.9.1 Latency – 3.5 MHz Channel Bandwidth260
- 8.9.2 Latency – 7 MHz Channel Bandwidth260
- 8.9.3 Latency – 14 MHz Channel Bandwidth261
- 8.9.4 Latency – 28 MHz Channel Bandwidth261
- 8.9.5 Latency – 40 MHz Channel Bandwidth262
- 8.9.6 Latency – 56 MHz Channel Bandwidth262
- 8.9.7 Latency – 80 MHz Channel Bandwidth263
- 8.10 Interface Specifications.....264
- 8.10.1 Ethernet Interface Specifications.....264
- 8.11 Carrier Ethernet Functionality266
- 8.12 Synchronization Functionality.....267
- 8.13 Network Management, Diagnostics, Status, and Alarms.....268
- 8.14 Mechanical Specifications.....268
- 8.15 Standards Compliance269
- 8.16 Environmental Specifications.....269
- 8.17 Antenna Specifications270
- 8.18 Power Input Specifications270
- 8.19 Power Consumption Specifications270
- 8.20 Power Connection Options271
- 8.21 PoE Injector Specifications.....272
- 8.21.1 Power Input272
- 8.21.2 Environmental.....272
- 8.21.3 Standards Compliance272
- 8.21.4 Mechanical.....272
- 8.22 Cable Specifications273
- 8.22.1 Outdoor Ethernet Cable Specifications.....273
- 8.22.2 Outdoor DC Cable Specifications273
- 8.22.3 ATEX Glands and Cables.....274
- 9. Appendix A – Marketing Model Construction..... 275**
- 10. Appendix B – ATEX Certification 277**

List of Figures

Figure 1: MultiCore 2+0 Direct Mount Configuration	21
Figure 2: MultiCore 2+0 DP ACAP	21
Figure 3: MultiCore 2+0 DP CCDP.....	21
Figure 4: MultiCore 2+0 SP	21
Figure 5: 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Single Polarization Configuration.....	22
Figure 6: 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Dual Polarization Configuration	23
Figure 7: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Single Polarization Configuration.....	24
Figure 8: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Dual Polarization Configuration	25
Figure 9: 1+1 HSB-SD Configuration.....	26
Figure 10: 4x4 LoS MIMO Direct Mount Configuration.....	27
Figure 11: 2x2 LoS MIMO Direct Mount Configuration.....	28
Figure 12: IP-20C Rear View (Left) and Front View (Right)	32
Figure 13: Cable Gland Construction.....	33
Figure 14: IP-20C Block Diagram	33
Figure 15: IP-20C Interfaces – Descriptive Labels	34
Figure 16: IP-20C Interfaces – Letter Labels.....	35
Figure 17: IP-20C Interfaces – 2E2SX Model	36
Figure 18: Separation Criteria when Working with Two Diplexer Types.....	39
Figure 19: MIMO/Protection Signaling Cable Pinouts.....	40
Figure 20: 4x4 MIMO Configuration with External Management.....	41
Figure 21: Splitter	42
Figure 22: OMT.....	42
Figure 23: PoE Injector	43
Figure 24: PoE Injector Ports.....	44
Figure 25: ATEX-Certified Pigtails and Connectors.....	45
Figure 26: IP-20C MultiCore Modem and RFIC Chipsets	54
Figure 27: Performance Characteristics of Generic, 1+0 Single-Core Radio	54
Figure 28: Doubling IP-20C’s Capacity by Activating Second Core	55
Figure 29: Doubling Link Span While Increasing Capacity by Activating Second Core	56
Figure 30: Utilizing Increased System Gain to Reduce Antenna Size	56
Figure 31: Quadrupling Capacity by Leveraging LoS MIMO with IP-20C’s MultiCore Architecture	57
Figure 32: NLoS MIMO (Left) and LoS MIMO (Right) Compared.....	61
Figure 33: LoS MIMO – Transmitting and Receiving on a Single Frequency Channel	61
Figure 34: General LoS MIMO Antenna Setup	61
Figure 35: 4x4 MIMO: Two MultiCore Units Directly Mounted to the Antenna.....	63

Figure 36: 4x4 MIMO Configuration – Master and Slave Units.....63

Figure 37: MIMO Resiliency – Master Unit Half-Capacity Link.....64

Figure 38: MIMO Resiliency – Slave Unit Half-Capacity Link.....64

Figure 39: LoS MIMO: Criterion for Optimal Antenna Separation65

Figure 40: LoS MIMO: Optimal Antenna Separation vs. Link Distance66

Figure 41: Continuum of Optimal LoS MIMO Installation Scenarios.....67

Figure 42: Effect of Sub-Optimal Installation on Capacity (Maximum Capacity is at 1024 QAM)68

Figure 43: Asymmetrical Antenna Setup.....69

Figure 44: 1+0 Space Diversity70

Figure 45: 2+2 Space Diversity70

Figure 46: MultiCore 2+2 Space Diversity71

Figure 47: 1+1 HSB with Space Diversity71

Figure 1: Advanced Space Diversity (ASD).....72

Figure 49: ASD Data Paths.....73

Figure 48: Deployment Scenario without AFR75

Figure 49: Deployment Scenario with AFR.....75

Figure 50: Network Using Four Narrow Channels.....76

Figure 51: Converting to Wider Channels with AFR77

Figure 52: Network Requiring Densification77

Figure 53: Densification Example with AFR.....78

Figure 54: AFR 1+0 Deployment.....79

Figure 55: AFR 1+179

Figure 56: AFR 2+0 XPIC80

Figure 57: Interference Mitigation in AFR.....81

Figure 58: Header De-Duplication.....82

Figure 59: Header De-Duplication Potential Throughput Savings per Layer.....83

Figure 60: Propagation Delay with and without Frame Cut-Through85

Figure 61: Frame Cut-Through85

Figure 62: Frame Cut-Through86

Figure 63: Multi-Carrier ABC Traffic Flow.....87

Figure 64: Multi-Carrier ABC Traffic Distribution87

Figure 65: Multi-Carrier ABC Load Balancing with Different ACM Points88

Figure 66: Multi-Carrier ABC Minimum Bandwidth Override89

Figure 67: Adaptive Coding and Modulation with 11 Working Points92

Figure 68: IP-20C ACM with Adaptive Power Contrasted to Other ACM Implementations94

Figure 69: Multiband Operation.....96

Figure 70: Multiband Cable for Use with CSFP Port97

Figure 71: Dual Polarization99

Figure 72: XPIC Implementation100

Figure 73: XPIC – Impact of Misalignments and Channel Degradation101

Figure 74: 1+1 HSB Protection – Split Protection Mode103

Figure 75: 1+1 HSB Protection – Line Protection Mode103

Figure 76: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Protection – Split Protection Mode105

Figure 77: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Protection – Line Protection Mode105

Figure 78: Internal and Local Management106

Figure 79: Basic Ethernet Service Model110

Figure 80: Ethernet Virtual Connection (EVC)111

Figure 81: Point to Point EVC112

Figure 82: Multipoint to Multipoint EVC112

Figure 83: Rooted Multipoint EVC112

Figure 84: MEF Ethernet Services Definition Framework114

Figure 85: E-Line Service Type Using Point-to-Point EVC115

Figure 86: EPL Application Example116

Figure 87: EVPL Application Example117

Figure 88: E-LAN Service Type Using Multipoint-to-Multipoint EVC117

Figure 89: Adding a Site Using an E-Line service118

Figure 90: Adding a Site Using an E-LAN service118

Figure 91: MEF Ethernet Private LAN Example119

Figure 92: MEF Ethernet Virtual Private LAN Example120

Figure 93: E-Tree Service Type Using Rooted-Multipoint EVC120

Figure 94: E-Tree Service Type Using Multiple Roots121

Figure 95: MEF Ethernet Private Tree Example122

Figure 96: Ethernet Virtual Private Tree Example123

Figure 97: Mobile Backhaul Reference Model123

Figure 98: Packet Service Core Building Blocks124

Figure 99: IP-20C Services Model127

Figure 100: IP-20C Services Core128

Figure 101: IP-20C Services Flow129

Figure 102: Point-to-Point Service130

Figure 103: Multipoint Service130

Figure 104: Management Service132

Figure 105: Management Service and its Service Points134

Figure 106: SAPs and SNPs135

Figure 107: Pipe Service Points136

Figure 108: SAP, SNP and Pipe Service Points in a Microwave Network136

Figure 109: Service Path Relationship on Point-to-Point Service Path140

Figure 110: Physical and Logical Interfaces142

Figure 111: Grouped Interfaces as a Single Logical Interface on Ingress Side143

Figure 112: Grouped Interfaces as a Single Logical Interface on Egress Side143

Figure 113: Relationship of Logical Interfaces to the Switching Fabric.....147

Figure 114: QoS Block Diagram152

Figure 115: Standard QoS and H-QoS Comparison153

Figure 116: Hierarchical Classification154

Figure 117: Classification Method Priorities155

Figure 118: Ingress Policing Model159

Figure 119: IP-20C Queue Manager162

Figure 120: Synchronized Packet Loss.....163

Figure 121: Random Packet Loss with Increased Capacity Utilization Using WRED164

Figure 122: WRED Profile Curve165

Figure 123: Detailed H-QoS Diagram168

Figure 124: Scheduling Mechanism for a Single Service Bundle171

Figure 125: Network Topology with IP-20C Units and Third-Party Equipment.....181

Figure 126: ABN Entity181

Figure 127: G.8032 Ring in Idle (Normal) State.....184

Figure 128: G.8032 Ring in Protecting State184

Figure 129: Load Balancing Example in G.8032 Ring.....185

Figure 130: IP-20C End-to-End Service Management188

Figure 131 SOAM Maintenance Entities (Example)188

Figure 132: Ethernet Line Interface Loopback – Application Examples190

Figure 133: IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport – General Architecture194

Figure 134: Calculating the Propagation Delay for PTP Packets195

Figure 135: Transparent Clock – General Architecture198

Figure 136: Transparent Clock Delay Compensation199

Figure 137: Boundary Clock – General Architecture200

Figure 138 AES-256 Encrypted Link.....202

Figure 139: Integrated IP-20C Management Tools207

Figure 140: Security Solution Architecture Concept215

Figure 141: ATEX Certification for FibeAir IP-20C – Page 1 (Sample).....277

Figure 142: ATEX Certification for FibeAir IP-20C – Page 2 (Sample).....278

List of Tables

Table 1: IP-20C Feature Set	19
Table 2: New Features in CeraOS 10.5.5 and 10.7	31
Table 3: Ethernet Splitter Cable and Gland for Dual Ethernet Port	37
Table 4: IP-20C Mediation Devices	41
Table 5: Activation Key Types	47
Table 6: Capacity Activation Keys	51
Table 7: Edge CET Node Activation Keys	52
Table 8: Edge CET Note Upgrade Activation Keys	52
Table 9: TCO Comparison Between Single-Core and MultiCore Systems	58
Table 10: ACM Working Points (Profiles)	91
Table 11: Multiband Cable for Use with CSFP Port	97
Table 12: MEF-Defined Ethernet Service Types	114
Table 13: Ethernet Services Learning and Forwarding	131
Table 14: Service Point Types per Service Type	137
Table 15: Service Point Types that can Co-Exist on the Same Interface	138
Table 16: Service Point Type-Attached Interface Type Combinations that can Co-Exist on the Same Interface	139
Table 17: C-VLAN 802.1 UP and CFI Default Mapping to CoS and Color	155
Table 18: S-VLAN 802.1 UP and DEI Default Mapping to CoS and Color	156
Table 20: MPLS EXP Default Mapping to CoS and Color	156
Table 19: DSCP Default Mapping to CoS and Color	156
Table 21: QoS Priority Profile Example	172
Table 22: WFQ Profile Example	173
Table 23: 802.1q UP Marking Table (C-VLAN)	175
Table 24: 802.1ad UP Marking Table (S-VLAN)	176
Table 25: Summary and Comparison of Standard QoS and H-QoS	177
Table 26: Synchronization Interface Options	193
Table 27: Boundary Clock Input Options	200
Table 28: Boundary Clock Output Options	200
Table 29: Dedicated Management Ports	208
Table 30: Supported Ethernet Standards	223
Table 31: Supported MEF Specifications	224
Table 32: MEF Certifications	224
Table 33: Radio Frequencies	226
Table 34: General Radio Specifications	226
Table 35: Radio Scripts	227

Table 36: Radio Capacity for 3.5 MHz – Script ID 1523 -----	229
Table 37: Radio Capacity for 7 MHz – Script ID 1508 -----	230
Table 38: Radio Capacity for 14MHz – Script ID 1509 -----	230
Table 39: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script ID 1504 -----	231
Table 40: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script ID 1505 -----	231
Table 41: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script IDs 1901 and 1953-----	232
Table 42: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script ID 1534 -----	232
Table 43: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1507 -----	233
Table 44: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1527 -----	233
Table 45: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1902 -----	234
Table 46: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1537 -----	234
Table 47: Radio Capacity for 56 MHz – Script ID 1502 -----	235
Table 48: Radio Capacity for 56 MHz – Script ID 1506 -----	235
Table 49: Radio Capacity for 56 MHz – Script IDs 1903 and 1953-----	236
Table 50: Radio Capacity for 80 MHz – Script ID 1501 -----	236
Table 51: IP-20C Standard Power -----	237
Table 52: IP-20C High Power -----	237
Table 53: IP-20C Pmin Power -----	238
Table 54: Receiver Threshold -----	239
Table 55: Frequency Bands -----	247
Table 56: Mediation Device Losses -----	259
Table 57: Latency – 3.5 MHz Channel Bandwidth -----	260
Table 58: Latency – 7 MHz Channel Bandwidth -----	260
Table 59: Latency – 14 MHz Channel Bandwidth -----	261
Table 60: Latency – 28 MHz Channel Bandwidth -----	261
Table 61: Latency – 40 MHz Channel Bandwidth -----	262
Table 62: Latency – 56 MHz Channel Bandwidth -----	262
Table 63: Latency – 80 MHz Channel Bandwidth -----	263
Table 64: Ethernet Interfaces -----	264
Table 65: SPF Devices -----	264
Table 66: Approved SFP+ Modules for MIMO Extension Ports -----	265
Table 67: Carrier Ethernet Functionality -----	266
Table 68: Network Management and Monitoring -----	268
Table 69: Mechanical Specifications -----	268
Table 70: Standards Compliance -----	269
Table 71: Antenna Specifications, Remote Mount -----	270
Table 72: Power Input -----	270
Table 73: Power Consumption -----	270

Table 74: Power Connection Options-----	271
Table 75: PoE Injector Power Input -----	272
Table 76: PoE Injector Standards Compliance-----	272
Table 77: PoE Injector Standards Compliance-----	272
Table 78: Outdoor Ethernet Cable – Electrical Requirements -----	273
Table 79: Outdoor Ethernet Cable – Mechanical/ Environmental Requirements -----	273
Table 80: Outdoor DC Cable – Electrical Requirements -----	273
Table 81: Outdoor DC Cable – Mechanical/ Environmental Requirements -----	274
Table 82: ATEX Glands and Cables-----	274
Table 83: IP-20C- PP-a-fw-xxxY-ccc-h-abc -----	275
Table 84: IP-20C Marketing Model Example -----	276

About This Guide

This document describes the main features, components, and specifications of the FibeAir IP-20C system. This document applies to version 10.7.

What You Should Know

This document describes applicable ETSI standards and specifications. An ANSI version of this document is also available.

Target Audience

This manual is intended for use by Ceragon customers, potential customers, and business partners. The purpose of this manual is to provide basic information about the FibeAir IP-20C for use in system planning, and determining which FibeAir IP-20C configuration is best suited for a specific network.

Related Documents

- Release Notes for FibeAir IP-20 All-Outdoor Products, CeraOS 10.7
- User Guide for FibeAir IP-20 All-Outdoor Products, CeraOS 10.7
- FibeAir IP-20C Installation Guide
- FibeAir IP-20 Series MIB Reference

1. Synonyms and Acronyms

Acronym	Equivalent Term
ACAP	Adjacent Channel Alternate Polarization
ACCP	Adjacent Channel Co-Polarization
ACM	Adaptive Coding and Modulation
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard
AFR	Advanced Frequency Reuse
AIS	Alarm Indication Signal
ASD	Advanced Space Diversity
ATPC	Automatic Tx Power Control
BBS	Baseband Switching
BER	Bit Error Ratio
BLSR	Bidirectional Line Switch Ring
BPDU	Bridge Protocol Data Units
BWA	Broadband Wireless Access
CBS	Committed Burst Size
CCDP	Co-Channel Dual Polarization
CE	Customer Equipment
CET	Carrier-Ethernet Transport
CFM	Connectivity Fault Management
CIR	Committed Information Rate
CLI	Command Line Interface
CoS	Class of Service
DA	Destination Address
DDM	Digital Diagnostic Monitoring
DSCP	Differentiated Service Code Point
EBS	Excess Burst Size
EIR	Excess Information Rate
EPL	Ethernet Private Line
EVPL	Ethernet Virtual Private Line
EVC	Ethernet Virtual Connection
FEC	Forward Error Correction
FTP (SFTP)	File Transfer Protocol (Secured File Transfer Protocol)

Acronym	Equivalent Term
GbE	Gigabit Ethernet
HTTP (HTTPS)	Hypertext Transfer Protocol (Secured HTTP)
LACP	Link Aggregation Control Protocol
LAN	Local area network
LLF	Link Loss Forwarding
LOC	Loss of Carrier
LOF	Loss of Frame
LoS	Line of Sight
LOS	Loss of Signal
LTE	Long-Term Evolution
MEN	Metro Ethernet Network
MIMO	Multiple Input Multiple Output
MPLS	Multiprotocol Label Switching
MRU	Maximum Receive Unit
MSE	Mean Square Error
MSP	Multiplex Section Protection
MSTP	Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
MTU	Maximum Transmit Capability
MultiCore Radio System	A system optimized for flexible parallel processing of several radio signal flows, thus inherently multiplying the capacity and increasing system gain using existing spectral resources.
NLoS	Non-Line-of-Sight
NMS	Network Management System
NSMA	National Spectrum Management Association
NTP	Network Time Protocol
OAM	Operation Administration & Maintenance (Protocols)
PDV	Packed Delay Variation
PIR	Peak Information Rate
PM	Performance Monitoring
PN	Provider Network (Port)
PTP	Precision Timing-Protocol
QoE	Quality of-Experience
QoS	Quality of Service
RBAC	Role-Based Access Control

Acronym	Equivalent Term
RDI	Remote Defect Indication
RMON	Ethernet Statistics
RSL	Received Signal Level
RSTP	Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
SAP	Service Access Point
SD	Space Diversity
SFTP	Secure FTP
SISO	Single-Input Single-Output
SLA	Service level agreements
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SNP	Service Network Point
SNR	Signal-to-Noise Ratio
Sntp	Simple Network Time Protocol
SP	Service Point
STP	Spanning Tree Protocol
SSH	Secured Shell (Protocol)
SSM	Synchronization Status Messages
SyncE	Synchronous Ethernet
TC	Traffic Class
TOS	Type of Service
UNI	User Network Interface
UTC	Coordinated Universal Time
VC	Virtual Containers
Web EMS	Web-Based Element Management System
WG	Wave guide
WFQ	Weighted Fair Queue
WRED	Weighted Random Early Detection
XPIC	Cross Polarization Interference Cancellation

2. Introduction

Ceragon's FibeAir IP-20C represents a new generation of radio technology, capable of high bit rates and longer reach, and suitable for diverse deployment scenarios.

IP-20C is the first true MultiCore system in the industry which utilizes parallel radio signal processing in a compact, all-outdoor device combining radio, baseband, and Carrier Ethernet functionality to offer a future proof solution for PtP connectivity applications.

IP-20C supports cutting edge capacity-boosting techniques, such as LoS MIMO, QPSK to 2048 QAM, and Header De-Duplication, to offer a high capacity solution for every network topology and every site configuration.

This chapter includes:

- Product Overview
- Unique IP-20C Feature Set
- System Configurations
- FibeAir IP-20 Assured Platform
- FibeAir IP-20C Interoperability with Other Ceragon Products
- New Features in CeraOS 10.5.5 and 10.7

2.1 Product Overview

Ceragon's FibeAir IP-20C sets a new standard in microwave transmission, combining MultiCore radio technology, QPSK to 2048 QAM modulation, and line-of-sight (LoS) 4x4 MIMO in a compact, all-outdoor design.

FibeAir IP-20C breaks capacity barriers, offering a virtual fiber solution in licensed frequency bands. Its versatility makes it ideal for a wide variety of cost-effective deployment scenarios including macrocell backhaul, small-cell aggregation, and emerging fronthaul applications.

IP-20C is easily and quickly deployable compared with fiber, enabling operators to achieve faster time to new revenue streams, lower total cost of ownership, and long-term peace of mind.

IP-20C can deliver multi-Gbps capacity on a single frequency channel, setting a new standard for efficient spectrum use. IP-20C's unique MultiCore radio architecture is based on an advanced parallel radio processing engine, built around Ceragon's in-house chipsets. The result is superior radio performance with reduced power consumption and form-factor.

IP-20C is an integral part of the FibeAir family of high-capacity wireless backhaul products. Together, the FibeAir product series provides a wide variety of backhaul solutions that can be used separately or combined to form integrated backhaul networks or network segments.

The FibeAir series “pay-as-you-go” activation key model further enables operators to build for the future by adding capacity and functionality over time to meet the needs of network growth without requiring additional hardware.

Additionally, IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture enables operators to start with a single core with the option of enabling the second core remotely when network capacity requirements increase.

The 4x4 LoS MIMO feature adds yet another element of scalability, enabling operators to quadruple capability with the addition of a single IP-20C unit and antenna at each end of the link while utilizing the same exact frequency channel with no network replanning.

Along with its other configuration options, IP-20C can be used in Multiband configurations with FibeAir IP-20E to provide robust links that combine microwave with E-band transmissions, for capacity of up to 2.5 Gbps. In a Multiband configuration, the very high availability of microwave effectively provides a backup for the high-capacity E-Band link, thus enabling operators to benefit simultaneously from the high capacity of E-Band and the high reliability of microwave.

The following are some of the highlights of FibeAir IP-20C:

- **MultiCore Radio Technology** – Parallel radio processing engine that boosts capacity, distance and availability.
- **High Capacity and Spectral Efficiency** – 2048 QAM modulation and LoS 4x4 MIMO
- **Virtual Fiber in Licensed Frequencies** – 1 Gbps radio throughput over a single 28 MHz channel utilizing 4x4 LoS MIMO.
- **Simple Operation** – Software-defined radio, rapid deployment, and minimal truck rolls.
- **Environment-Friendly** – Compact, all-outdoor unit with low power consumption.

2.2 Unique IP-20C Feature Set

The following table summarizes the basic IP-20C feature set.

Table 1: IP-20C Feature Set

Extended Modulation Range	ACM 4-2048 QAM (11 ACM points)
Frequency Bands	5.7-42 GHz
Wide Range of Channels	3.5, 7, 14, 28, 40, 56, 80 MHz
Power over Ethernet (PoE)	Proprietary
Small Form Factor	(H)230mm x (W)233mm x (D)98mm
Antennas	Ceragon proprietary RFU-C interface Direct and remote mount – standard flange
Durable All-Outdoor System	IP66-compliant

2.3 System Configurations

FibeAir IP-20C is designed to support the following site configurations:

- MultiCore 2+0 Single/Dual Polarization
- 2 x 1+0 (East-West)
- 2 x MultiCore 2+0 SP/DP
- MultiCore 2+2 SP/DP HSB
- 1+1 HSB-SD¹
- 2x2 LoS MIMO
- 4x4 LoS MIMO
- ASD 2+0 (XPIC)

Note: For information on diplexer type and channel selection, refer to *Channel-Port Mapping to Polarization* on page 37

¹ 28 MHz channels only.

2.3.1 MultiCore 2+0 Single or Dual Polarization Direct Mount

The following figure illustrates a MultiCore 2+0 direct mount configuration. For single polarization, a splitter is used to combine the two cores. For dual polarization, an OMT is used to combine the two cores.

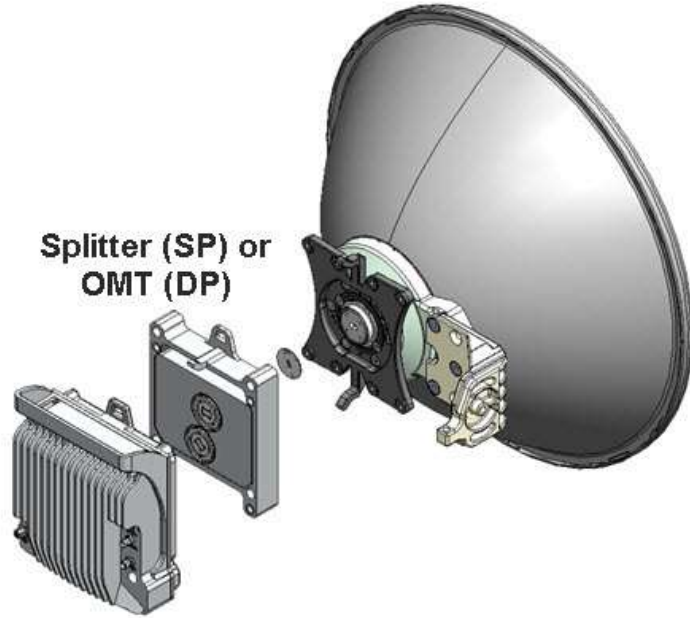


Figure 1: MultiCore 2+0 Direct Mount Configuration

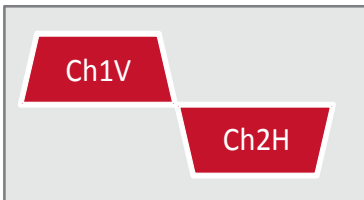


Figure 2: MultiCore 2+0 DP ACAP

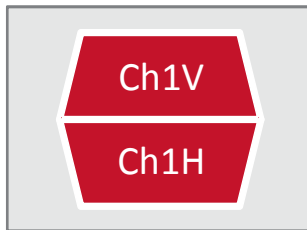


Figure 3: MultiCore 2+0 DP CCDP



Figure 4: MultiCore 2+0 SP

2.3.2 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Single Polarization

The following figure illustrates a 2 x MultiCore 2+0 single polarization configuration. The IP-20C units are directly mounted on the antenna with two splitter types.

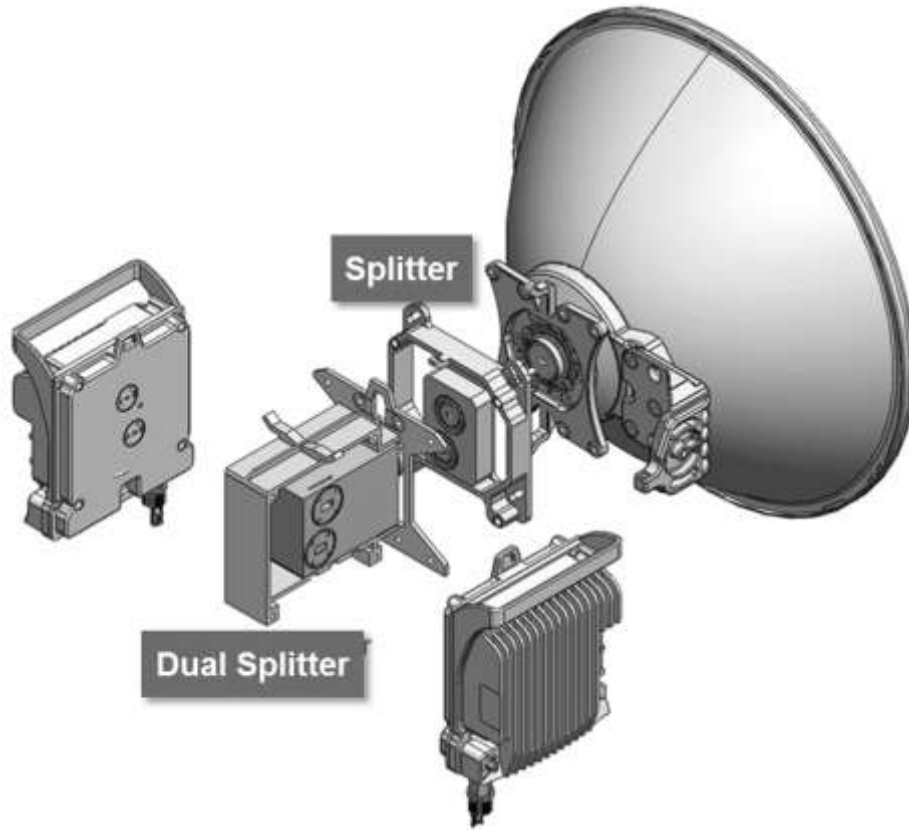


Figure 5: 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Single Polarization Configuration



2.3.3 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Dual Polarization

The following figure illustrates a 2 x MultiCore 2+0 dual polarization configuration. The IP-20C units are combined with a dual splitter, which in turn is attached to the antenna using an OMT.

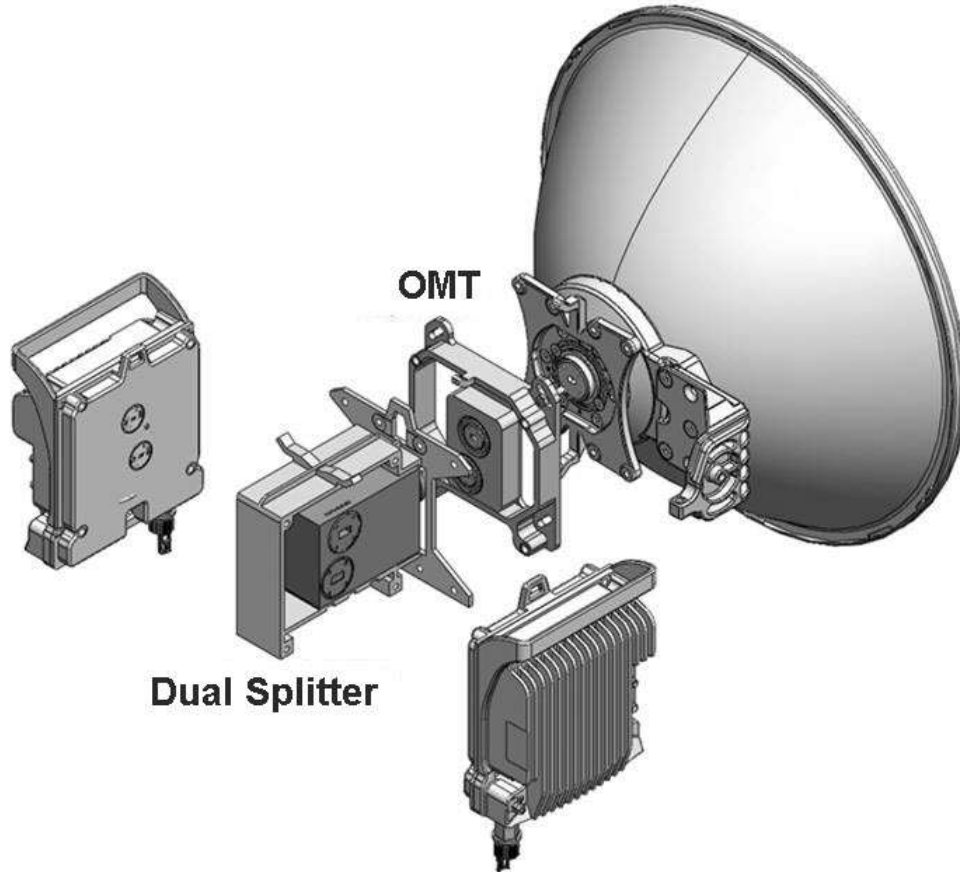
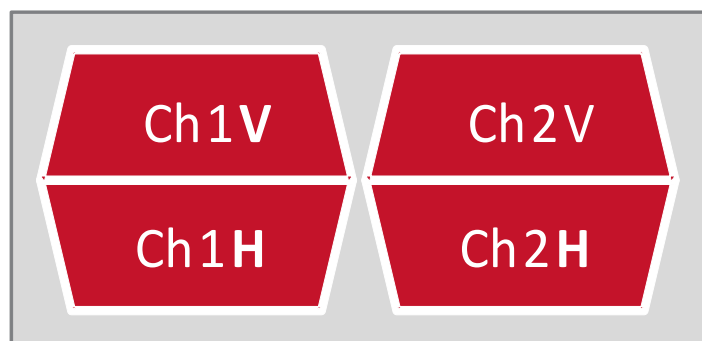


Figure 6: 2 x MultiCore 2+0 Dual Polarization Configuration



2.3.4 MultiCore 2+2 HSB Single Polarization

The following figure illustrates a MultiCore 2+2 HSB single polarization configuration. The IP-20C units are combined using a dual coupler and a splitter.

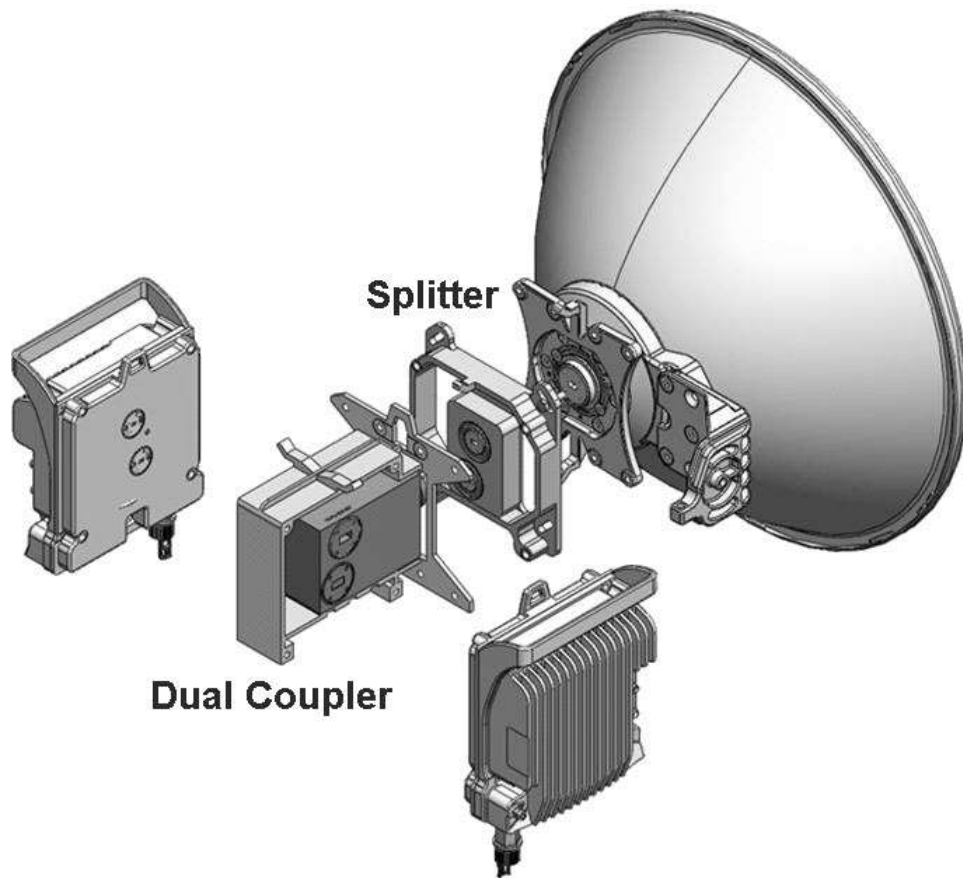


Figure 7: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Single Polarization Configuration



2.3.5 MultiCore 2+2 HSB Dual Polarization XPIC

The following figure illustrates a MultiCore 2+2 HSB dual polarization configuration. The IP-20C units are combined using a dual coupler and an OMT.

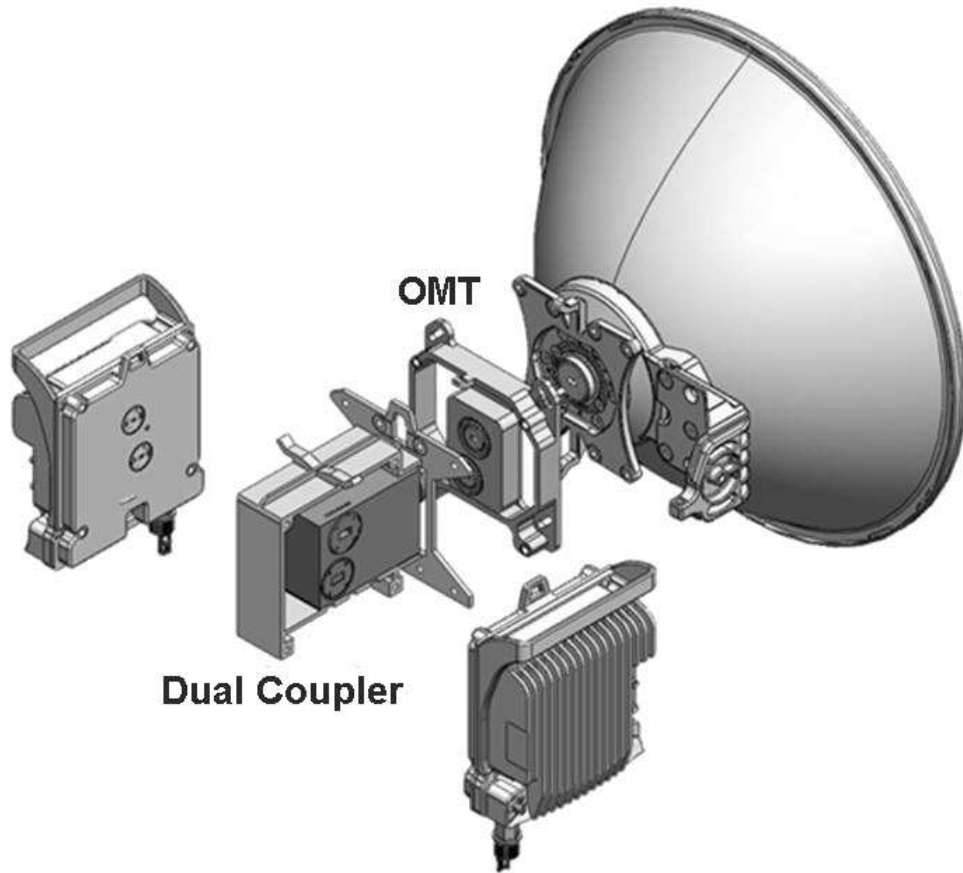
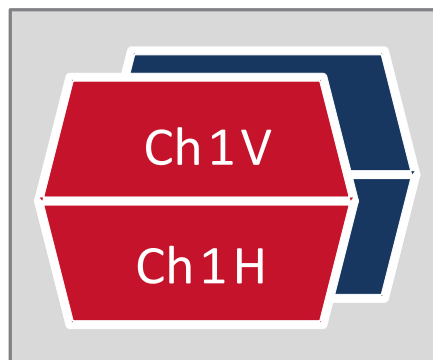


Figure 8: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Dual Polarization Configuration



2.3.6 1+1 HSB-SD

The following figure illustrates a 1+1 HSB-SD. The IP-20C units are combined using a dual coupler, with two flexible waveguides, one to the primary antenna and one to the diversity antenna. On each IP-20C unit, the transmitter connected to the diversity antenna must be muted. For details, refer to *Space Diversity* on page 69.

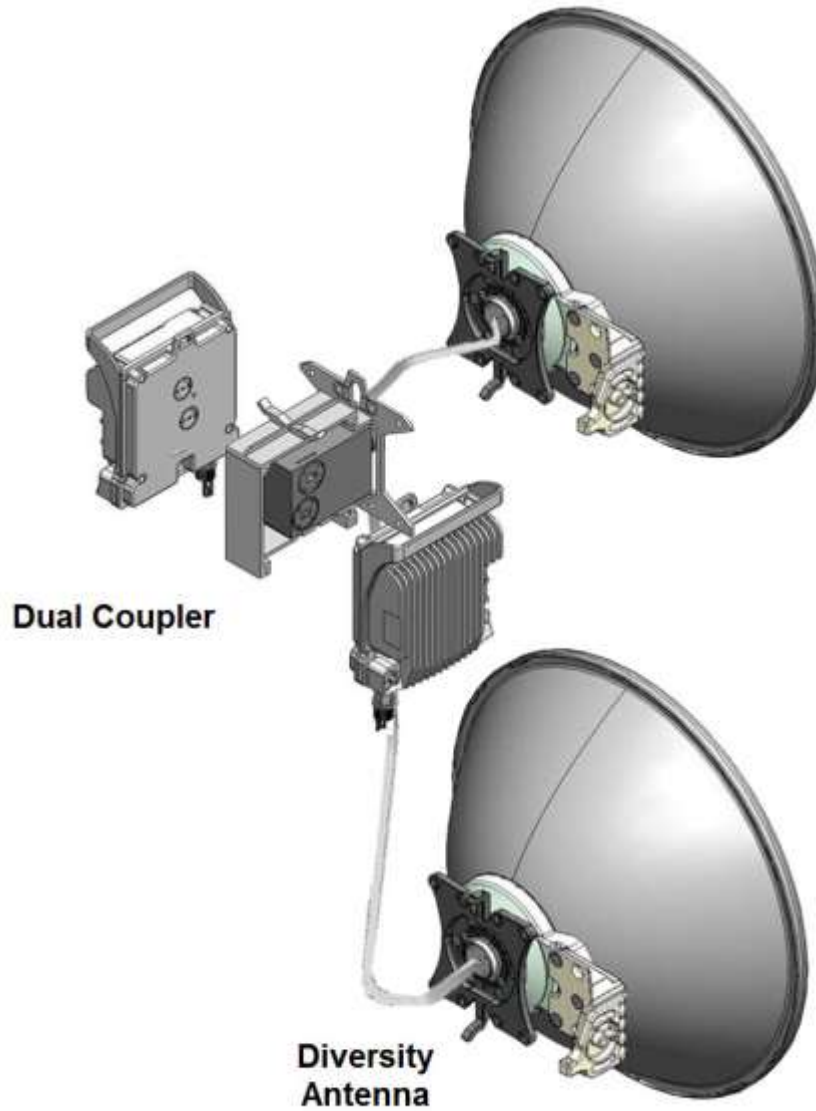
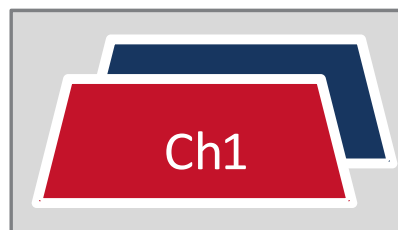


Figure 9: 1+1 HSB-SD Configuration



2.3.7 4x4 LoS MIMO

The following figure illustrates a 4x4 LoS MIMO direct mount configuration. 4x4 LoS MIMO utilizes two IP-20C units. Each unit uses dual polarization, with all four radio channels using the same frequency. Each unit is connected to an antenna using an OMT.

Note: The same configuration can be utilized for 2+2 Space Diversity (SD). In this case, the transmitters connected to the diversity antenna should be muted. For details, refer to *Space Diversity* on page 69.

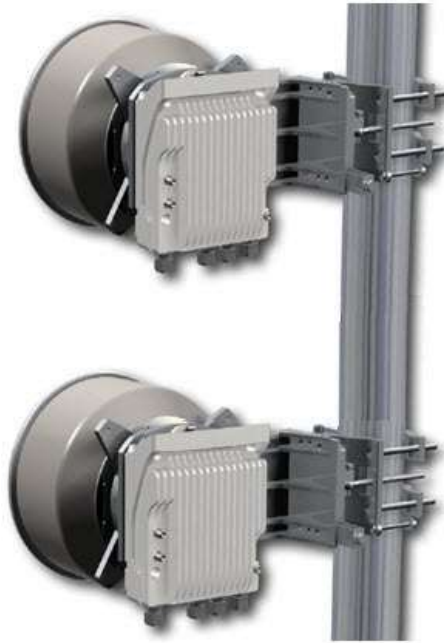
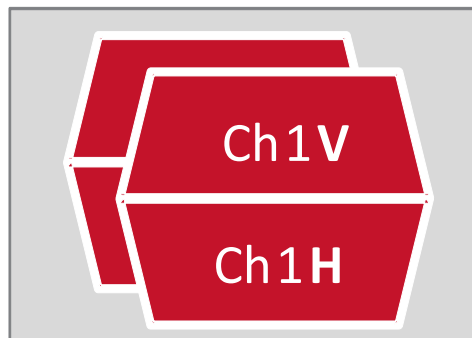


Figure 10: 4x4 LoS MIMO Direct Mount Configuration



2.3.8 2x2 LoS MIMO

The following figure illustrates a 2x2 LoS MIMO direct mount configuration. 2x2 LoS MIMO utilizes a single IP-20C unit. Each unit radio port is connected to a different antenna and utilizes the same exact RF channel.

Note: The same configuration can be utilized for 1+0 Space Diversity (SD). In this case, the transmitter connected to the diversity antenna should be muted. For details, refer to *Space Diversity* on page 69.

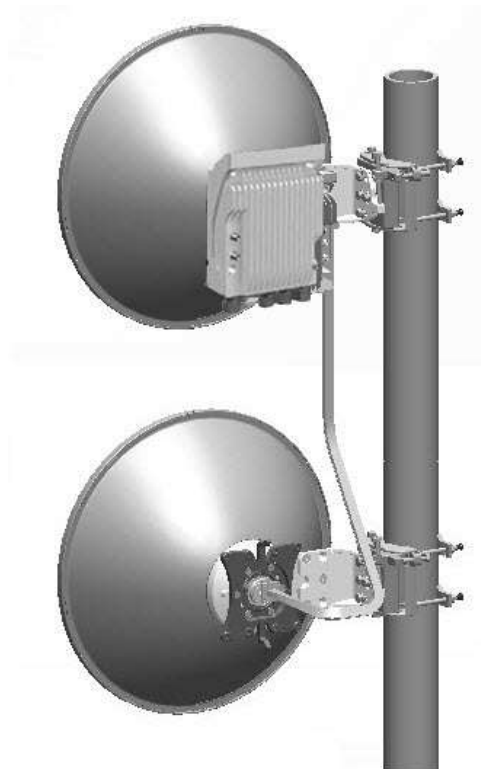
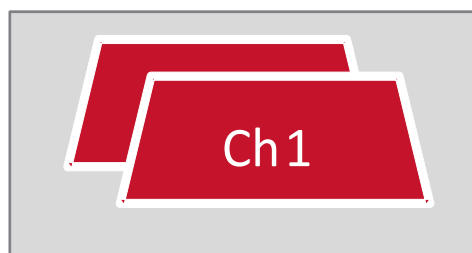


Figure 11: 2x2 LoS MIMO Direct Mount Configuration



2.4 FibeAir IP-20C Interoperability with Other Ceragon Products

IP-20C is interoperable across the link with IP-20S in 1+0 configurations over 28 MHz channels.

2.5 FibeAir IP-20 Assured Platform

Ceragon's FibeAir® IP-20 Assured platform enhances network reliability and security, ensuring that mission-critical networks maintain availability, and protecting the confidentiality and integrity of their users' data.

The FibeAir IP-20 Assured platform is compliant with FIPS 140-2, including:

- Compliance with FIPS 140-2 specifications for cryptography module.
- FIPS 140-2 Level 2 physical security.
- AES-256 encryption (FIPS 197) over radio links.

The FibeAir IP-20 Assured platform also provides:

- Secured communication and protocols for management interface.
- Centralized user authentication management via RADIUS.
- Advanced identity management and password policy enforcement.
- Security events log.
- Secure product architecture and development.

The following products are included in the FibeAir IP-20 Assured platform:

- FibeAir IP-20C Assured
- FibeAir IP-20S Assured
- FibeAir IP-20A Assured
- FibeAir IP-20N Assured
- FibeAir IP-20LH Assured
- FibeAir IP-20G Assured
- FibeAir IP-20GX Assured

Note: CeraOS 10.7 cannot be used in FibeAir IP-20 Assured platforms. For FibeAir IP-20 Assured, use CeraOS 8.3.

2.6 New Features in CeraOS 10.5.5 and 10.7

The following table lists the features that have been added in CeraOS versions 10.5.5 and 10.7, and indicates where further information can be found on the new features in this manual and where configuration instructions can be found in the User Guide.

Table 2: New Features in CeraOS 10.5.5 and 10.7

Feature	Further Information	Configuration Instructions in the User's Guide	Added in Release
Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)	<i>Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)</i> on page 72	Section 3.10, <i>Configuring Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)</i>	10.7
East-West Configuration	n/a	n/a	10.7
1588 Transparent Clock with Multiband Configurations	<i>Multiband (Enhanced Multi-Carrier ABC)</i> on page 95	Section 3.4, <i>Configuring Multiband (Enhanced Multi-Carrier ABC)</i>	10.7
Web Support for Queue-Level PMs	<i>Egress PMs and Statistics</i> on page 174	Section 7.8, <i>Configuring and Displaying Queue-Level PMs</i>	10.7
Web EMS Support for Voltage PMs	<i>Voltage Alarm Thresholds and PMs</i> on page 44	Section 11.5, <i>Configuring Voltage Alarm Thresholds and Displaying Voltage PMs</i>	10.7
Web EMS Support for SFP DDM PMs	<i>SFP DDM and Inventory Monitoring</i> on page 191	Section 4.14.2, <i>Displaying PMs about an SFP Module</i>	10.7
Stricter HTTPS Cipher Hardening	<i>HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure)</i> on page 219	Section 21.6, <i>Configuring HTTPS Cipher Hardening (CLI)</i>	10.7
Login Banner	n/a	Section 14.5, <i>Defining a Login Banner</i>	10.7
FibeAir IP-20C Four-Port Hardware Model (2E2SX)	<i>Interfaces</i> on page 34	Section 2.12, <i>Enabling the Interfaces (Interface Manager)</i>	10.5.5
SFP DDM and Inventory Monitoring	<i>SFP DDM and Inventory Monitoring</i> on page 191	Section 4.14.2, <i>Displaying PMs about an SFP Module</i>	10.5.5
Configurable Voltage Alarm Thresholds	<i>Voltage Alarm Thresholds and PMs</i> on page 44	Section 11.5, <i>Configuring Voltage Alarm Thresholds and Displaying Voltage PMs</i>	10.5.5

3. IP-20C Hardware Description

This chapter describes the IP-20C and its components, interfaces, and mediation devices.

This chapter includes:

- IP-20C Unit Description
- MultiCore Mediation Devices (MCMD)
- PoE Injector
- Voltage Alarm Thresholds and PMs
- Offshore and ATEX Compatibility

3.1 IP-20C Unit Description

FibeAir IP-20C features an all-outdoor MultiCore architecture consisting of a single unit directly mounted on the antenna.

Note: The equipment is type approved and labeled according to EU Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE).

Note that in IP-20C, Port 2 is the upper port, located closest to the handle, and Port 1 is the lower port, located closest to the Ethernet ports.

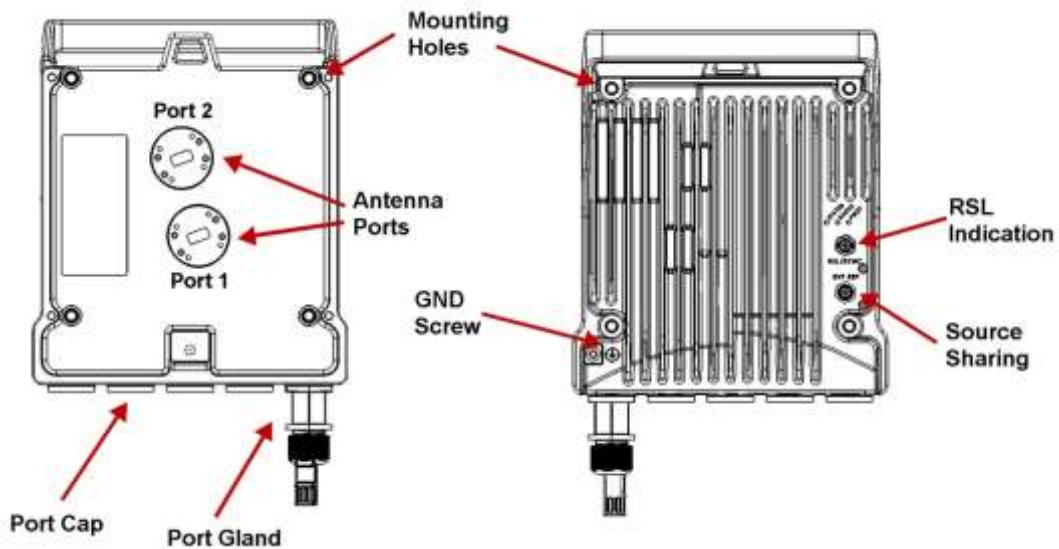


Figure 12: IP-20C Rear View (Left) and Front View (Right)

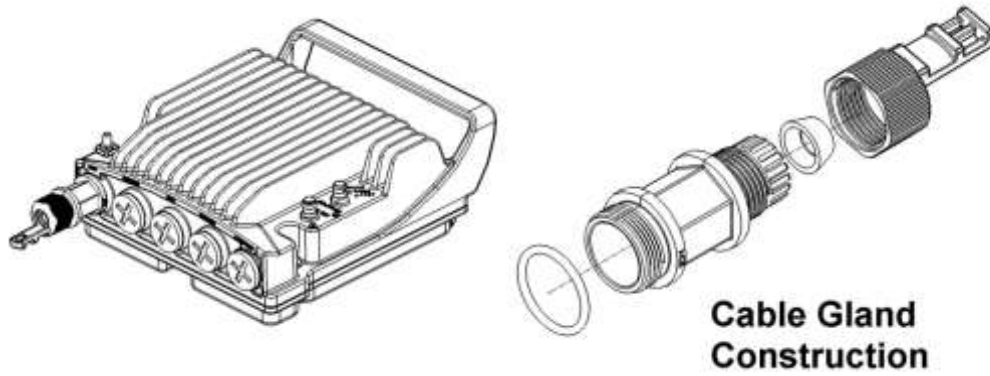


Figure 13: Cable Gland Construction

3.1.1 Hardware Architecture

The following diagram presents a detailed block diagram of the IP-20C.

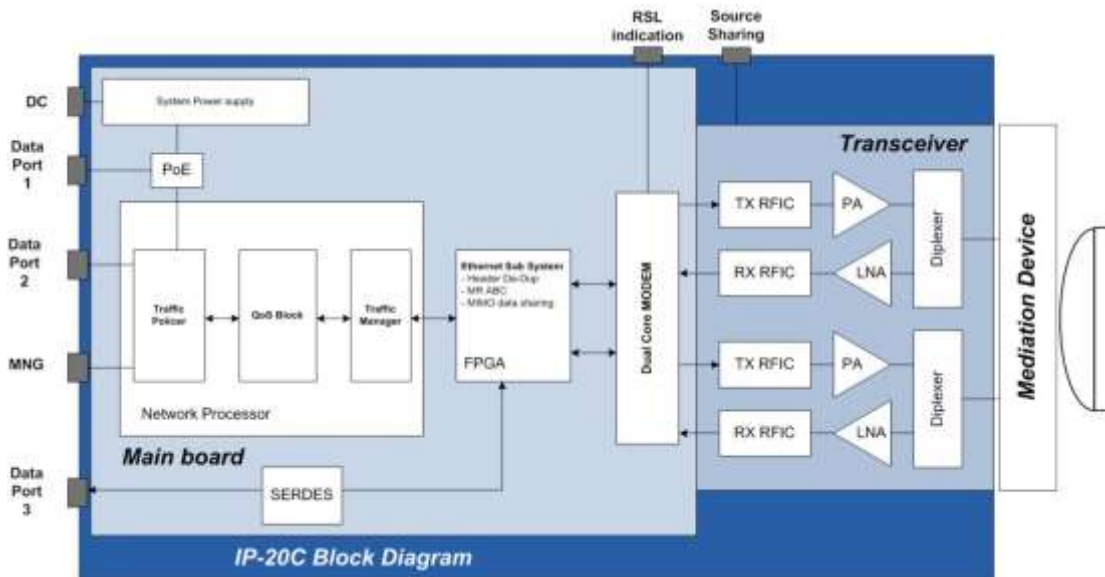


Figure 14: IP-20C Block Diagram

The IP-20C combines full system capabilities with a very compact form-fit. The all outdoor system architecture is designed around Ceragon’s IP core components, enabling a true MultiCore design.

For a detailed description of the system interfaces, refer to *Interfaces* on page 34.

3.1.2 Interfaces

IP-20C is available in several hardware models:

- IP-20C ESS – Includes one RJ-45 port and two SFP ports for Ethernet traffic.
- IP-20C ESX – Includes one RJ-45 port and one SFP port for Ethernet traffic, and an SFP+ port for use as an Extension port with MIMO 4x4 and Space Diversity 2+2 configurations.
- IP-20C 2E2SX – Includes two RJ-45 traffic ports in a single gland, as well as two SFP ports, for a total of up to four available traffic ports. In MIMO 4x4 and Space Diversity 2+2 configurations, one of the SFP ports (P4) is automatically configured to operate as an Extension port.

Note: IP-20C 2E2SX requires CeraOS 10.5.5 or higher.

Two labelling formats are available for the IP-20C ESS and ESX hardware models, as shown in the following figures.

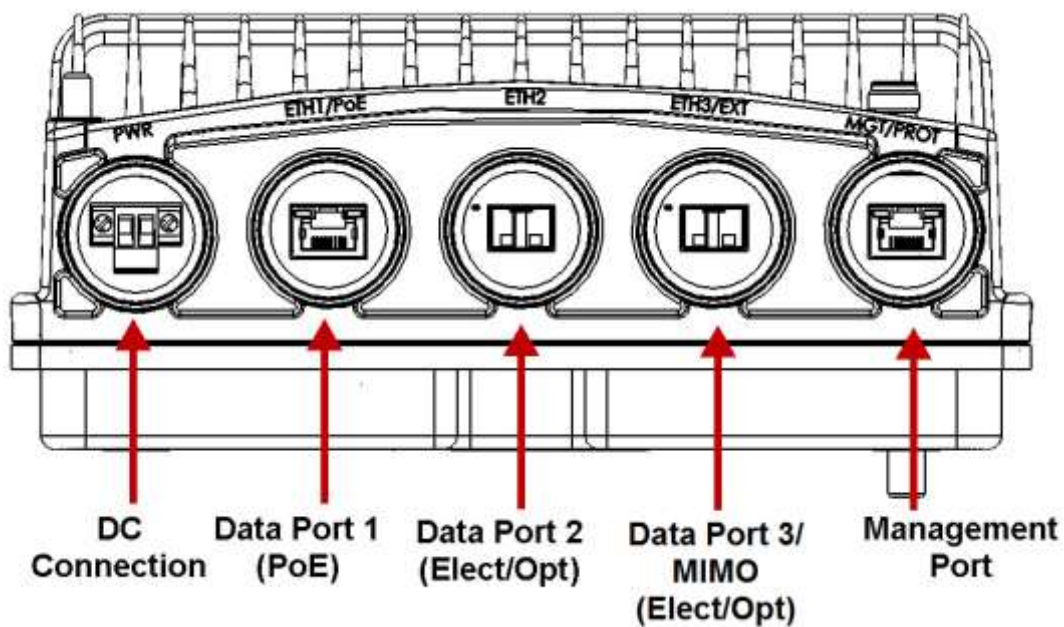


Figure 15: IP-20C Interfaces – Descriptive Labels

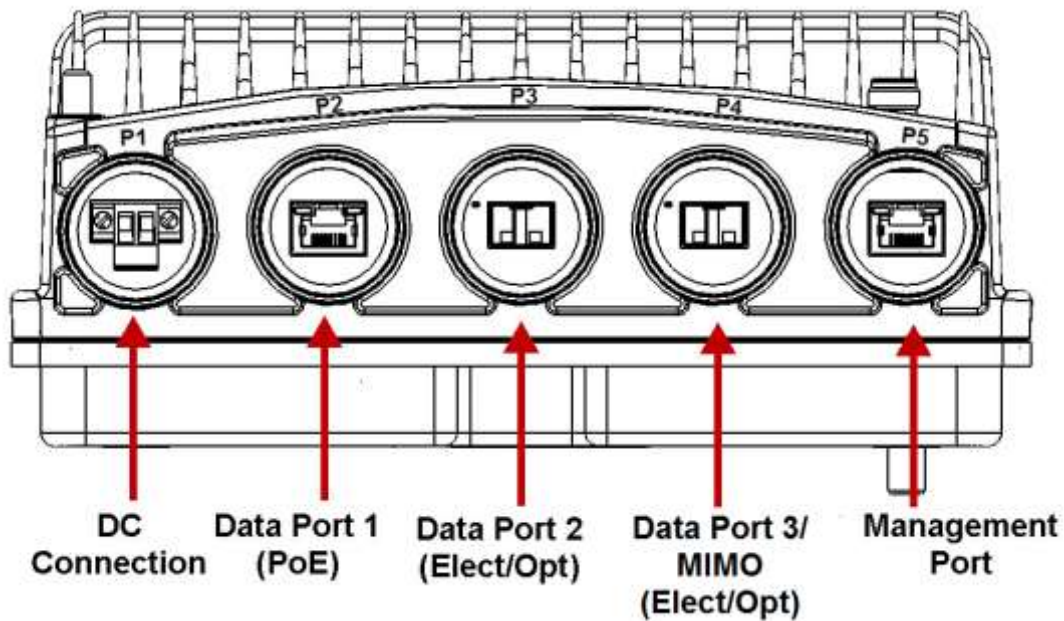


Figure 16: IP-20C Interfaces – Letter Labels

- Data Port 1 for GbE traffic:
 - Electric: 10/100/1000Base-T. Supports PoE.
- Data Port 2 for GbE traffic:
 - Electric: 1000Base-T
 - Optical: 1000Base-X
- Data Port 3/EXT
 - Electric: 1000Base-T
 - Optical: 1000Base-X)
 - Optical: Ceragon proprietary interface, if this port serves as an extension port for data sharing.

Note: For more details, refer to *Interface Specifications* on page 264.

- Power interface (-48VDC)
- Management Port: 10/100Base-T
- 2 RF Interfaces – Standard interface per frequency band
- RSL interface: BNC connector
- Source sharing: TNC connector
- Grounding screw

The 2E2SX model includes two electrical traffic ports in a single gland, in addition to two optical ports, for a total of up to four available traffic ports. This model is interoperable with other IP-20C hardware models, and supports MIMO and all other advanced IP-20C features.

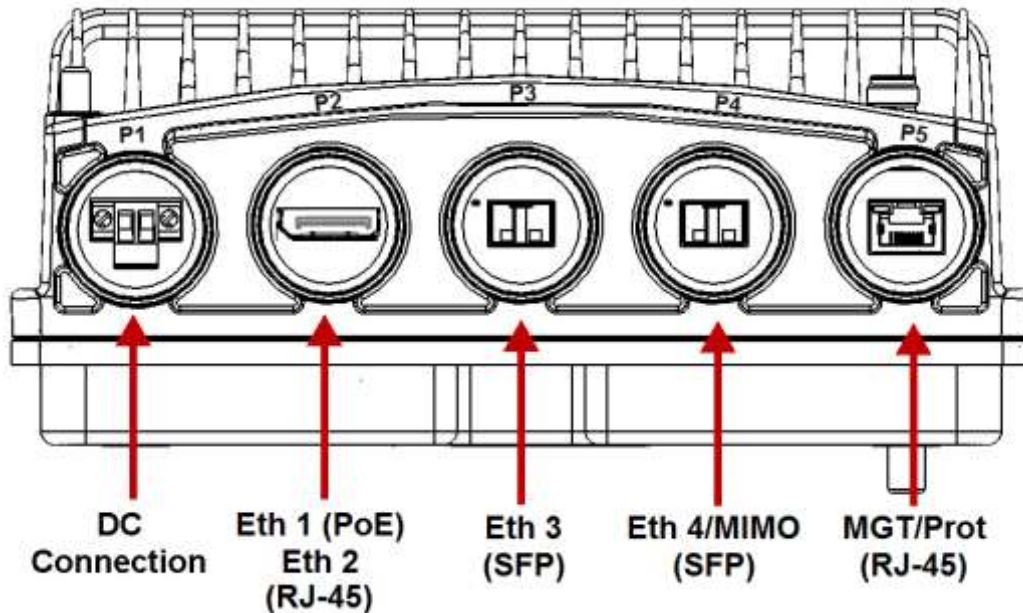


Figure 17: IP-20C Interfaces – 2E2SX Model

- Data Port 1 for GbE traffic (Eth 1):
 - 10/100/1000Base-T (RJ-45)
 - Supports PoE
 - Requires special splitter cable/adaptor
- Data Port 2 for GbE traffic (Eth 2):
 - 10/100/1000Base-T (RJ-45)
 - Requires special splitter cable/adaptor
- Data Port 3 for GbE traffic (Eth 3):
 - Electrical SFP: 1000Base-T
 - Optical SFP: 1000Base-X
- Data Port 4/EXT
 - SFP cage which supports SFP+ standard
 - 1G for traffic (Eth 4) or proprietary 10G connection when used as Extension port (automatically configured according to unit configuration)

Note: For more details, refer to *Interface Specifications* on page 264.

- Power interface (-48VDC)
- Management Port: 10/100Base-T
- 2 RF Interfaces – Standard interface per frequency band
- RSL interface: BNC connector
- Source sharing: TNC connector
- Grounding screw

A special splitter is used to enable dual connection of the cables to a physical DisplayPort on the IP-20C 2E2SX. The splitter must be ordered separately, and is provided with its own gland. The following table gives the marketing model of the splitter and gland.

Table 3: Ethernet Splitter Cable and Gland for Dual Ethernet Port

Marketing Model	Item Description
IP-20_Ethernet_Splitter_cable	CABLE,DP TO 2xRJ45F, 1.0M, WITH GLANDS, UV PROTECTED

In most configurations, P4 on the 2E2SX model can be used as a traffic port (Eth 4). However, in MIMO 4x4 and Space Diversity 2+2 configurations, P4 is used as an Extension port. When one of these configurations is applied, the system automatically configures P4 to operate as an Extension port and it is no longer available for use as a traffic port (Eth 4). In these configurations, P4 must be used with a special SFP+ module. See *Table 66*.

Note: The 2E2SX hardware model is available for 7, 15, 18, and 23 GHz frequency bands. For information about availability in additional frequencies, contact your Ceragon representative.

3.1.3 Channel-Port Mapping to Polarization

Two transceiver chains and two diplexers are embedded in each IP-20C unit. In most cases, both diplexers are the same exact type. When the diplexers are the same type, radio ports 1 and 2 cover the exact same frequency range.

In the 5.7-11GHz frequency bands, where channelization and diplexers are relatively narrow, a single IP-20C unit might have to operate in two channels that are not covered by the same diplexer.

When this is required, the IP-20C can be ordered with two different diplexer types to cover two different channel ranges within the same frequency band.

An IP-20C with the same type of diplexer assembled on both transceiver chains has the following marketing model structure:

- **Example:** IP-20C-HP-6L-252A-**1W4**-H-ESX

In this example, *1W4* indicates that both transceivers cover channels 1 through 4.

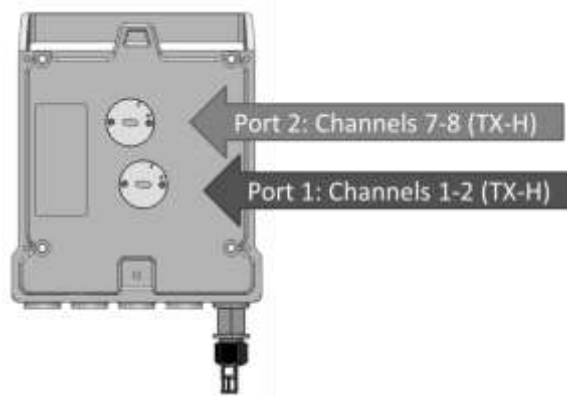
An IP-20C with two different types of diplexers has the following marketing model structure:

- **Example:** IP-20C-HP-6L-252A-**1W27W8**-H-ESX

In this example, *1W27W8* indicates that channels 1 through 2 are covered by Port1, while channels 7 through 8 are covered by Port2.

An IP-20C assembly for this example would look as follows:

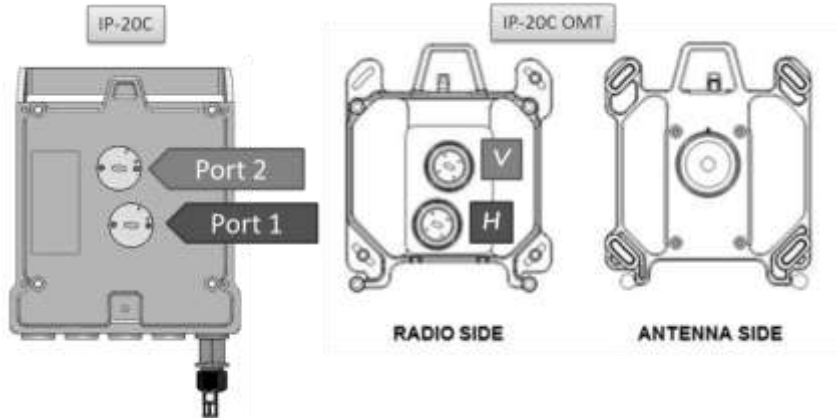
Radio Port ID (EMS ID)	Channels Coverage
Port 2	Ch 7-8
Port 1	Ch 1-2



Note: The same orientation is maintained for TX-H and TX-L units.

When installing an IP-20C unit with two different diplexers in a Multicore 2+0 DP Direct Mount configuration, the V and H ports of the OMT are mechanically connected to Port 2 and 1 respectively.

This means that in the above example, V polarization is covered by channels 7 through 8 (Port 2) and H polarization is covered by channels 1 through 2 (Port 1).

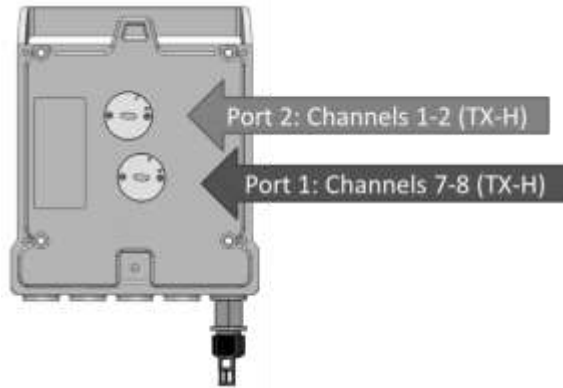


To assign the channels to different polarizations, a different system with a different marketing model should be ordered.

The following marketing model represents a system in which V polarization is covered by channels 1 through 2 (Port 2) and H polarization is covered by channels 7 through 8 (Port 1):

IP-20C-HP-6L-252A-7W81W2-H-ESX:

Radio Port ID (EMS ID)	Channels Coverage
Port 2	Ch 1-2
Port 1	Ch 7-8



Please note that when selecting two operational channels that are not covered by the same diplexer, certain TX-TX separation and TX-RX separation criteria should be met.

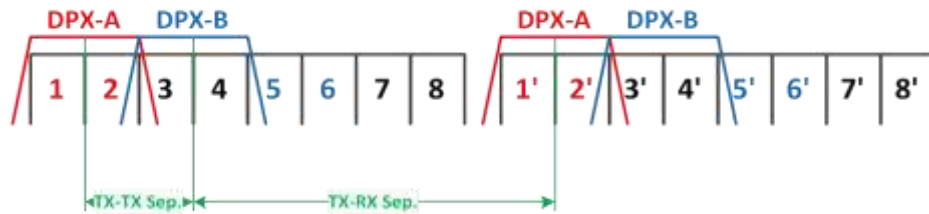


Figure 18: Separation Criteria when Working with Two Diplexer Types

Because diplexer coverage and channelization plans vary in different parts of the world for specific applications, please consult with Ceragon pre-sales representatives for support.

3.1.4 Management Connection for 4x4 MIMO and 1+1/2+2 HSB Configurations

In 4x4 MIMO and all HSB protection configurations, two Y-splitter cables and a special signaling cable must be used to connect the management ports (MGT/PROT) of the two IP-20C units and provide management access to each unit.

When Out-of-Band management is used, a splitter is required to connect the management ports to local management and to each other.

The MIMO/Protection signaling cables are available pre-assembled from Ceragon in various lengths, but users can also prepare them in the field.

The following sections explain how to prepare and connect these cables.

3.1.4.1 Preparing a MIMO/Protection Signaling Cable

The MIMO/Protection signaling cables require the following pinouts.

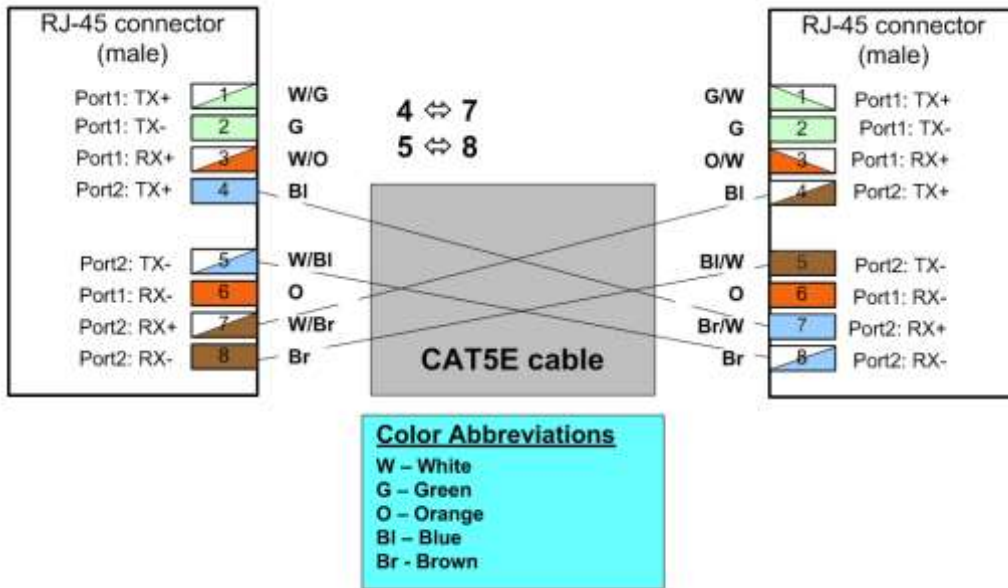


Figure 19: MIMO/Protection Signaling Cable Pinouts

Note: Other than the pinout connection described above, the cable should be prepared according to the cable preparation procedure described in the IP-20C Installation Guide.

3.1.4.2 Connecting the MIMO/Protection Splitters and Protection Signaling Cable

Each splitter has three ports:

- System plug (“Sys”) – The system plug should be connected to the IP-20C’s management port.
- Management port (“Mng”) – A standard CAT5E cable should be connected to the splitter’s management port in order to utilize out-of-band (external) management.

Note: Even for systems that use in-band management, initial configuration of a 4x4 MIMO and any HSB protection configuration must be performed manually using out-of-band management.

- MIMO/Protection signaling port (“MIMO/Prot”) – A Protection signaling cross cable, as described above, should be connected between this port and the other “MIMO/Prot” port of the second splitter on the mate IP-20C unit.

The following figure demonstrates a 4x4 MIMO configuration in which both IP-20C units are connected to an external management station and to each other, using two splitters.

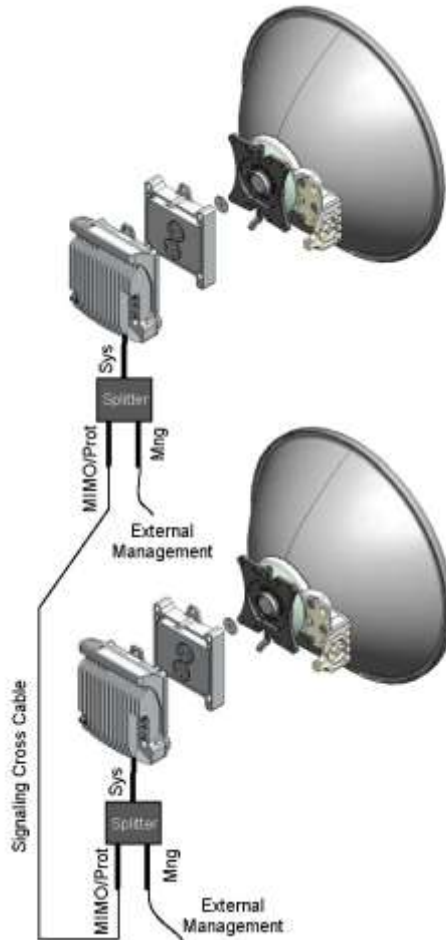


Figure 20: 4x4 MIMO Configuration with External Management

3.2 MultiCore Mediation Devices (MCMD)

The Dual Core Mediation Devices (MCMD) are designed to offer a simple and compact solution for a direct mount installation of the MultiCore IP-20C on a standard RFU-C antenna.

IP-20C is equipped with two antenna ports, which mandates the use of unique mediation devices to facilitate direct mount configurations. The following two examples show dual core mediation devices that enable the connection of a single IP-20C unit to an antenna. For the full set of mediation devices, refer to the IP-20C Installation Guide.

Table 4: IP-20C Mediation Devices

MCMD type	Functionality
Splitter	Combines the two cores using the same polarization
OMT	Combines the two cores on alternate polarizations (H,V)

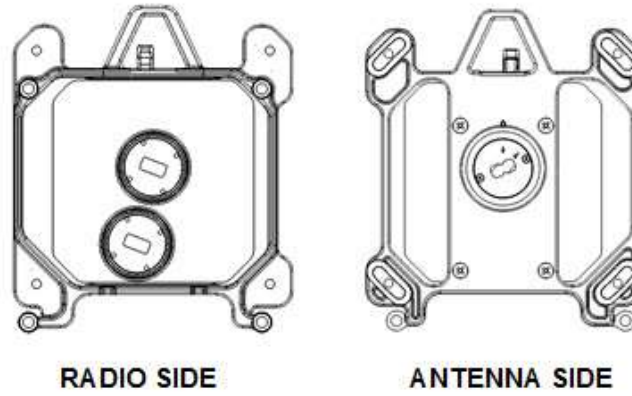


Figure 21: Splitter

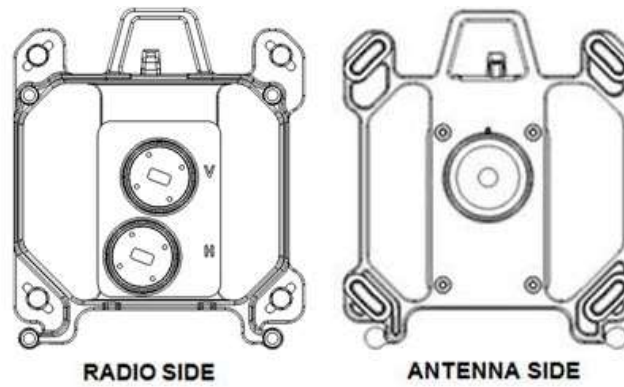


Figure 22: OMT

Note: For a detailed description of these mediation devices and how they are utilized, refer to the FibeAir IP-20C Installation Guide, DOC-00036522.

3.3 PoE Injector

The PoE injector box is designed to offer a single cable solution for connecting both data and the DC power supply to the IP-20C system.

Note: An AC-power PoE Injector option is also available. Contact your Ceragon representative for details.

To do so, the PoE injector combines 48VDC input and GbE signals via a standard CAT5E cable using a proprietary Ceragon design.

The PoE injector can be ordered with a DC feed protection, as well as EMC surge protection for both indoor and outdoor installation options. It can be mounted on poles, walls, or inside racks.

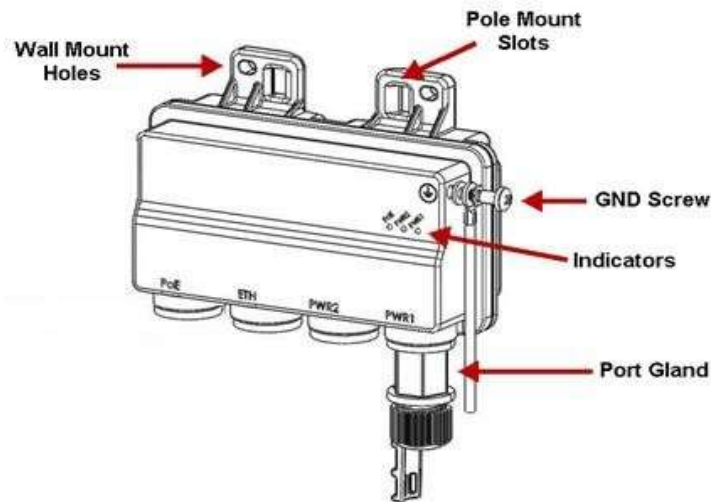


Figure 23: PoE Injector

Two models of the PoE Injector are available:

- **PoE_Inj_AO_2DC_24V_48V** – Includes two DC power ports with power input ranges of $-(18-60)V$ each.
- **PoE_Inj_AO** – Includes one DC power port (DC Power Port #1), with a power input range of $-(40-60)V$.

3.3.1 PoE Injector Interfaces

- DC Power Port 1 $-(18-60)V$ or $\pm(40-60)V$
- DC Power Port 2 $-(18-60)V$
- GbE Data Port supporting 10/100/1000Base-T
- Power-Over-Ethernet (PoE) Port
- Grounding screw

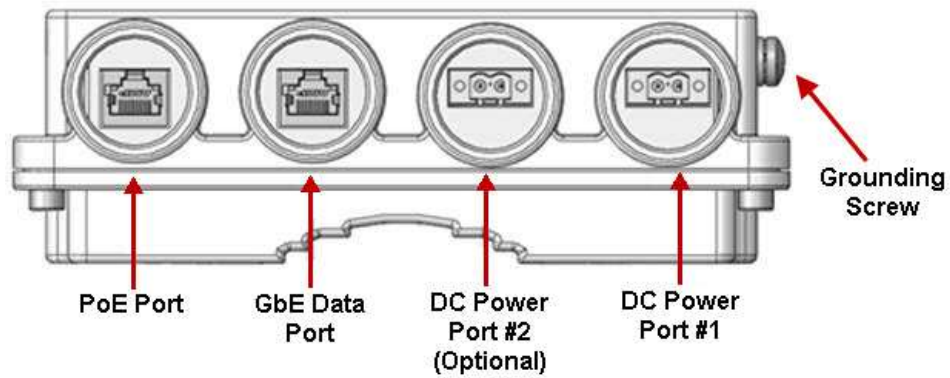


Figure 24: PoE Injector Ports

3.4 Voltage Alarm Thresholds and PMs

The allowed power input range for the IP-20C is -40V to -60V. An undervoltage alarm is triggered if the power goes below a defined threshold, and an overvoltage alarm is triggered if the power goes above a defined threshold. The default thresholds are:

- Undervoltage Raise Threshold: 32V
- Undervoltage Clear Threshold: 34V
- Overvoltage Raise Threshold: 60V
- Overvoltage Clear Threshold: 58V

These thresholds are configurable.

IP-20C also provides PMs that indicate, per 15-minute and 24-hour periods:

- The number of seconds the unit was in an undervoltage state during the measured period.
- The number of seconds the unit was in an overvoltage state during the measured period.
- The lowest voltage during the measured period.
- The highest voltage during the measured period.

3.5 Offshore and ATEX Compatibility

FibeAir IP-20C can be ordered for use in offshore and/or hazardous areas, including areas requiring ATEX Zone-2 compliance.

3.5.1 Offshore Durability

FibeAir IP-20C can be ordered with an option for offshore durability. With this option, a special coating is applied to the IP-20C unit that provides the unit with enhanced durability for harsh, salty offshore environments.

IP-20C offshore units must be ordered with special part numbers. Please contact your Ceragon representative for details.

3.5.2 ATEX Zone II Certification

FibeAir IP-20C can be ordered with hardware that has been tested and certified for ATEX Zone II use. ATEX certification indicates that the product meets the strict criteria and specifications for use in hazardous, explosive environments.

An ATEX Zone II-certified IP-20C includes the unit itself, specially-designed “pigtailed” that serve the function of glands, and special patch cords. Every ATEX-compliant IP-20C unit is pre-tested and certified for ATEX Zone 2 use.

An ATEX-compliant IP-20C is delivered with the pigtailed and patch cords factory-attached, and with unused ports hermetically sealed, according to the site’s interface requirements.



Figure 25: ATEX-Certified Pigtailed and Connectors

For a list of glands and cables used in ATEX-certified configurations, see *ATEX Glands and Cables* on page 274.

For a typical ATEX certification certificate that has been provided for FibeAir IP-20C units, see *Appendix B – ATEX Certification* on page 277.

4. Activation Keys

This chapter describes IP-20C's activation key model. IP-20C offers a pay as-you-grow concept in which future capacity growth and additional functionality can be enabled with activation keys. For purposes of the activation keys, each IP-20C unit is considered a distinct device. Each device contains a single activation key cipher.

Activation keys are divided into two categories:

- **Per Core** – The activation key is per IP-20C core, which means that two activation keys are required for a single IP-20C unit.
- **Per Device** – The activation key is per device, regardless of the number of cores supported by the device.

This chapter includes:

- Working with Activation Keys
- Demo Mode
- Activation Key Reclaim
- Activation Key-Enabled Features

4.1 Working with Activation Keys

Ceragon provides a web-based system for managing activation keys. This system enables authorized users to generate activation keys, which are generated per device serial number.

In order to upgrade an activation key, the activation key must be entered into the IP-20C. The system checks and implements the new activation key, enabling access to new capacities and/or features.

In the event that the activation-key-enabled capacity and feature set is exceeded, an Activation Key Violation alarm occurs and the Web EMS displays a yellow background and an activation key violation warning. After a 48-hour grace period, all other alarms are hidden until the capacity and features in use are brought within the activation key's capacity and feature set.

4.2 Demo Mode

The system can be used in demo mode, which enables all features for 60 days. Demo mode expires 60 days from the time it was activated, at which time the most recent valid activation key cipher goes into effect. The 60-day period is only counted when the system is powered up. 10 days before demo mode expires, an alarm is raised indicating to the user that demo mode is about to expire.

Note: Demo mode does not include AES radio encryption functionality unless a valid AES activation key has been applied for at least one carrier when demo mode is activated.

4.3 Activation Key Reclaim

If a customer needs to deactivate an IP-20 device, whether to return it for repairs or for any other reason, the customer can reclaim the device’s activation key and obtain a credit that can be applied to activation keys for other devices.

Where the customer has purchased upgrade activation keys, credit is given for the full feature or capacity, not for each individual upgrade. For example, if the customer purchased five capacity activation keys for 300M and later purchased three upgrade activation keys to 350M, credit is given as if the customer had purchased three activation keys for 350M and two activation keys for 300M.

Note: Activation Key Reclaim is only available for IP-20 devices running CeraOS 9.2 or later.

4.4 Activation Key-Enabled Features

The default (base) activation key provides each carrier with a capacity of 10 Mbps. In addition, the default activation key provides:

- A single management service.
- Unlimited Smart Pipe (L1) services.
- A single 1 x GbE port for traffic.
- Full QoS with basic queue buffer management (fixed queues with 1 Mbit buffer size limit, tail-drop only).
- LAG
- No synchronization

Note: As described in more detail below, a CET Node activation key allows all CET service/EVC types including Smart Pipe, Point-to-Point, and Multipoint for all services, as well as an additional GbE traffic port for a total of 2 x GbE traffic ports.

As your network expands and additional functionality is desired, activation keys can be purchased for the features described in the following table.

Table 5: Activation Key Types

Marketing Model	Type	Description	For Addition Information
Capacity Refer to <i>Table 6: Capacity Activation Keys</i> on page 51.	Per Core	Enables you to increase your system’s radio capacity in gradual steps by upgrading your capacity activation key. Without a capacity activation key, each core has a capacity of 10 Mbps. Activation-key-enabled capacity is available from 50 Mbps to 650 Mbps. A separate activation key is required per core.	Capacity Summary
IP-20-SL-2nd-Core-Act.		Enables use of second core.	Unique MultiCore Architecture

Marketing Model	Type	Description	For Addition Information
IP-20-SL-LLF	Per Device	Enables you to use Link Loss Forwarding (LLF) with Automatic State Propagation (ASP). Without the activation key, only one LLF ID can be configured. This means that only one ASP pair can be configured per radio interface or radio group.	Automatic State Propagation and Link Loss Forwarding
IP-20-SL-ASD	Per Core	Enables the use of Advanced Space Diversity (ASD). A separate activation key is required per core. This means that for a single link, with two IP-20C units on one side of the link and one IP-20C unit on the other side, a total of six ASD activation keys are required.	Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)
IP-20-SL-ACM	Per Core	Enables the use of Adaptive Coding and Modulation (ACM) scripts. A separate activation key is required per core.	Adaptive Coding Modulation (ACM)
IP-20-SL-Freq-Reuse	Per Core	Enables the use of Advanced Frequency Reuse (AFR). For a AFR 1+0 configuration, two activation keys are required for the hub site (one per carrier) and one activation key is required for each tail site.	Advanced Frequency Reuse (AFR)
IP-20-SL-MIMO	Per Core	Enables the use of MIMO. A separate activation key is required for each core in the MIMO configuration.	Line of Sight (LoS) MIMO
IP-20-SL-MC-ABC	Per Core	Enables Multi-Carrier ABC. A separate activation key is required per core.	Multi-Carrier ABC
IP-20-SL-Header-DeDuplication	Per Core	Enables the use of Header De-Duplication, which can be configured to operate at L2 through L4.	Header De-Duplication
IP-20-SL-XPIC	Per Core	Enables the use of Cross Polarization Interference Cancellation (XPIC). A separate activation key is required for each core in the XPIC pair.	Cross Polarization Interference Cancellation (XPIC)

Marketing Model	Type	Description	For Addition Information
IP-20-SL-Encryption-AES256	Per Carrier	<p>Enables the use of AES-256 encryption for full radio payload encryption. Note that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If no AES activation key is configured for the unit and the user attempts to enable AES on a radio carrier, in addition to an Activation Key Violation alarm the feature will remain inactive and no encryption will be performed. After entering an AES activation key, the user must reset the unit before AES can be activated. Unit reset is only necessary for the first AES activation key. If AES activation keys are acquired later for additional radio carriers, unit reset is not necessary. 	AES-256 Payload Encryption
IP-20-SL-GE-Port	Per Port	<p>Enables the use of an Ethernet port in GbE mode (10/100/1000baseT or 1000baseX). An activation key is required for each additional traffic port that is used on the device, beyond the one GbE traffic port that is enabled via the default activation key. Any of these activation keys can be installed multiple times with dynamic allocation inside the unit.</p> <p>Note: Two Ethernet ports are enabled in FE mode (10/100baseT) by default without requiring any activation key.</p>	Interfaces

Marketing Model	Type	Description	For Addition Information
Refer to <i>Table 7: Edge CET Node Activation Keys</i> on page 52.	Per Device	<p>Enables Carrier Ethernet Transport (CET) and a number of Ethernet services (EVCs), depending on the type of CET Node activation key:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Edge CET Node – Up to 8 EVCs. • Aggregation Level 1 CET Node – Up to 64 EVCs. <p>A CET Node activation key also enables the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A GbE traffic port in addition to the port provided by the default activation key, for a total of 2 GbE traffic ports. • Network resiliency (MSTP/RSTP) for all services. • Full QoS for all services including basic queue buffer management (fixed queues buffer size limit, tail-drop only) and eight queues per port, no H-QoS.² 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ethernet Service Model • Quality of Service (QoS) • Network Resiliency
IP-20-SL-Network-Resiliency	Per Device	Enables G.8032 for improving network resiliency. ³	Network Resiliency
IP-20-SL-H-QoS	Per Device	Enables H-QoS. This activation key is required to add service-bundles with dedicated queues to interfaces. Without this activation key, only the default eight queues per port are supported.	Quality of Service (QoS)
IP-20-SL-Enh-Packet-Buffer	Per Device	Enables configurable (non-default) queue buffer size limit for Green and Yellow frames. Also enables WRED. The default queue buffer size limit is 1Mbits for Green frames and 0.5 Mbits for Yellow frames.	Quality of Service (QoS)

² MSTP is planned for future release.

³ G.8032 is planned for future release.

Marketing Model	Type	Description	For Addition Information
IP-20-SL-Sync-Unit	Per Device	Enables the G.8262 synchronization unit. This activation key is required in order to provide end-to-end synchronization distribution on the physical layer. This activation key is also required to use Synchronous Ethernet (SyncE).	Synchronization
IP-20-SL-IEEE-1588-TC	Per Device	Enables IEEE-1588 Transparent Clock.	IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport
IP-20-SL-IEEE-1588-BC	Per Device	Enables IEEE-1588 Boundary Clock. ⁴	IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport
IP-20-SL-Frame-Cut-Through	Per Device	Enables Frame Cut-Through.	Frame Cut-Through
IP-20-SL-Secure-Management	Per Device	Enables secure management protocols (SSH, HTTPS, SFTP, SNMPv3, and RADIUS).	Secure Communication Channels
IP-20-SL-Eth-OAM-FM	Per Device	Enables Connectivity Fault Management (FM) per Y.1731 (CET mode only).	Connectivity Fault Management (FM)
IP-20-SL-Eth-OAM-PM	Per Device	Enables performance monitoring pursuant to Y.1731 (CET mode only). ⁵	
IP-20-SL-LACP	Per Device	Enables Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).	Link Aggregation Groups (LAG) and LACP

Table 6: Capacity Activation Keys

Marketing Model	Description
IP-20-SL-Capacity-50M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 50M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-100M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 100M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-150M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 150M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-200M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 200M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-225M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 225M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-250M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 250M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-300M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 300M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-350M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 350M, per carrier

⁴ IEEE-1588 Boundary Clock is planned for future release.

⁵ PM support is planned for future release.

IP-20-SL-Capacity-400M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 400M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-450M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 450M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-500M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 500M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Capacity-650M	IP-20 SL - Capacity 650M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-25M-50M	IP-20 SL - Upg 25M - 50M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-50M-100M	IP-20 SL - Upg 50M - 100M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-100M-150M	IP-20 SL - Upg 100M - 150M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-150M-200M	IP-20 SL - Upg 150M - 200M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-200M-225M	IP-20 SL - Upg 200M - 225M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-225M-250M	IP-20 SL - Upg 225M - 250M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-250M-300M	IP-20 SL - Upg 250M - 300M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-300M-350M	IP-20 SL - Upg 300M - 350M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-350M-400M	IP-20 SL - Upg 350M - 400M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-400M-450M	IP-20 SL - Upg 400M - 450M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-450M-500M	IP-20 SL - Upg 450M - 500M, per carrier
IP-20-SL-Upg-500M-650M	IP-20 SL - Upg 500M - 650M, per carrier

Table 7: Edge CET Node Activation Keys

Marketing Model	# of Bundled GbE Ports for User Traffic	Management Service	# of Pipe (L1) Ethernet Services	# of CET (L2) Ethernet Services
Default (No Activation Key)	1	Yes	Unlimited	-
IP-20-SL-Edge-CET-Node	2	Yes	Unlimited	8
IP-20-SL-Agg-Lvl-1-CET-Node	2	Yes	Unlimited	64

If a CET activation key is not generated on the IP-20 device upon initial configuration, the device uses by default a base smart pipe activation key (SL-0311-0). If the operator later wants to upgrade from the base smart pipe activation key to a CET activation key, the customer must use a CET upgrade activation key. The following table lists the CET upgrade activation keys:

Table 8: Edge CET Note Upgrade Activation Keys

Marketing Model	Upgrade From	Upgrade To
IP-20-SL-Upg-Pipe/Edge-CET	NG Smart Pipe Activation Key (SL-0311-0)	IP-20-SL-Edge-CET-Node (SL-0312-0)
IP-20-SL-Upg-Edge/Agg-Lvl-1	IP-20-SL-Edge-CET-Node (SL-0312-0)	IP-20-SL-Agg-Lvl-1-CET-Node (SL-0313-0)

5. Feature Description

This chapter describes the main IP-20C features. The feature descriptions are divided into the categories listed below.

This chapter includes:

- Unique MultiCore Architecture
- Innovative Techniques to Boost Capacity and Reduce Latency
- Ethernet Features
- Synchronization
- Radio Payload Encryption and FIPS

5.1 Unique MultiCore Architecture

FibeAir IP-20C is the microwave communications industry's first MultiCore microwave radio. MultiCore radio architecture marks the beginning of a new era in wireless communications, boosting microwave to new levels of capacity previously reserved to fiber optic cable.

IP-20C's unique MultiCore radio architecture is based on an advanced parallel radio processing engine built around Ceragon's proprietary baseband modem and RFIC chipsets. This architecture is optimized for parallel processing of multiple radio signal flows, and enables IP-20C to multiply capacity and increase system gain in comparison with current technology.

Utilizing common processing resources at the kernel of the radio terminal, the MultiCore system reduces power consumption and maintains a small form-factor. This makes IP-20C an advantageous choice for deployment in numerous heterogeneous network scenarios, such as small cells and fronthaul.

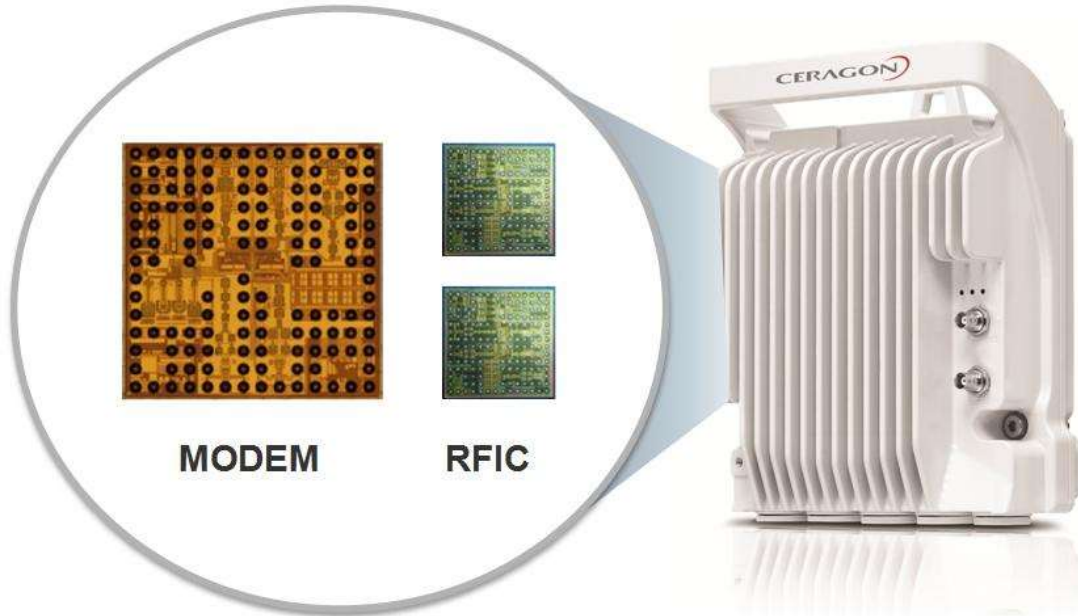


Figure 26: IP-20C MultiCore Modem and RFIC Chipsets

IP-20C’s parallel radio processing engine is what differentiates IP-20C from other multiple-core solutions, which are really nothing more than multiple radio systems compacted into a single box. IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture enables IP-20C to provide significant improvements in capacity and link distance, as well as low power consumption, smaller antennas, more efficient frequency utilization, less expensive frequency use, and a small form factor.

5.1.1 Flexible Operating Modes with MultiCore Architecture

IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture is inherently versatile and suitable for many different network deployment scenarios. IP-20C can operate as a high-capacity, single-core solution. At any time in the network’s growth cycle, the second core can be activated remotely for optimized performance.

To illustrate the many advantages of IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture, consider a generic, 1+0 single-core radio with high performance in terms of capacity, link distance, and antenna size.

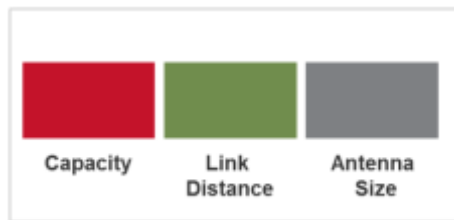


Figure 27: Performance Characteristics of Generic, 1+0 Single-Core Radio

IP-20C can operate in single-core mode, with similar parameters to a standard radio, but with additional capacity due to its ability to operate at 2048 QAM modulation.

Activating the second core does not simply double the capacity of the IP-20C, but rather, provides a package of options for improved performance that can be utilized in a number of ways, according to the requirements of the specific deployment scenario.

5.1.1.1 Doubling the Capacity

Turning on the IP-20C’s second core automatically doubles the IP-20C’s capacity. This doubling of capacity is achieved without affecting system gain or availability, since it results from the use of an additional core with the same modulation, Tx power, and Rx sensitivity. The IP-20C also maintains the same small form-factor. Effectively, activating the second core provides a pure doubling of capacity without any tradeoffs.

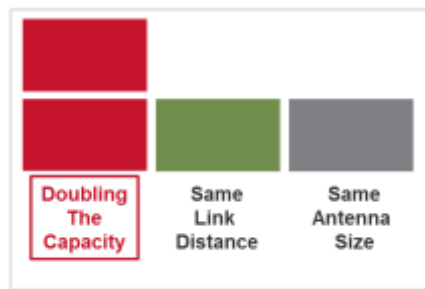


Figure 28: Doubling IP-20C’s Capacity by Activating Second Core

5.1.1.2 Doubling the Link Distance

The increased performance that IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture provides can be leveraged to increase link distance. IP-20C splits the bitstream between its two cores using Multi-Carrier Adaptive Bandwidth Control (ABC). This makes it possible to utilize a lower modulation scheme that significantly increases system gain for Tx power and Rx sensitivity. This enables IP-20C to support longer signal spans, enabling operators to as much as double their link spans.

For example, consider an IP-20C in a 1+0 configuration with only one core activated, transmitting 260 Mbps over a 28 MHz channel with 2048 QAM modulation. Activating the second core makes it possible to reduce the modulation to 64 QAM and still add capacity, from 260 Mbps to 280 Mbps, consisting of 2 x 140 Mbps over the 28 MHz channel. Reducing the modulation from 2048 QAM to 64 QAM delivers a 4dB improvement in Tx power and a 15dB improvement in Rx sensitivity, for a total increase of 19dB in system gain. This improved system gain enables the operator to double the link distance, while benefiting from a 20 Mbps increase in capacity.

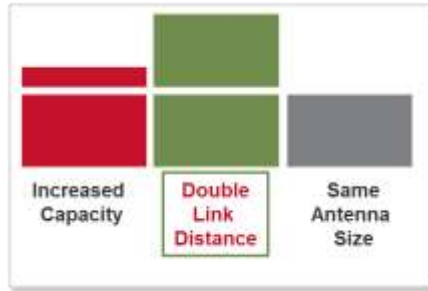


Figure 29: Doubling Link Span While Increasing Capacity by Activating Second Core

For additional information:

- Multi-Carrier ABC

5.1.1.3 Reducing Antenna Size by Half

The increased system gain that IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture makes possible can be leveraged to scale down antenna size by as much as half. In general, each doubling of antenna size on one side of the link translates into 6dB in additional link budget. The 19dB increase in system gain that IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture can provide can be exploited to halve the antenna size. This uses 12dB of the 19dB system gain, leaving 7dB to further reduce antenna size on either side of the link. This enables the operator to realize CAPEX savings from the MultiCore deployment.

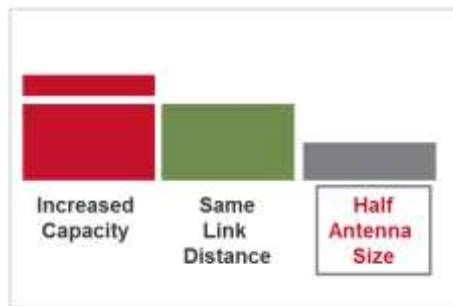


Figure 30: Utilizing Increased System Gain to Reduce Antenna Size

5.1.1.4 Frequency Decongestion and Lower License Fees

Another way in which the increased system gain that IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture makes possible can be leveraged is by taking advantage of the increased system gain to shift from congested and expensive frequency bands to uncongested and less costly higher frequency bands. The loss in link budget incurred by moving to higher frequencies is absorbed by the increased system gain provided by IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture. Relatively long-span links, which previously required operation in lower, more congested, and more expensive frequencies such as 6, 7, and 8 GHz, can be shifted to higher, less congested, and less expensive frequency bands such as 11 GHz with the help of IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture.

5.1.1.5 Quadrupling Capacity with IP-20C's MultiCore Architecture and 4x4 LoS MIMO

Two separate MultiCore IP-20C units can be deployed in a MIMO configuration, making it possible to operate a very efficient Line-of-Sight (LoS) MIMO link by leveraging MIMO and XPIC technology together with IP-20C's MultiCore architecture. With just two MultiCore IP-20C units, four independent bitstreams can be transmitted over a single frequency channel, quadrupling capacity and spectral utilization. IP-20C's 4x4 LoS MIMO capabilities enable microwave to achieve gigabits of capacity, more than enough for small-cell and other heterogeneous network deployments.

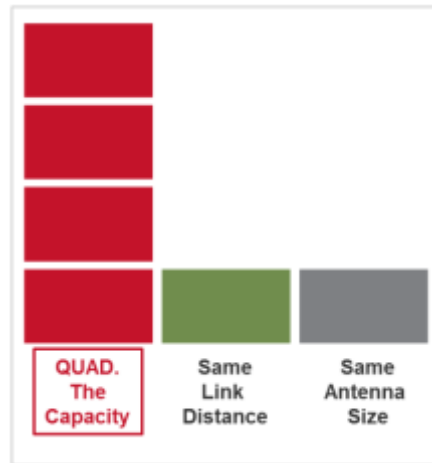


Figure 31: Quadrupling Capacity by Leveraging LoS MIMO with IP-20C's MultiCore Architecture

For additional information:

- Line of Sight (LoS) MIMO
- Cross Polarization Interference Canceller (XPIC)

5.1.2 TCO Savings as a Result of MultiCore Architecture

The various ways described above in which IP-20C MultiCore architecture can be leveraged to provide additional capacity, longer link distances, and smaller antenna side, all carry significant cost savings for operators.

Consider the common and practical scenario of a 1+0 link that must be upgraded to MultiCore 2+0 in order to accommodate growing demand for capacity. For a single-core system, the upgrade is a complicated process that requires:

- Purchasing a new radio unit.
- Sending an installation team to the site.
- Dismantling the existing radio unit.
- Replacing the single-mount radio-antenna interface with a coupler (for single polarization) or OMT (for dual polarization) to accommodate the two units.
- Re-installing the original radio unit along with the new radio unit.
- Connecting both radios to a switch in order to provide Layer 2 link aggregation (LAG), necessary to achieve a MultiCore 2+0 link.

These steps incur a high initial cost for re-installing and re-configuring the link, as well as high site leasing fees due to the additional equipment required, the larger footprint, and additional ongoing power consumption. The upgrade process involves hours of link down-time, incurring loss of revenue and impaired customer Quality of Experience (QoE) throughout the upgrade process. During its lifetime, the upgraded 2+0 single-core system will consume 100% more power than the 1+0 system and will be virtually twice as likely to require on-site maintenance.

With IP-20C, network operators can initially install the MultiCore IP-20C unit in single-core mode, with enough network capacity to meet current needs and the ability to expand capacity on the fly in the future. When an upgrade to MultiCore 2+0 becomes necessary, the operator merely needs to perform the following steps:

- Purchase an activation key for the second core.
- Remotely upload the activation key and activate the second core.

No site visits are required, and virtually no downtime is incurred, enabling customers to enjoy continuous, uninterrupted service. No additional switch is necessary, because IP-20C can use Multi-Carrier ABC internally between the two cores to utilize the multi-channel capacity, in a much more efficient manner than with Layer 2 LAG. Network operators benefit from much lower power consumption than 2+0 systems made up of separate, single-core radio units, and site leasing fees do not increase since no additional hardware is required.

The following table summarizes the cost benefits of IP-20C’s MultiCore technology in terms of TCO.

Table 9: TCO Comparison Between Single-Core and MultiCore Systems

	Single-Core system	MultiCore system
Initial Installation	1+0 link with 1+0 antenna mediation device (remote or direct mount).	2+0 installation (remote or direct mount). Only one core has an activation key and is activated.
Upgrade to 2+0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obtain new radio equipment • Send technical team to both ends of the link (at least two site visits). • Dismantle existing radio and mediation device. • Install new mediation device (OMT or splitter). • Re-install old radio with new radio. • Obtain and install Ethernet switch for 2+0 L2 LAG. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obtain activation key for second core. • Activate second core remotely. • Remotely define the link as 2+0 with L1 Multi-Carrier ABC (more efficient than LAG).
Downtime	Hours of downtime for complete reconfiguration of the link. Negative impact on end-user QoE.	Negligible downtime.
Power consumption	100% more than 1+0 link (even more with external switch).	Only 55% more power consumption than 1+0 configuration (single core).

Site leasing fees	Approximately double, since equipment is doubled.	No impact, MultiCore system within same small form factor unit
Warehouse management	Complicated, with different equipment for different deployment scenarios (standard/high power, low/high capacity).	Simple with single-spare, versatile radio for many deployment scenarios.

5.2 Innovative Techniques to Boost Capacity and Reduce Latency

IP-20C utilizes Ceragon’s innovative technology to provide a high-capacity low-latency solution. The total switching capacity of IP-20C is 5 Gbps or 3.125 mpps, whichever capacity limit is reached first. IP-20C also utilizes established Ceragon technology to provide low latency, representing a 50% latency reduction for Ethernet services compared to the industry benchmark for wireless backhaul.

IP-20C supports Line-of-Sight (LoS) Multiple Input Multiple Output (MIMO), which is the latest leap in microwave technology, enabling operators to double spectral efficiency. IP-20C’s MultiCore architecture enables operators to double and quadruple capacity over a single frequency channel with 2x2 and 4x4 MIMO configurations.

IP-20C’s Header De-Duplication option enables IP-20C to boost capacity and provide operators with efficient spectrum utilization, with no disruption of traffic and no addition of latency.

Another of Ceragon’s innovative features is Frame Cut-Through, which provides unique delay and delay-variation control for delay-sensitive services. Frame Cut-Through enables high-priority frames to bypass lower priority frames even when the lower-priority frames have already begun to be transmitted. Once the high-priority frames are transmitted, transmission of the lower-priority frames is resumed with no capacity loss and no re-transmission required.

Ceragon was the first to introduce hitless and errorless Adaptive Coding Modulation (ACM) to provide dynamic adjustment of the radio’s modulation to account for up-to-the-minute changes in fading conditions. IP-20C utilizes Ceragon’s advanced ACM technology, and extends it to the range of QPSK to 2048 QAM.

IP-20C also supports Cross Polarization Interference Canceller (XPIC). XPIC enables operators to double their capacity with a single IP-20C unit directly mounted to the antenna. The dual core IP-20C utilizes dual-polarization radio over a single-frequency channel, thereby transmitting two separate carrier waves over the same frequency, but with alternating polarities. XPIC can be used in standard MultiCore 2+0 dual polarization configurations. XPIC is also an essential building block for 4x4 MIMO, enabling each IP-20C unit to operate with two cores over the same frequency channel using dual polarization.

IP-20C can be used in MultiCore 1+1 and 2+2 HSB configurations. A 1+1 configuration can easily be scaled up into a 2+2 configuration by activating the second core on each IP-20C unit.

This section includes:

- Capacity Summary
- Line of Sight (LoS) MIMO
- Space Diversity
- Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)
- Advanced Frequency Reuse (AFR)
- Header De-Duplication
- Frame Cut-Through
- Multi-Carrier ABC
- Adaptive Coding Modulation (ACM)
- Multiband (Enhanced Multi-Carrier ABC)
- Cross Polarization Interference Canceller (XPIC)
- Unit (External) Protection
- ATPC
- Radio Signal Quality PMs
- Radio Utilization PMs

5.2.1 Capacity Summary

The total switching capacity of IP-20C is 5 Gbps or 3.125 mpps, whichever capacity limit is reached first.

Each of the two cores in an IP-20C unit can provide the following radio capacity:

- **Supported Channels** – 3.5/7/14/28/40/56/80 MHz channels
- **All licensed bands** – U5.7, L6, U6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 15, 18, 23, 26, 28, 32, 38, 42 GHz
- **High Modulation** – QPSK to 2048 QAM

For additional information:

- Radio Capacity Specifications

5.2.2 Line of Sight (LoS) MIMO

Line-of-Sight (LoS) Multiple Input Multiple Output (MIMO) is the latest leap in microwave technology, enabling operators to double or quadruple spectral efficiency.

MIMO originated as a non-line-of-sight (NLoS) technology, exploiting signal multipath caused by reflections from various physical obstacles by using multiple transmitters and receivers to increase spectral efficiency by spatially multiplexing multiple bitstreams over the same frequency channel.

In LoS microwave, the non-LoS multipath signal is weak and unusable for the purpose of MIMO. Instead, LoS MIMO achieves spatial multiplexing by creating an artificial phase de-correlation by deliberate antenna distance at each site in deterministic constant distance.

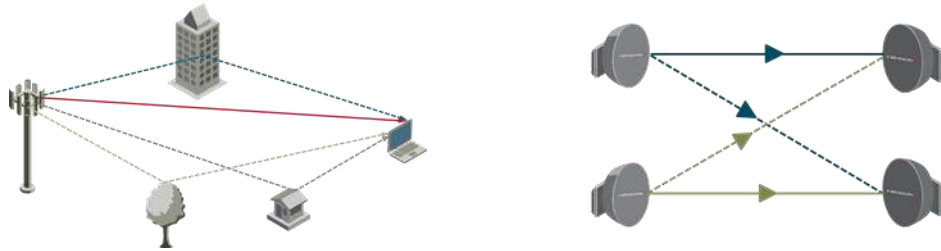


Figure 32: NLoS MIMO (Left) and LoS MIMO (Right) Compared

At each site in an LoS MIMO configuration, data to be transmitted over the radio link is split into two bit streams (2x2 MIMO) or four bit streams (4x4 MIMO). These bit streams are transmitted via two antennas. In 2x2 MIMO, the antennas use a single polarization. In 4x4 MIMO, each antenna uses dual polarization. The phase difference caused by the antenna separation enables the receiver to distinguish between the streams.



Figure 33: LoS MIMO – Transmitting and Receiving on a Single Frequency Channel

The following figure illustrates a 2x2 MIMO configuration consisting of two transmitters and two receivers on each side of the link, transmitting via two antennas on each side of the link. The antenna pairs on either side of the link are spaced at specific distances from each other based on the calculations described in Antenna Separation Criteria for LoS MIMO on page 63.

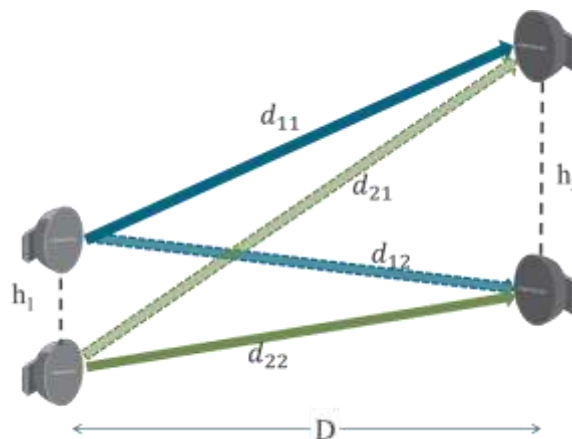


Figure 34: General LoS MIMO Antenna Setup

In this illustration:

- h_1 and h_2 represent the spatial separation between the antenna pairs at each side of the link.
- d_{11} , d_{21} , d_{12} , and d_{22} represent the signal path lengths.

- D represents the link distance.

Each signal arrives at the other side of the link at a different phase. The phases are determined by the varying path lengths which, in turn, are configurable by adjusting the degree of antenna separation.

5.2.2.1 4x4 LoS MIMO

Although the illustration above uses 2x2 MIMO for the sake of simplicity, the same basic principles apply to 4x4 MIMO.

IP-20C utilizes its MultiCore architecture to achieve 4x4 MIMO with two IP-20C units supporting four cores at each side of the link. By utilizing dual vertical and horizontal polarization, the 4x4 MIMO configuration can utilize a single frequency and just two antennas to achieve the benefits of a 4x4 configuration. This enables operators to quadruple radio throughput using the same spectrum, with half the form factor of a conventional system.

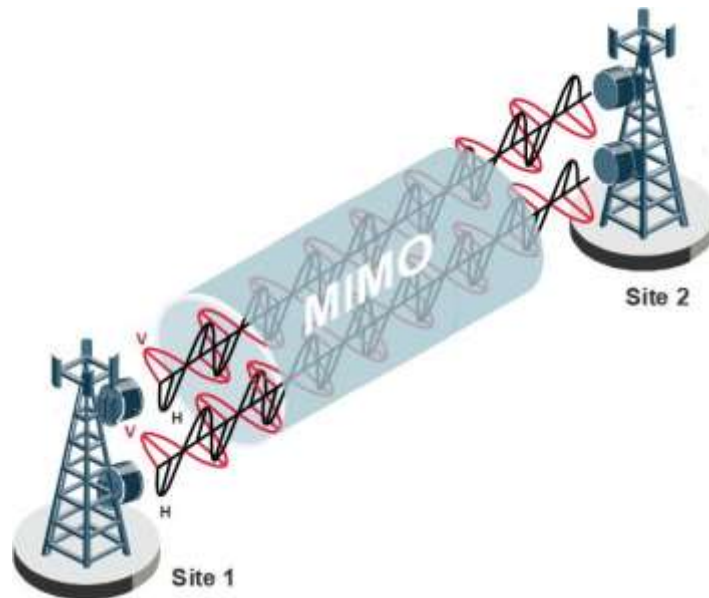


Figure 35: 4x4 MIMO: Two MultiCore Units Directly Mounted to the Antenna

5.2.2.2 MIMO Resiliency

In hardware failure scenarios, 4x4 MIMO provides a resiliency mechanism that enables the link to continue functioning as a 2+0 XPIC link. This enables continued flow of traffic on the link until full MIMO service can be restored.

Each pair of IP-20C units in a 4x4 MIMO configuration consists of a master and a slave unit, as shown in the following figure.



Figure 36: 4x4 MIMO Configuration – Master and Slave Units

The following scenarios trigger the MIMO resiliency mechanism:

- Cable failure of the Cat5 management cable used for inter-CPU communication between the two IP-20C units
- Cable failure of the coaxial cable used for clock source sharing between the two IP-20C units
- Cable failure of the data sharing optical cable between the two IP-20C units
- Master unit hardware fault
- Slave unit hardware fault
- Clock source failure in the master unit

In the event of a cable failure or total loss of the slave unit, the local and remote slave units are muted and the master units continue to function as a 2+0 XPIC link, with half the capacity of the original MIMO link.



Figure 37: MIMO Resiliency – Master Unit Half-Capacity Link

In the event of a total loss of the master unit or a clock source failure in the master unit, the local and remote master units are muted and the slave units continue to function as a 2+0 XPIC link, with half the capacity of the original MIMO link.



Figure 38: MIMO Resiliency – Slave Unit Half-Capacity Link

Switchover to half-capacity operation is automatic, and takes approximately 30 seconds.

To restore full MIMO operation, the faulty equipment must be replaced. The replacement equipment must be pre-configured to the same configuration as the equipment being replaced. Once the new equipment has been properly installed and, if necessary, powered up, the system automatically reverts to full 4x4 MIMO operation, with no user intervention required.

5.2.2.3 Benefits of LoS MIMO

Increased Capacity

2x2 LoS MIMO enables transmission of two independent bitstreams over the same frequency channel, using the same polarization, doubling the capacity of a single SISO Link (same capacity as XPIC but using only one polarization).

4X4 LoS MIMO, with dual polarization, enables transmission of four independent bitstreams over the same frequency channel, quadrupling the capacity of a single SISO link.

Reduced Spectrum License Fees

Beyond the increase in capacity that MIMO provides, MIMO enables operators to multiply spectral efficiency, thereby spending up to 50% less on frequency licensing fees.

Improved System Gain

Combining received signals from both antennas in a MIMO system boosts system gain by 3dB. This is similar to the improvement that can be achieved by space diversity systems with IF combining.

Further improvement to system gain can be achieved as a tradeoff for some of the increased capacity MIMO provides by reducing the modulation scheme, thereby increasing both Tx power and Rx sensitivity. In this way, system gain can be increased by up to 20dB. This increase can be used to increase link distances or reduce antenna size. It can also enable the operator to utilize higher frequencies for long-distance links.

5.2.2.4 Antenna Separation Criteria for LoS MIMO

The following equation provides the criterion for optimal antenna separation in a LoS MIMO configuration:

$$h_1 \cdot h_2 = \frac{D \cdot c}{2f}$$

Figure 39: LoS MIMO: Criterion for Optimal Antenna Separation

In this equation:

- h_1 and h_2 denote the respective lengths of antenna separation on both sides of the link (in meters).
- D denotes the link distance (in meters).
- c denotes the speed of light ($3 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{sec}$).
- f denotes the link frequency (in Hz).

In a symmetrical topology, that is, a link topology in which the antenna separation is equal on both sides of the link, the following equation provides the optimal antenna separation distance:

LoS MIMO: Criterion for Optimal Antenna Separation in Symmetrical Topology

$$h_{optimal} = \sqrt{\frac{D \cdot c}{2f}}$$

The following diagram provides a rough idea of the separation required between antennas for different link spans using different frequencies.

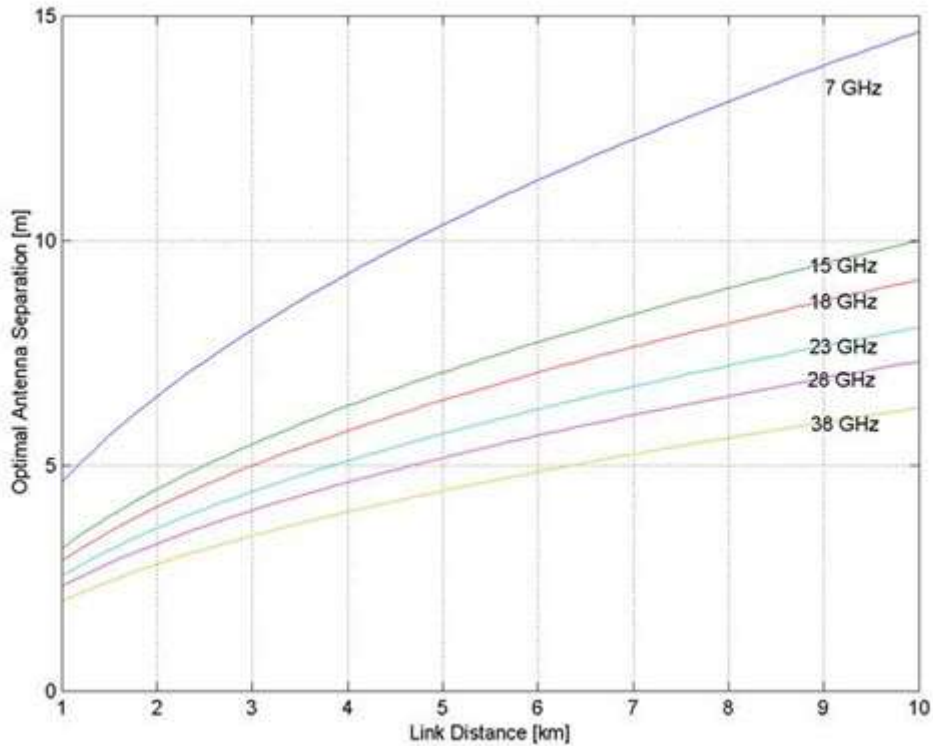


Figure 40: LoS MIMO: Optimal Antenna Separation vs. Link Distance

It is important to note that antenna separation does not have to be symmetrical. Link topologies will often be constrained by factors that limit antenna separation on one side of the link, such as tower space and mechanical load. Link planners can compensate for such constraints by adjusting the antenna separation on the other side of the link so that the product of the antenna separation length satisfies the equation for Optimal Antenna Separation. Refer to *Figure 39: LoS MIMO: Criterion for Optimal Antenna Separation* on page 65.

5.2.2.5 LoS MIMO Link Robustness

One of the main considerations with LoS MIMO operation is the sensitivity of the link to the accuracy of the installation: how does inaccurate antenna separation affect the quality of the MIMO link? The following figure shows antenna separation sensitivity in IP-20C’s MIMO implementation.

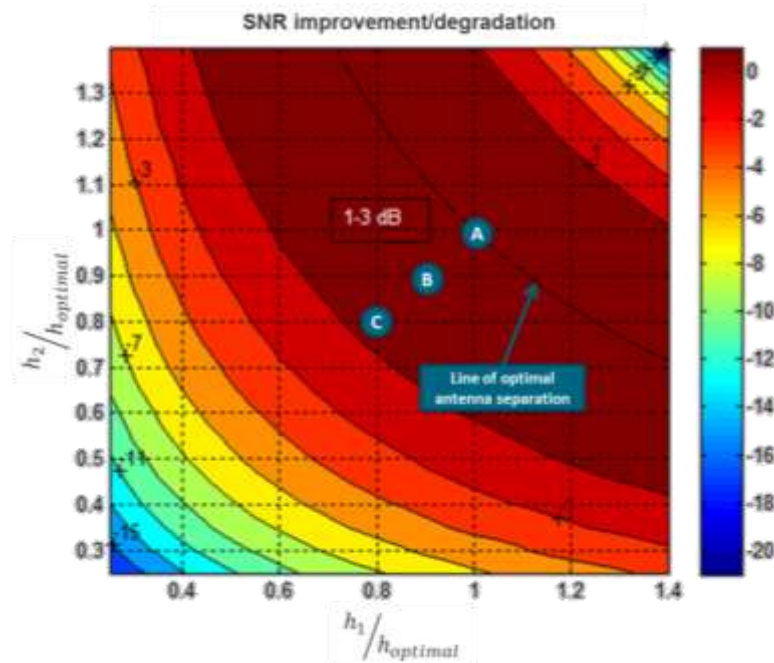


Figure 41: Continuum of Optimal LoS MIMO Installation Scenarios

This figure shows how signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) or equivalently, mean square error (MSE), is affected by using sub-optimal antenna separation, relative to the optimal separation, $h_{optimal}$. In the case of optimal installation (point A), a 3dB MSE improvement is achieved compared to a 1+0 SISO link. It also demonstrates that the tradeoff between antenna separation on both sides of the link yields a continuous line of optimal installation scenarios, and that sub-optimal antenna separation on one side can be offset by the separation on the opposite side.

So, for example, in cases where deviation in antenna separation is 10% on each side (point B), approximately 1dB in MSE may be lost compared to an optimal installation, yielding only a 2dB MIMO gain (compared to a 1+0 SISO link).

A second example demonstrates that 20% deviation on each side (point C) will lead to a similar MSE as in the SISO reference (3dB decline cancelling the 3dB MIMO gain), but still enjoying most of the capacity gain of MIMO. This shows that IP-20C’s LoS MIMO implementation is quite immune to sub-optimal antenna installation, and perfect accuracy does not have to be established during installation in order to gain the capacity benefit.

The following figure further demonstrates how sub-optimal antenna separation affects capacity relative to an optimal installation.

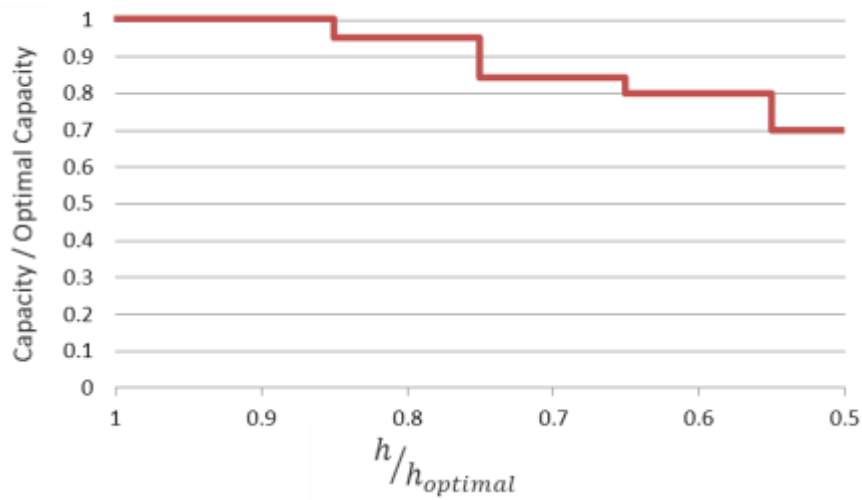


Figure 42: Effect of Sub-Optimal Installation on Capacity (Maximum Capacity is at 1024 QAM)

5.2.2.6 Antenna Characteristics for LoS MIMO

Although it may be convenient to separate antennas vertically in certain deployments, such as on masts and poles, MIMO antenna separation does not need to be vertical. Horizontal or diagonal separation provide the same performance as vertical separation, as long as the separation distances adhere to the formula for optimal antenna separation. Both sides of the link must be consistent in this regard, e.g., both horizontal, both diagonal, or both vertical.

For each signal, both signal paths must be received at the same power level. This means that if, for any reason, the size of one of the antennas needs to be smaller, the link budget must be compensated. As shown in the figure below, this can be achieved in either of the following ways:

- Lowering TX power on the antenna that is paired with the smaller antenna, as shown in Figure B below.
- Matching the size of both antennas in the pair, as shown in Figure C below.

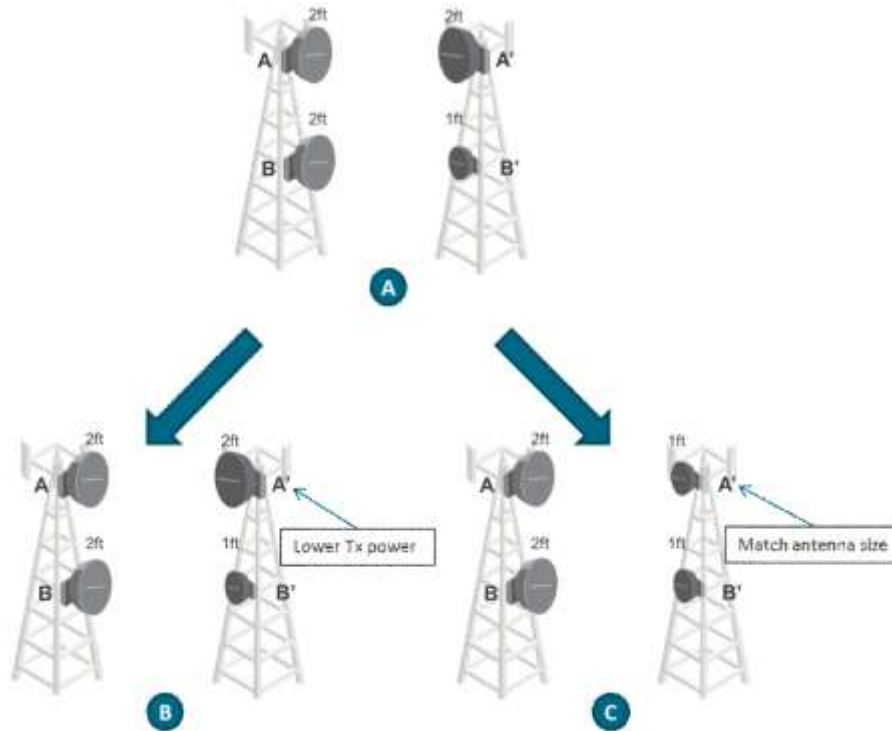


Figure 43: Asymmetrical Antenna Setup

5.2.3 Space Diversity

FibeAir IP-20C’s MIMO capabilities can also be utilized, with minor adjustments, to provide Baseband Combining (BBC) Space Diversity (SD). An SD configuration is based on either a 2x2 MIMO installation (for 1+0 SD) or a 4x4 MIMO installation (for 2+2 HSB SD, using two IP-20C units), with antenna separation based on SD requirements.

Alternatively, a 1+1 HSB-SD configuration is available. Instead of using a MIMO installation, 1+1 HSB-SD uses two IP-20C units combined and connected to the primary and diversity antennas via a dual coupler and two flexible waveguides. The link is protected via external protection, so that if a protection switchover occurs, the standby unit becomes the activate unit, and the link continues to function with full space diversity.

In all SD modes, the transmitter or transmitters connected to the diversity antenna is muted to achieve a configuration that consists of a single transmitter and two receivers.

When IP-20C is configured for SD operation, the signal is combined at the Baseband level to improve signal quality selective fading.

5.2.3.1 1+0 Space Diversity

A 1+0 Space Diversity configuration utilizes a single IP-20C on each side of the link, with both radio carriers activated. The second carrier is muted. On the receiving side, the signals are combined to produce a single, optimized signal.



Figure 44: 1+0 Space Diversity

5.2.3.2 2+2 Space Diversity

A 2+2 Space Diversity configuration utilizes two IP-20C units on each side of the link, with both radio carriers activated in each unit. In each IP-20C unit, both radio carriers are connected to a single antenna. One GbE port on each IP-20C is connected to an optical splitter. Traffic must be routed to an optical GbE port on each IP-20C unit.

Both carriers of the slave unit are muted. On the RX side, each unit receives a dual polarization signal from the remote master unit, which includes the data streams from both carriers. The slave unit shares the data stream it receives with the master unit, and the master unit combines each data stream to produce a single, optimized signal for each carrier.

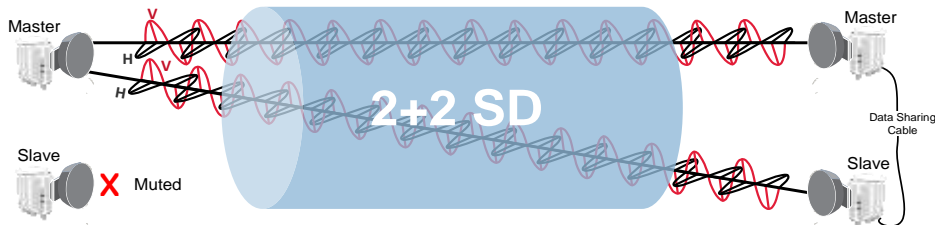


Figure 45: 2+2 Space Diversity

2+2 Space Diversity provides equipment protection as well as signal protection. If one unit goes out of service, the other unit takes over and maintains the link until the failed unit is restored to service and Space Diversity operation resumes.

In effect, a 2+2 HSB configuration is a protected 2+0 Space Diversity configuration. Each IP-20C monitors both of its cores. If the active IP-20C detects a radio failure in either of its cores, it initiates a switchover to the standby IP-20C.

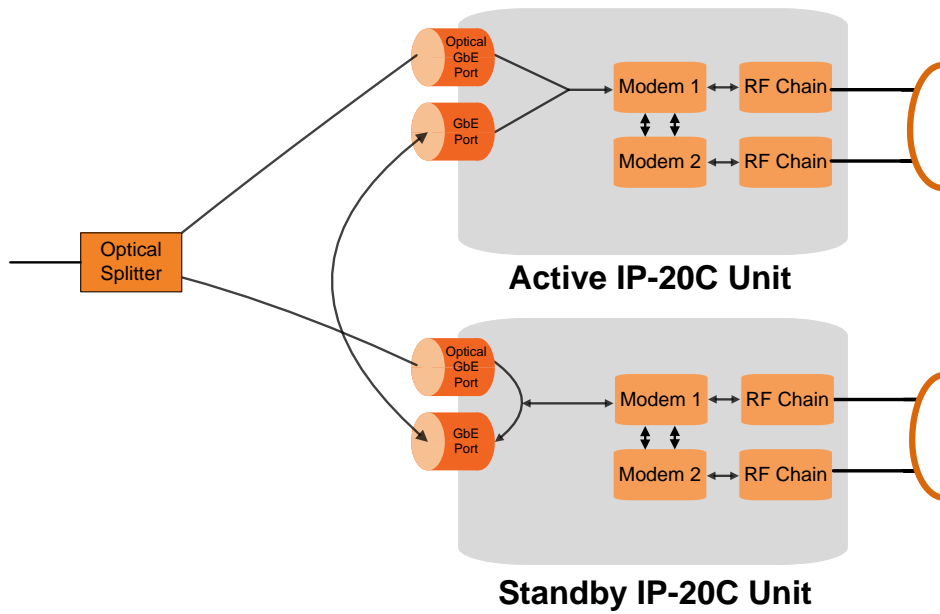


Figure 46: MultiCore 2+2 Space Diversity

5.2.3.3 1+1 HSB with Space Diversity

A 1+1 HSB-SD configuration utilizes two IP-20C units on each side of the link, with both radio carriers activated. On each unit, the carrier connected to the diversity antenna is muted. On the receiving side, the signals are combined in the active unit to produce a single, optimized signal. The link is protected via external protection, so that if a protection switchover occurs, the standby unit becomes the activate unit, and the link continues to function with full space diversity.



Figure 47: 1+1 HSB with Space Diversity

5.2.4 Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)

Advanced Space Diversity (ASD) provides significant savings by enabling space diversity with only three IP-20C units and three antennas. This means a 25% reduction from standard space diversity implementations with corresponding savings in CAPEX and OPEX due to the reduction in equipment and tower load made possible by ASD.

ASD provides significant increases in system gain and reduces or eliminates the effects of fading and multipath.

5.2.4.1 ASD Implementation

ASD is implemented as an asymmetrical link with three antennas and three IP-20C units, as shown in *Figure 48*.

- In one direction, two transmitters transmit to one receiver. ASD increases system gain in this direction by 6 dB.
- In the other direction, transmissions from one transmitter are received by two receivers. This is a simple case of Space Diversity, and provides a 3 dB increase in system gain.

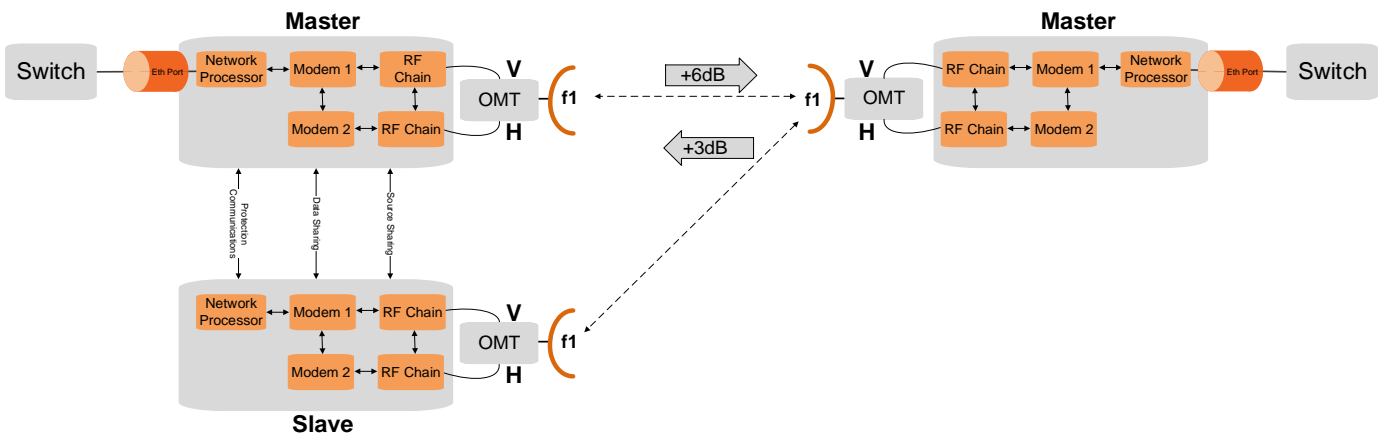


Figure 48: Advanced Space Diversity (ASD)

The ability to implement space diversity with only three IP-20 units and three antennas is made possible by the use of standard space diversity in one direction and a phase-synchronized beam-forming mechanism in the other direction. Each IP-20C unit is installed in a 2+0 XPIC configuration, with an OMT as the mediation device and a dual-polarization antenna. Alignment is performed using an XPIC script. Following alignment, the ASD groups are configured and a special ASD script (28 MHz or 56 MHz) is applied to each of the three ASD groups.

- MPMC Script 1951 – 28 MHz
- MPMC Script 1953 – 56 MHz

For script details, see *Radio Scripts* on page 227.

Figure 49 shows the data paths between Site 1, with two IP-20C units and two antennas, and Site 2, with one IP-20C unit and one antenna.

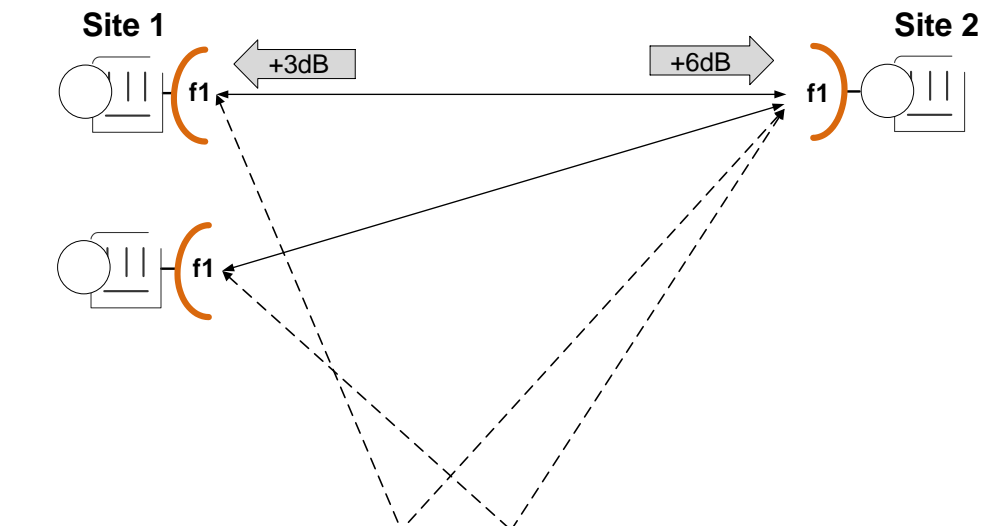


Figure 49: ASD Data Paths

The data path from Site 1 to Site 2 includes the same TX signals being sent from the main and diversity radios at Site 1 (RX diversity). IP-20 uses beam forming technology to achieve optimal reception by the IP-20C unit at Site 2. This quadruples the signal's strength, adding 6dB in system gain and resilience to selective fading.

The data path from Site 2 to Site 1 is similar to that of a standard space diversity configuration. The signal transmitted from Site 2 is received by the main and diversity antennas at Site 1 (RX diversity). These signals are combined using Baseband Combining (BBC). This adds 3dB in system gain since the signal practically doubles its level as it is received in a phase-synchronized manner by two receivers.

5.2.4.2 Benefits of ASD

ASD provides the benefits of space diversity with 25% less equipment. These benefits include:

- Up to 25% savings in CAPEX and OPEX by reducing equipment and tower load.
- Ability to use ASD in links with tower space limitations. The side of the link with tighter space restriction can be utilized for the single unit installation, while the other side contains two IP-20 units and two antennas.
- 6dB increase in system gain from the side of the link with two antennas to the side of the link with one antenna.
- 3dB increase in system gain from the side of the link with one antenna to the side of the link with two antennas.
- Mitigation of fading and multipath.

ASD is especially useful for long-haul links, in which mitigating the effects of fading and multipath are particularly important. But the increased system gain and mitigation of fading and multipath that ASD provides brings significant value for all types of links.

5.2.5 Advanced Frequency Reuse (AFR)

To thrive in the increasingly competitive, hyper-connected world, network operators must offer new revenue-generating services while constantly upgrading their delivery capabilities. Operators must rapidly expand the capacity of their networks by densifying their networks, which means effectively adding many new cell sites.

Because backhaul is a major component of sustainable network infrastructure, backhaul spectrum management is a crucial ingredient for success. A lack of available backhaul frequencies can restrict new cell-site deployment or dramatically increase the deployment cost due to use of alternative technologies.

Advanced Frequency Reuse (AFR), based on Ceragon's unique Multicore technology, breaks through deployment restrictions to give operators the freedom to deploy cell sites wherever and whenever they are needed. AFR enables reuse of frequencies and establishment of wider channels in much denser deployment scenarios than possible through conventional link-spacing parameters.

5.2.5.1 AFR Overview

AFR enables operators to reduce the angular separation requirement between links at the same frequency channel and the same polarization from the currently required 90-120° range to angular separation as low as 10-40°. This enables operators to deploy an additional adjacent link at the same frequency spot, thereby simplifying network deployment.

AFR can also be used to boost the capacity of existing links operating in adjacent channels by enabling wider channels in AFR mode.

By enabling operators to reuse the same frequency spots with nominal interference at angles that are significantly narrower than would otherwise be possible, AFR provides real value in congested network scenarios in which spectrum can be a significant expense and a bottleneck.

AFR works in conjunction with ACM to enable links to achieve high modulations and high capacities despite the presence of adjacent links transmitting at the same frequency. By mitigating the effects of side lobe interference (SLI), AFR can reduce adjacent link interference to levels that enable links that would otherwise be limited to QPSK modulation to transmit at modulations of up to 2048 QAM. This enables deployment of links that would otherwise be impractical to deploy due to high interference.

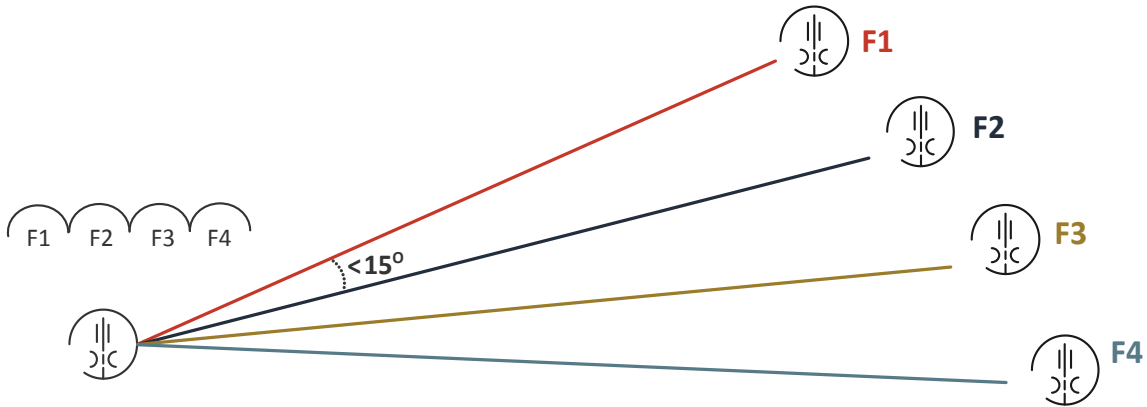


Figure 50: Deployment Scenario without AFR

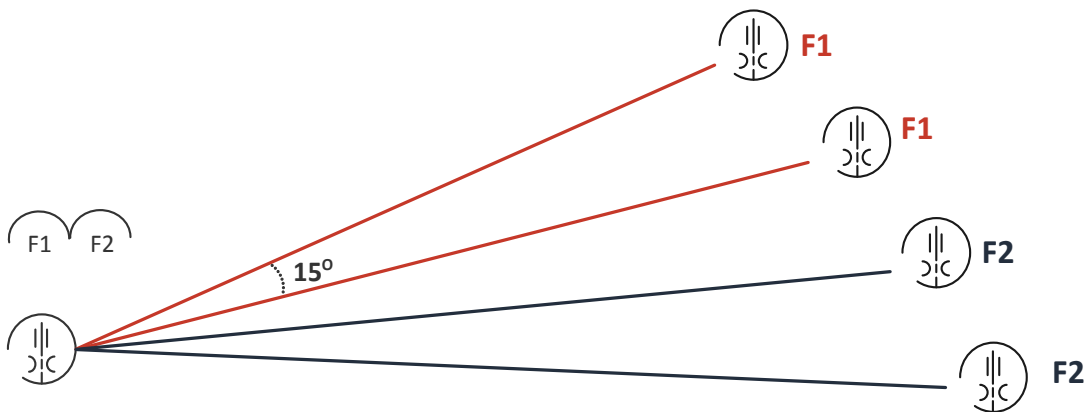


Figure 51: Deployment Scenario with AFR

AFR can also help operators increase the capacity of existing networks by increasing the channel allocation of adjacent links so that a single, wider channel can be used side-by-side in place of two separate, narrow channels.

Deployment of wider frequency channels is increasingly being required by operators in order to achieve better utilization of allocated frequency blocks. With wider channels, fewer guard bands are required, enabling more spectrum to be used for actual signal. However, spectrum for these wider bands is not always available, and when it is available, it can be expensive and time-consuming to obtain.

The following figure depicts a deployment scenario in which Link 1 uses channel 1 (f1), Link 2 uses channel 2 (f2), Link 3 uses channel 3 (f3), and Link 4 uses channel 4 (f4).

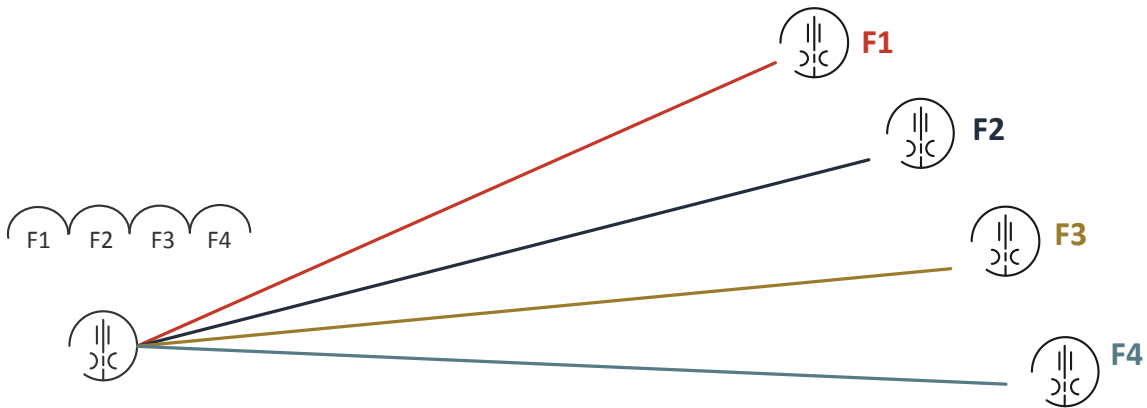


Figure 52: Network Using Four Narrow Channels

The following figure depicts the same network following AFR implementation. AFR has enabled the operator to reconfigure the network so that Link 1 and Link 2 *share* a wider channel (f1') consisting of channel 1 and channel 2, and Link 3 and Link 4 *share* a wider channel (f2') consisting of channel 3 and channel 4. By enabling each pair of links to share spectral resources that were previously separate, AFR enables the operator to double the capacity of the network deployment.

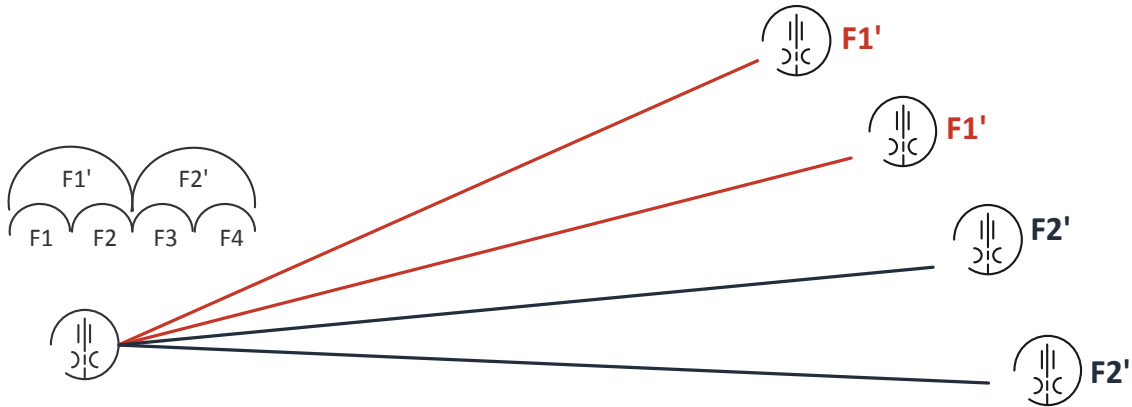


Figure 53: Converting to Wider Channels with AFR

In some cases, an operator may need to densify a network by placing an additional site between two existing sites, each transmitting at a different frequency spot. In the example shown in the following figure, topological or other factors may prevent the operator from simply increasing the coverage area and/or the capacity of the existing links, and spectrum for a third frequency spot for an additional link might not be available.

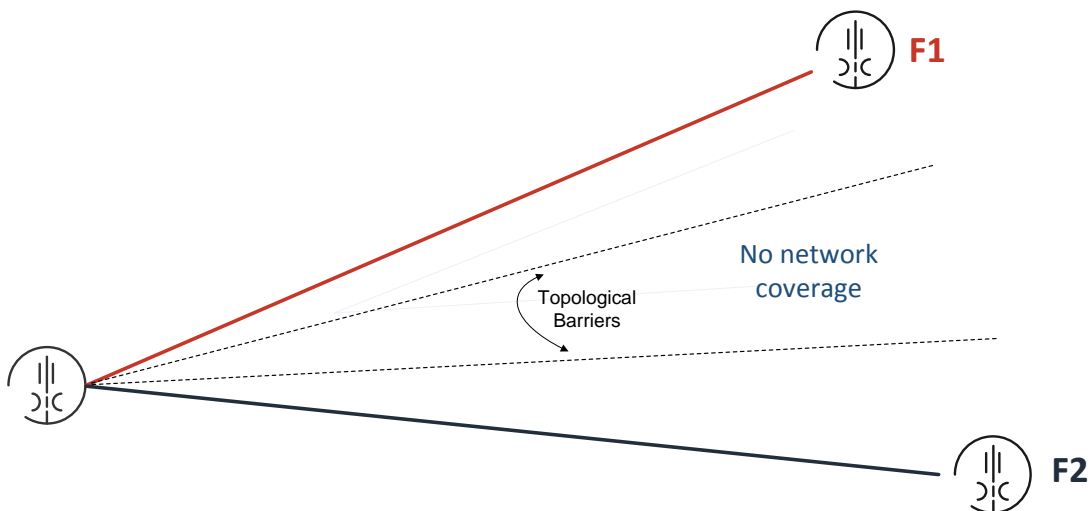


Figure 54: Network Requiring Densification

In the scenario depicted in the following figure, AFR enables the operator to reuse one of the existing frequency spots, despite the narrow angular separation between the links.

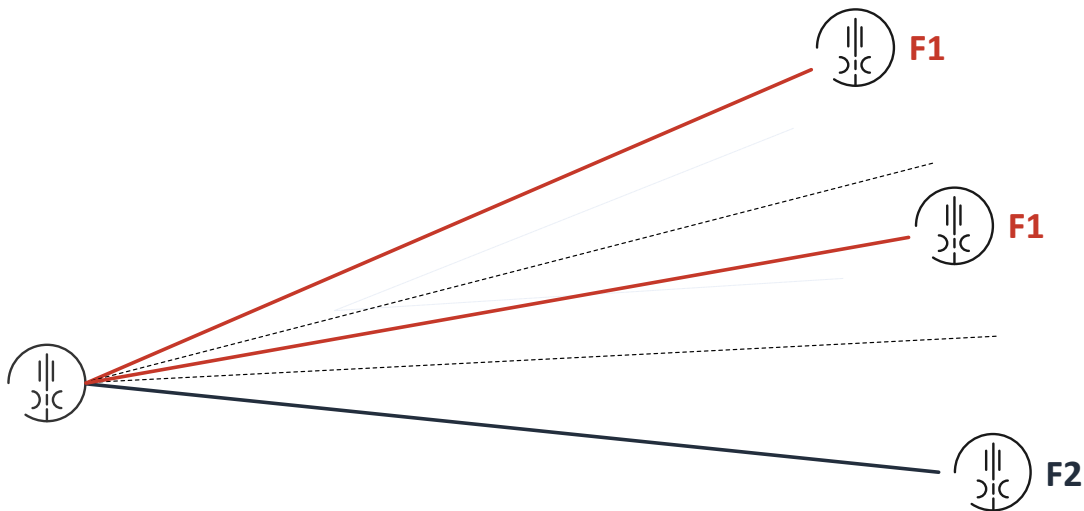


Figure 55: Densification Example with AFR

5.2.5.2 AFR Configurations

AFR can be used in the following configurations:

- AFR 1+0
- AFR 1+1
- AFR 2+0 (XPIC)

Note: AFR 1+1 and AFR 2+0 (XPIC) are planned for future release.

AFR 1+0

In an AFR 1+0 configuration, a Multicore FibeAir IP-20C unit is deployed at the hub site and two FibeAir IP-20C or IP-20S units are deployed in two tail sites. Each carrier at the hub site is known as an “aggregator.”

The hub site utilizes a single FibeAir IP-20C unit with two radio carriers. Each carrier is in a link, via its own directional antenna, with a tail site that consists of a FibeAir IP-20C or IP-20S unit.

Note: The links should be located so as to ensure that the two radio path do not cross.

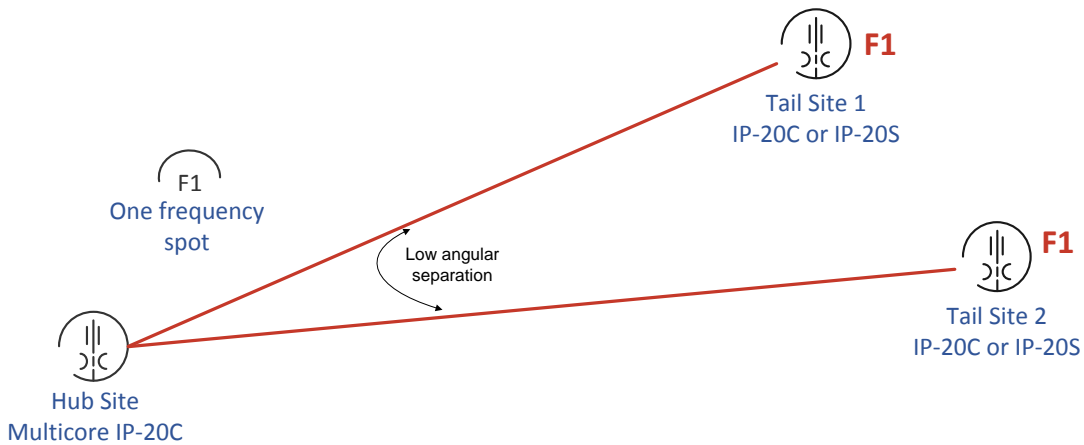


Figure 56: AFR 1+0 Deployment

AFR 1+1

AFR 1+1 uses two Multicore FibeAir IP-20C units at the hub site and two FibeAir IP-20C or IP-20S units at each tail site. At each hub site, one IP-20 unit protects the other unit, so that if a problem takes place on any IP-20 radio carrier, the other IP-20 unit takes over in active mode and the original active IP-20 unit switches to standby mode.

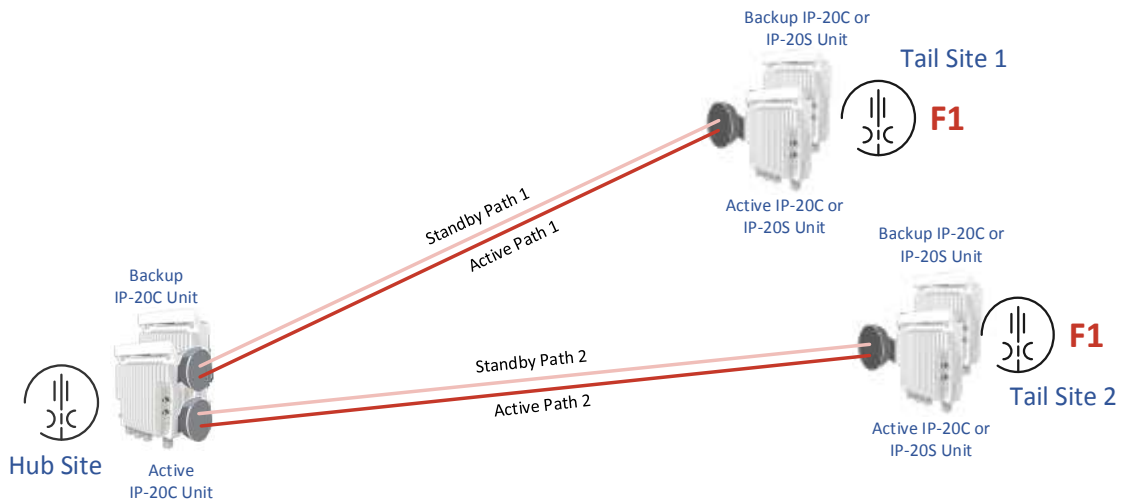


Figure 57: AFR 1+1

AFR 2+0 XPIC

AFR 2+0 XPIC combines the benefits of both XPIC and AFR to enable high-density links while minimizing the required number of frequency spots.

AFR 2+0 XPIC uses two FibeAir IP-20C units at the hub site and one FibeAir IP-20C unit at each tail site. For each unit at the hub site, both carriers form an XPIC link with one of the tail sites, using a dual-polarization antenna. The two units at the

hub site are connected via a source sharing cable, a 10GB optic cable, and a management cable, enabling the units to calculate the interference cancellation necessary for both XPIC and AFR, as well as enabling common management of the entire hub site.

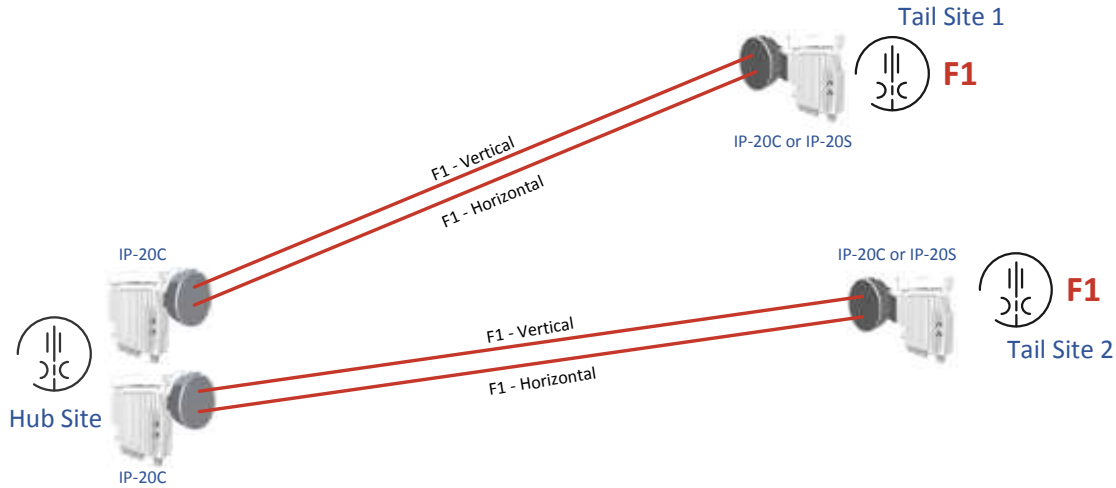


Figure 58: AFR 2+0 XPIC

5.2.5.3 AFR Mode of Operation

Without AFR, links using the same frequency must generally be angularly separated by at least 90-120° in order to reduce the interference between the links. AFR enables the placement of links using the same frequency at much smaller angular separation by adjusting for the effect of the interference in such a way as to compensate for the reciprocal interference at the tail site antennas.

AFR implements interference cancellation techniques at the hub site. There are separate interference cancellation methods for the Tx path and the Rx path. At the Tx path, the two cores work together to cancel the interferences for each of the tail sites. On the Rx path of the hub site, the interference compensation is implemented by interference cancellation, similar to the XPIC mechanism, in each of the cores.

The AFR interference cancellation is done entirely in at the hub site. Therefore, there is no need for any connection between the tail sites in order to enable the operation of these links with AFR.

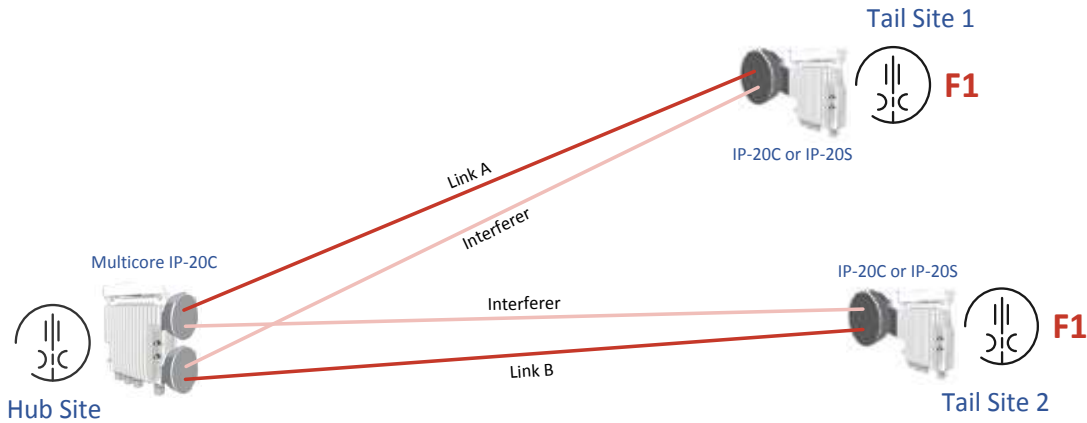


Figure 59: Interference Mitigation in AFR

5.2.5.4 AFR Calculation Application

Ceragon has developed the AFR Calculation application to help network planners maximize the value AFR can provide to Ceragon customers. This application helps the network planner identify links that can be deployed using AFR.

The AFR Calculation application is a standalone application that runs on the user’s PC or laptop. It is completely independent from CeraOS and the IP-20 device.

A detailed explanation of network planning using AFR, including step-by-step instructions for using the AFR Calculation application, is provided in a separate document, the *Advanced Frequency Reuse (AFR) Link Planning Guide*.

5.2.6 Header De-Duplication

IP-20C offers the option of Header De-Duplication, enabling operators to significantly improve Ethernet throughput over the radio link without affecting user traffic. Header De-Duplication can be configured to operate on various layers of the protocol stack, saving bandwidth by reducing unnecessary header overhead. Header De-duplication is also sometimes known as header compression.

Note: Without Header De-Duplication, IP-20C still removes the IFG and Preamble fields. This mechanism operates automatically even if Header De-Duplication is not selected by the user.

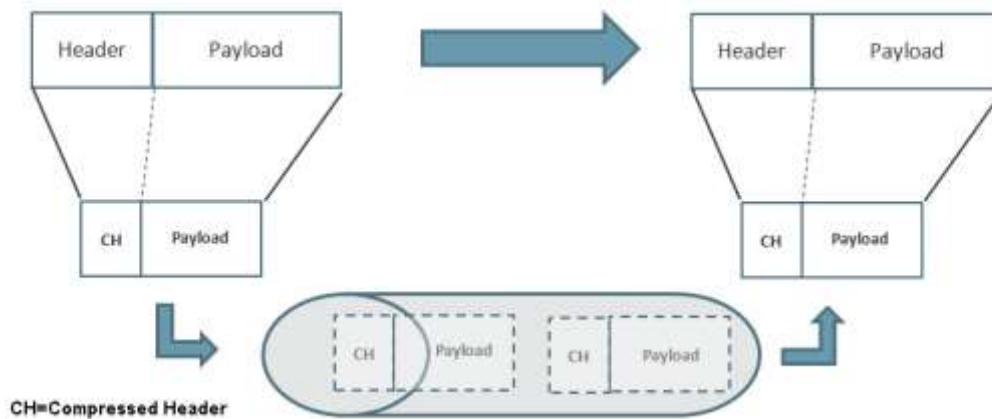


Figure 60: Header De-Duplication

Header De-Duplication identifies traffic flows and replaces the header fields with a "flow ID". This is done using a sophisticated algorithm that learns unique flows by looking for repeating frame headers in the traffic stream over the radio link and compressing them. The principle underlying this feature is that frame headers in today's networks use a long protocol stack that contains a significant amount of redundant information.

Header De-Duplication can be customized for optimal benefit according to network usage. The user can determine the layer or layers on which Header De-Duplication operates, with the following options available:

- Layer2 – Header De-Duplication operates on the Ethernet level.
- MPLS – Header De-Duplication operates on the Ethernet and MPLS levels.
- Layer3 – Header De-Duplication operates on the Ethernet and IP levels.
- Layer4 – Header De-Duplication operates on all supported layers up to Layer 4.
- Tunnel – Header De-Duplication operates on Layer 2, Layer 3, and on the Tunnel layer for packets carrying GTP or GRE frames.
- Tunnel-Layer3 – Header De-Duplication operates on Layer 2, Layer 3, and on the Tunnel and T-3 layers for packets carrying GTP or GRE frames.
- Tunnel-Layer4 – Header De-Duplication operates on Layer 2, Layer 3, and on the Tunnel, T-3, and T-4 layers for packets carrying GTP or GRE frames.

Operators must balance the depth of De-Duplication against the number of flows in order to ensure maximum efficiency. Up to 256 concurrent flows are supported.

The following graphic illustrates how Header De-Duplication can save up to 148 bytes per frame.

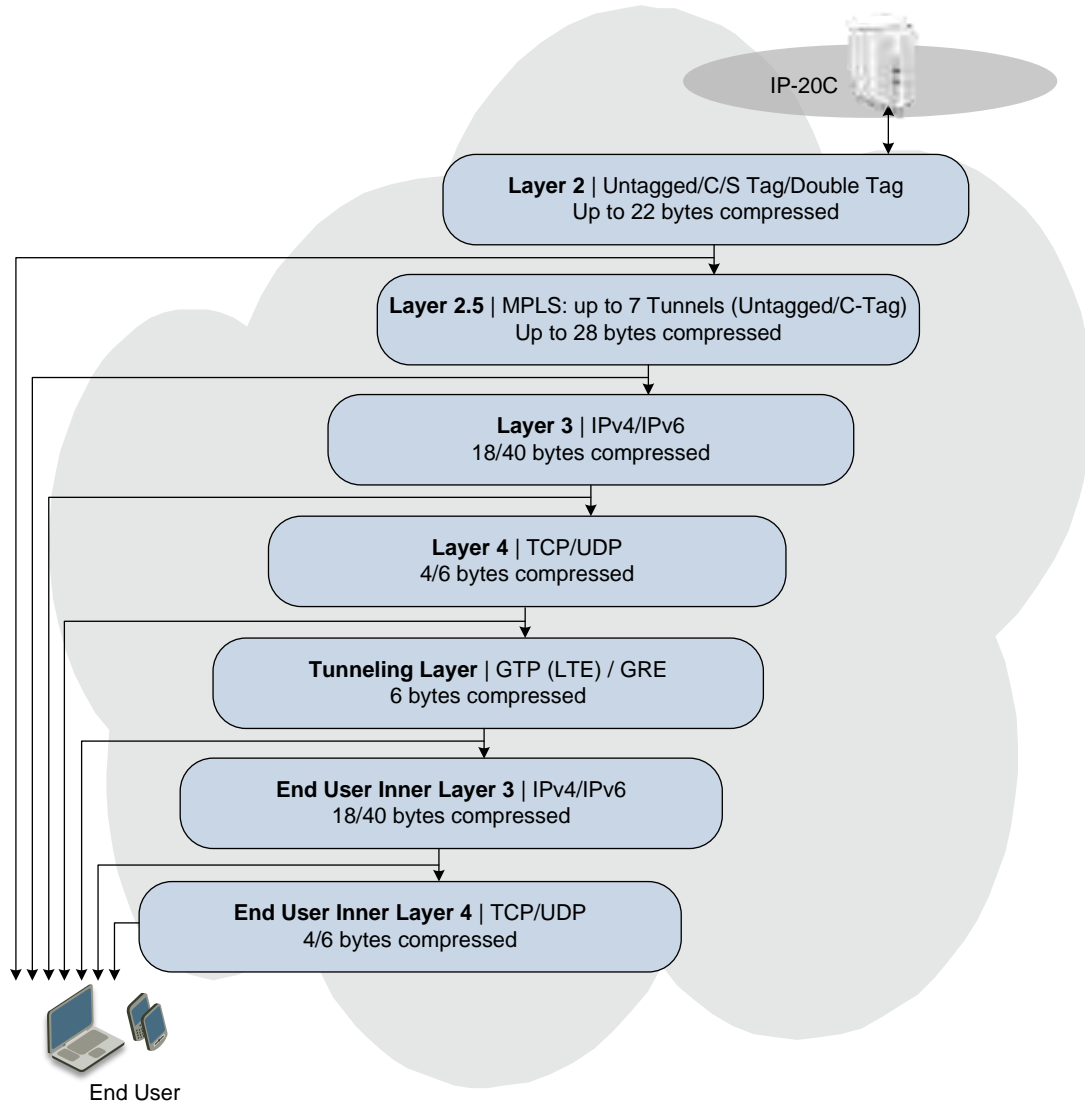


Figure 61: Header De-Duplication Potential Throughput Savings per Layer

Depending on the packet size and network topology, Header De-Duplication can increase capacity by up to:

- 50% (256 byte packets)
- 25% (512 byte packets)
- 8% (1518 byte packets)

5.2.6.1 Header De-Duplication Counters

In order to help operators optimize Header De-Duplication, IP-20C provides counters when Header De-Duplication is enabled. These counters include real-time information, such as the number of currently active flows and the number of flows by specific flow type. This information can be used by operators to monitor network usage and capacity, and optimize the Header De-Duplication settings. By monitoring the effectiveness of the de-duplication settings, the operator can adjust these settings to ensure that the network achieves the highest possible effective throughput.

5.2.7 Frame Cut-Through

Related topics:

- Ethernet Latency Specifications
- Egress Scheduling

Frame Cut-Through is a unique and innovative feature that ensures low latency for delay-sensitive services, such as CES, VoIP, and control protocols. With Frame Cut-Through, high-priority frames are pushed ahead of lower priority frames, even if transmission of the lower priority frames has already begun. Once the high priority frame has been transmitted, transmission of the lower priority frame is resumed with no capacity loss and no re-transmission required. This provides operators with:

- Immunity to head-of-line blocking effects – key for transporting high-priority, delay-sensitive traffic.
- Reduced delay-variation and maximum-delay over the link:
 - Improved QoE for VoIP and other streaming applications.
 - Expedited delivery of critical control frames.

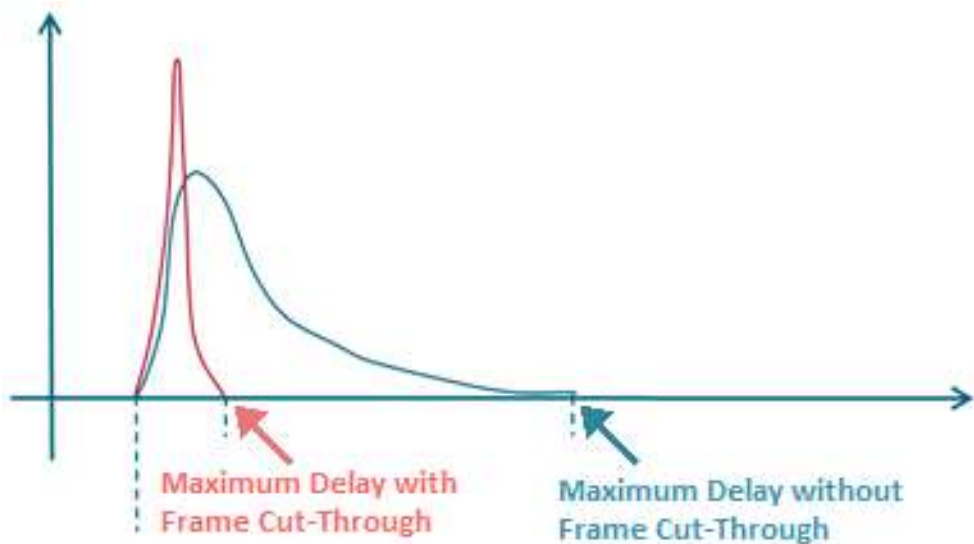


Figure 62: Propagation Delay with and without Frame Cut-Through

5.2.7.1 Frame Cut-Through Basic Operation

Using Frame Cut-Through, frames assigned to high priority queues can pre-empt frames already in transmission over the radio from other queues. Transmission of the pre-empted frames is resumed after the cut-through with no capacity loss or re-transmission required. This feature provides services that are sensitive to delay and delay variation, such as VoIP, with true transparency to lower priority services, by enabling the transmission of a high priority, low-delay traffic stream.



Figure 63: Frame Cut-Through

When enabled, Frame Cut-Through applies to all high priority frames, i.e., all frames that are classified to a CoS queue with 4th (highest) priority.

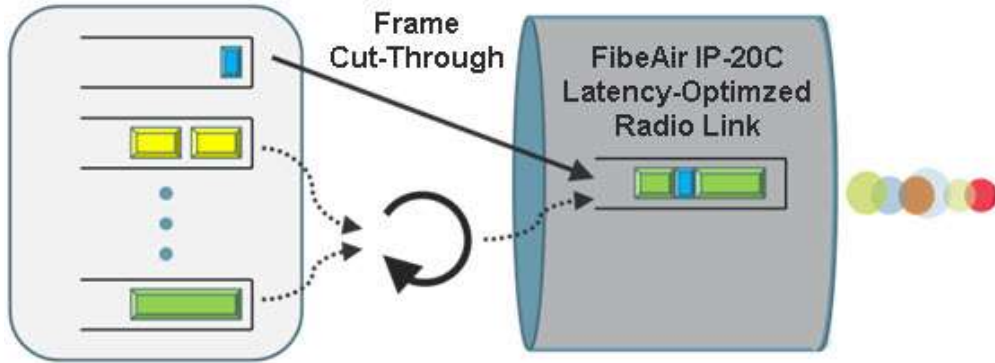


Figure 64: Frame Cut-Through

5.2.8 Multi-Carrier ABC

Multi-Carrier Adaptive Bandwidth Control (ABC) is an innovative technology that creates logical bundles of multiple radio links and optimizes them for wireless backhaul applications. Multi-Carrier ABC enables separate radio carriers to be shared by a single Ethernet port. This provides an Ethernet link over the radio with double capacity, while still behaving as a single Ethernet interface.

In Multi-Carrier ABC mode, traffic is divided among the carriers optimally at the radio frame level without requiring Ethernet link aggregation (LAG). Load balancing is performed without regard to the number of MAC addresses or the number of traffic flows. During fading events which cause ACM modulation changes, each carrier fluctuates independently with hitless switchovers between modulations, increasing capacity over a given bandwidth and maximizing spectrum utilization. The result is 100% utilization of radio resources in which traffic load is balanced based on instantaneous radio capacity per carrier.

The following diagram illustrates the Multi-Carrier ABC traffic flow.

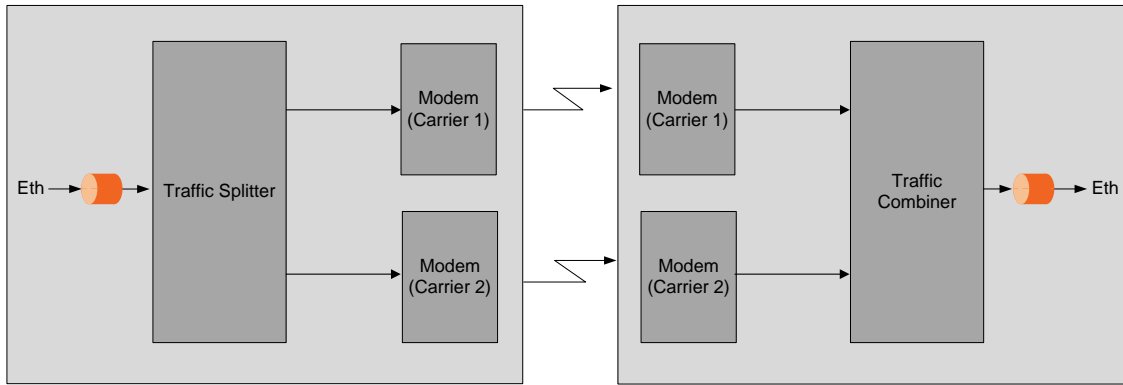


Figure 65: Multi-Carrier ABC Traffic Flow

5.2.8.1 Multi-Carrier ABC Operation

Multi-Carrier ABC is designed to achieve 100% utilization of available radio resources by optimizing the way traffic is distributed between the multiple wireless links. Traffic is forwarded over available radio carriers in a byte-by-byte manner, as shown in the figure below. This enhances load balancing.

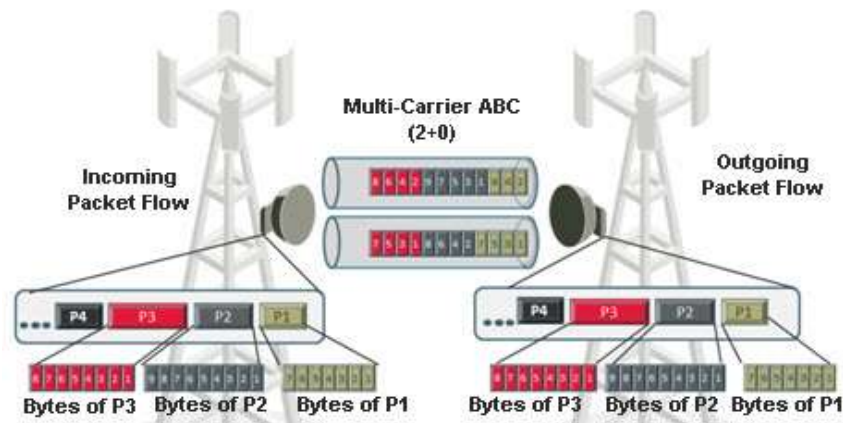


Figure 66: Multi-Carrier ABC Traffic Distribution

Traffic distribution is proportional to the available bandwidth in every link:

- If both links have the same capacity, half the data is sent through each link.
- In ACM conditions, the links could be in different modulations; in this case, data is distributed proportionally in order to maximize the available bandwidth.

The granular, byte-by-byte distribution of traffic between radio links enables IP-20C's Multi-Carrier ABC implementation to maintain optimal load balancing that accounts for the condition of each radio link at any given moment. This means that if a link shifts to a lower ACM modulation point, the Multi-Carrier ABC load balancing mechanism is notified immediately and adjusts the traffic distribution by sending less traffic over the link with the lower modulation and more traffic to links operating at a higher modulation. If there is a failure in one or more of the links, the load balancing mechanism implements graceful degradation by directing traffic to the operational links.

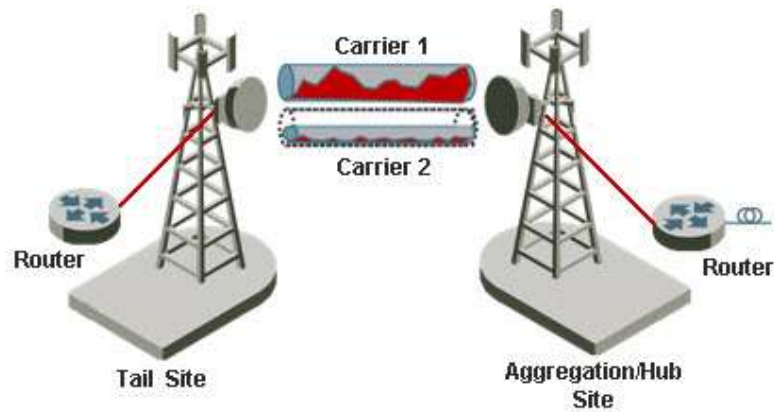


Figure 67: Multi-Carrier ABC Load Balancing with Different ACM Points

5.2.8.2 Graceful Degradation of Service

Multi-Carrier ABC provides for protection and graceful degradation of service in the event that one of the links fails. This ensures that if one link is lost, not all data is lost. Instead, bandwidth is simply reduced until the link returns to service.

Graceful degradation in Multi-Carrier ABC is achieved by blocking one of the radio links from Multi-Carrier ABC data. When a link is blocked, the transmitter does not distribute data to this link and the receiver ignores it when combining.

The blocking is implemented independently in each direction, but TX and RX always block a link in a coordinated manner.

The following are the criteria for blocking a link:

- Radio LOF
- Link ID mismatch
- Radio Excessive BER – user configurable
- Radio Signal degrade – user configurable
- User command – used to debug a link

When a radio link is blocked, an alarm is displayed to users.

5.2.8.3 Multi-Carrier ABC Minimum Bandwidth Override Option

A Multi-Carrier ABC group can be configured to be placed in Down state if the group’s aggregated capacity falls beneath a user-defined threshold. This option is used in conjunction with the LAG override option (see *Link Aggregation Groups (LAG)* on page 150) in cases where the operator wants traffic from an upstream switch connected to another IP-20 unit to be re-routed whenever the link is providing less than a certain capacity.

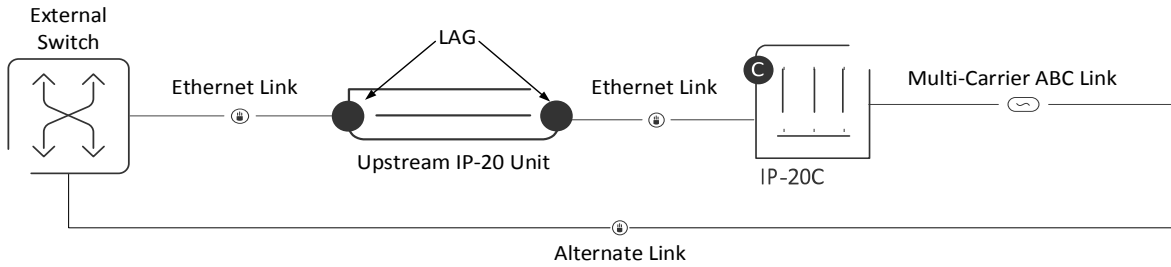


Figure 68: Multi-Carrier ABC Minimum Bandwidth Override

By default, the Multi-Carrier ABC minimum bandwidth override option is disabled. When enabled, the Multi-Carrier ABC group is automatically placed in a Down state in the event that the group’s aggregated capacity falls beneath the user-configured threshold. The group is returned to an Up state when the capacity goes above the threshold.

5.2.8.4 Multi-Carrier ABC and ACM

Each carrier can change its ACM profile, with a maximum of 30 msec between each switch in modulation. There is no limitation upon the profile difference between carriers, so that one carrier can be operating at the lowest possible profile (QPSK) while the other is operating at the highest possible profile (2048 QAM).

Users can configure an ACM drop threshold and an ACM up threshold for the Multi-Carrier group. If the ACM profile falls to the configured drop threshold or below for a carrier in the group, that carrier is treated as if it is in a failure state, and traffic is re-routed to the other carriers. When the ACM profile rises to the configured up threshold, the failure state is removed, and traffic is again routed to the affected carrier. By default, this mechanism is disabled. When enabled, the default value for the ACM drop threshold is QPSK and the default value for the ACM up threshold is 8 QAM.

5.2.8.5 Configuring Multi-Carrier ABC

In order to use Multi-Carrier ABC, both carriers in the IP-20C must be operational. The user must first create a Multi-Carrier ABC group, and then enable the group. To delete the Multi-Carrier ABC group, the user must first disable the group, and then delete it.

In order for Multi-Carrier ABC to work properly, the radio links should use the same radio script, ACM mode, and maximum ACM profile. Note that in the case of ACM, the links can operate at different modulation profiles at the same time, but the same base script must still be configured in both links. Users can perform a copy-to-mate operation to ensure that both carriers have an identical configuration.

In addition to the configurable ACM profile down and up thresholds described in *Multi-Carrier ABC and ACM* on page 89, users can configure the system to stop distributing traffic to an individual carrier in any one or more of the following circumstances:⁶

- Excessive BER condition
- Signal Degrade condition

Users can manually block and unblock traffic from a single carrier.

⁶ This feature is planned for future release.

5.2.9 Adaptive Coding Modulation (ACM)

Related topics:

- Cross Polarization Interference Canceller (XPIC)
- Quality of Service (QoS)

FibeAir IP-20C employs full-range dynamic ACM. IP-20C’s ACM mechanism copes with 100 dB per second fading in order to ensure high transmission quality. IP-20C’s ACM mechanism is designed to work with IP-20C’s QoS mechanism to ensure that high priority voice and data frames are never dropped, thus maintaining even the most stringent service level agreements (SLAs).

The hitless and errorless functionality of IP-20C’s ACM has another major advantage in that it ensures that TCP/IP sessions do not time-out. Without ACM, even interruptions as short as 50 milliseconds can lead to timeout of TCP/IP sessions, which are followed by a drastic throughput decrease while these sessions recover.

5.2.9.1 Eleven Working Points

IP-20C implements ACM with 11 available working points, as shown in the following table:

Table 10: ACM Working Points (Profiles)

Working Point (Profile)	Modulation
Profile 0	QPSK
Profile 1	8 PSK
Profile 2	16 QAM
Profile 3	32 QAM
Profile 4	64 QAM
Profile 5	128 QAM
Profile 6	256 QAM
Profile 7	512 QAM
Profile 8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)
Profile 9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)
Profile 10	2048 QAM

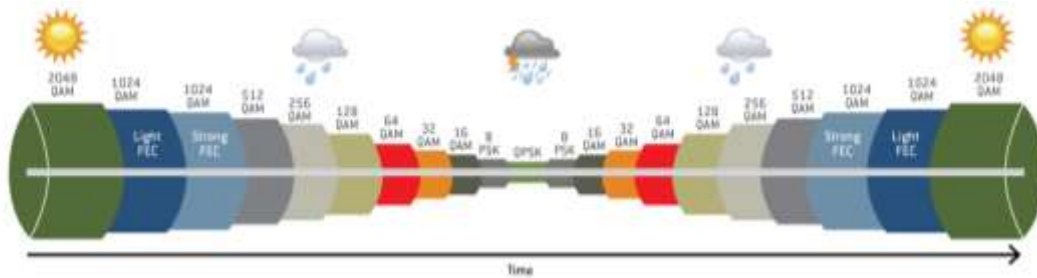


Figure 69: Adaptive Coding and Modulation with 11 Working Points

5.2.9.2 Hitless and Errorless Step-by Step Adjustments

ACM works as follows. Assuming a system configured for 128 QAM with ~170 Mbps capacity over a 28 MHz channel, when the receive signal Bit Error Ratio (BER) level reaches a predetermined threshold, the system preemptively switches to 64 QAM and the throughput is stepped down to ~140 Mbps. This is an errorless, virtually instantaneous switch. The system continues to operate at 64 QAM until the fading condition either intensifies or disappears. If the fade intensifies, another switch takes the system down to 32 QAM. If, on the other hand, the weather condition improves, the modulation is switched back to the next higher step (e.g., 128 QAM) and so on, step by step. The switching continues automatically and as quickly as needed, and can reach all the way down to QPSK during extreme conditions.

In IP-20C units that are utilizing two cores, ACM profile switches are performed independently for each core.

5.2.9.3 ACM Radio Scripts

An ACM radio script is constructed of a set of profiles. Each profile is defined by a modulation order (QAM) and coding rate, and defines the profile’s capacity (bps). When an ACM script is activated, the system automatically chooses which profile to use according to the channel fading conditions.

The ACM TX profile can be different from the ACM RX profile.

The ACM TX profile is determined by remote RX MSE performance. The RX end is the one that initiates an ACM profile upgrade or downgrade. When MSE improves above a predefined threshold, RX generates a request to the remote TX to upgrade its profile. If MSE degrades below a predefined threshold, RX generates a request to the remote TX to downgrade its profile.

ACM profiles are decreased or increased in an errorless operation, without affecting traffic.

ACM scripts can be activated in one of two modes:

- **Fixed Mode.** In this mode, the user can select the specific profile from all available profiles in the script. The selected profile is the only profile that will be valid, and the ACM engine will be forced to be OFF. This mode can be chosen without an ACM activation key.
- **Adaptive Mode.** In this mode, the ACM engine is running, which means that the radio adapts its profile according to the channel fading conditions. Adaptive mode requires an ACM activation key.

In the case of XPIC/ACM scripts, all the required conditions for XPIC apply.

The user can define a minimum and maximum profile. For example, if the user selects a maximum profile of 9, the system will not climb above the profile 9, even if channel fading conditions allow it.

5.2.9.4 ACM Benefits

The advantages of IP-20C's dynamic ACM include:

- Maximized spectrum usage
- Increased capacity over a given bandwidth
- 11 modulation/coding work points (~3 db system gain for each point change)
- Hitless and errorless modulation/coding changes, based on signal quality
- An integrated QoS mechanism that enables intelligent congestion management to ensure that high priority traffic is not affected during link fading

5.2.9.5 ACM and Built-In QoS

IP-20C's ACM mechanism is designed to work with IP-20C's QoS mechanism to ensure that high priority voice and data frames are never dropped, thus maintaining even the most stringent SLAs. Since QoS provides priority support for different classes of service, according to a wide range of criteria, you can configure IP-20C to discard only low priority frames as conditions deteriorate.

If you want to rely on an external switch's QoS, ACM can work with the switch via the flow control mechanism supported in the radio.

5.2.9.6 ACM in MultiCore HSB Configurations

When ACM is activated in a protection scheme such as MultiCore 1+1 HSB, the following ACM behavior should be expected:

- In the TX direction, the Active TX will follow the remote Active RX ACM requests (according to the remote Active Rx MSE performance).
- The Standby TX might have the same profile as the Active TX, or might stay at the lowest profile (profile-0). That depends on whether the Standby TX was able to follow the remote RX Active unit's ACM requests (only the active remote RX sends ACM request messages).
- In the RX direction, both the active and the standby units follow the remote Active TX profile (which is the only active transmitter).

5.2.9.7 ACM with Adaptive Transmit Power

This feature requires:

- ACM script

When planning ACM-based radio links, the radio planner attempts to apply the lowest transmit power that will perform satisfactorily at the highest level of modulation. During fade conditions requiring a modulation drop, most radio systems cannot increase transmit power to compensate for the signal degradation, resulting in a deeper reduction in capacity. IP-20C is capable of adjusting power on the fly, and optimizing the available capacity at every modulation point.

The following figure contrasts the transmit output power achieved by using ACM with Adaptive Power to the transmit output power at a fixed power level, over an 18-23 GHz link. This figure shows how without Adaptive Transmit Power, operators that want to use ACM to benefit from high levels of modulation (e.g., 2048 QAM) must settle for low system gain, in this case, 16 dB, for all the other modulations as well. In contrast, with IP-20C’s Adaptive Transmit Power feature, operators can automatically adjust power levels, achieving the extra system gain that is required to maintain optimal throughput levels under all conditions.

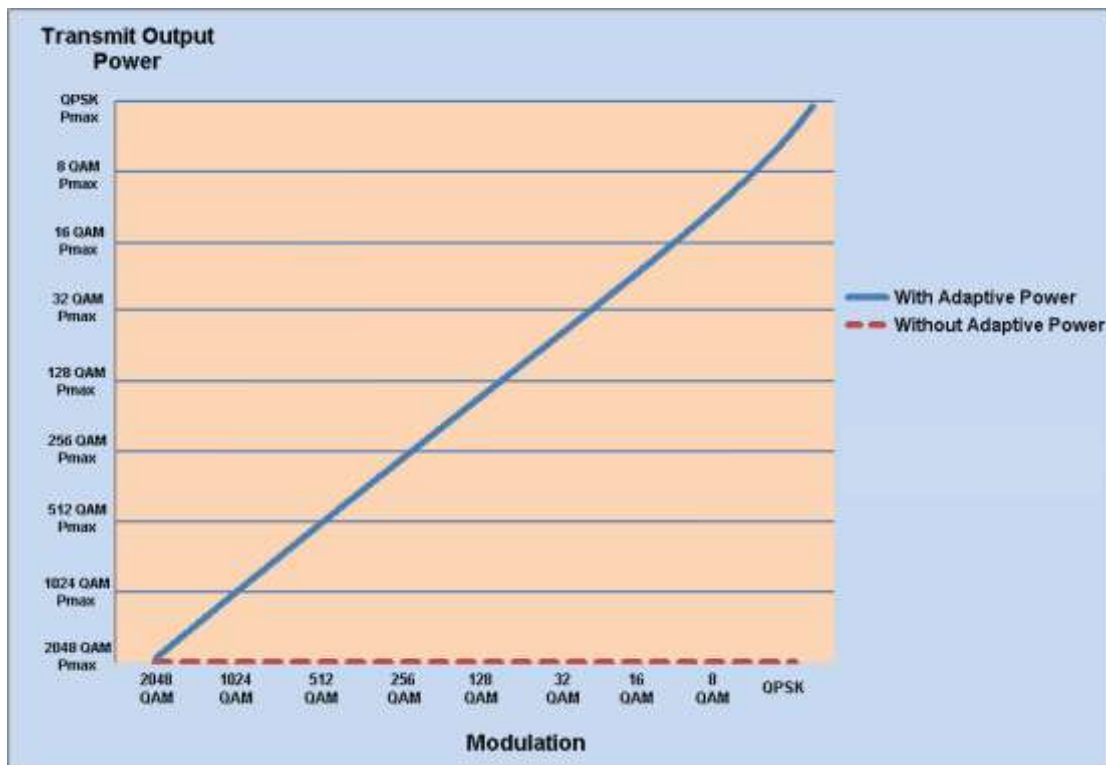


Figure 70: IP-20C ACM with Adaptive Power Contrasted to Other ACM Implementations

5.2.10 Multiband (Enhanced Multi-Carrier ABC)

This feature requires:

- IP-20C ESS hardware version (two SFP ports) is required in order to configure synchronization and/or in-band management for the IP-20C
- IP-20E ESP hardware version

IP-20C can be used in Multiband configurations with FibeAir IP-20E.

Multiband bundles E-Band and microwave radios in a single group that is shared with an Ethernet interface. This provides an Ethernet link over the radio with capacity of up to 2.5 Gbps. A Multiband link is highly resilient because the microwave link acts, in effect, as a backup for the E-Band link.

In normal circumstances, both links transmit simultaneously, dividing the traffic between them. The maximum capacity of the IP-20C is 1 Gbps, with the IP-20E handling the rest of the link's capacity.

In the event of radio failure in one device, the other device continues to operate to the extent of its available capacity. Thus, operators benefit from both the high capacity of E-Band and the high reliability of microwave.

5.2.10.1 Multiband Operation

Multiband uses a master/slave architecture in which the IP-20E serves as master and the IP-20C serves as slave. All traffic enters the node via the 10G port on the IP-20E (Eth1). Traffic is passed to a Multiband group that includes Eth2 and the radio carrier. The Multiband group mechanism divides the traffic, sending a portion of the traffic via Eth2 to the IP-20C. The rest of the traffic is transmitted via the IP-20E radio carrier.

The IP-20C acts as a pipe. Traffic is passed from Eth2 to either a single radio carrier or 2+0 Multi-Carrier ABC group, and transmitted. To ensure a smooth traffic flow, the following must be configured on the IP-20C:

- Automatic State Propagation, with **ASP trigger by remote fault** enabled.
- Bandwidth Notification.

Figure 71 illustrates Multiband operation. Figure 71 illustrates a configuration that includes synchronization and management of the IP-20C via the IP-20E. Both of these items are optional, and requires an optical cable between Eth3 on the IP-20E and Eth3 on the IP-20C, as described in the following sections.

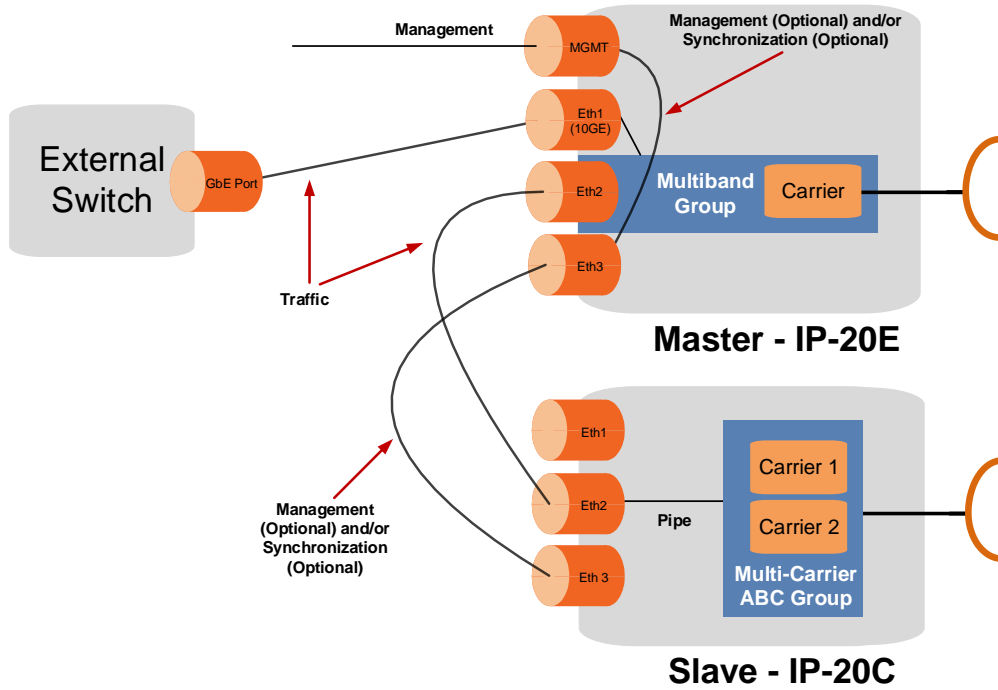


Figure 71: Multiband Operation

5.2.10.2 Synchronization with Multiband Operation

SyncE and 1588 Transparent Clock can be used in Multiband nodes. In Multiband nodes that consist of an IP-20E and an IP-20C, SyncE and 1588 Transparent Clock can be configured for both the IP-20E and the IP-20C. SyncE and 1588 Transparent Clock for the IP-20C require an ESS hardware version for the IP-20C (two SFP ports).

In CeraOS 10.7, synchronization for the IP-20C requires an optical cable between port Eth3 on the IP-20E and Eth3 on the IP-20C. In this configuration, Port 2 on the IP-20E must be used as a CSFP port. Eth2 and Eth3 on the IP-20C must use BiDi SFP modules.

Eth2 is used to transmit traffic to the IP-20C and Eth 3 used to transmit synchronization to the IP-20C.

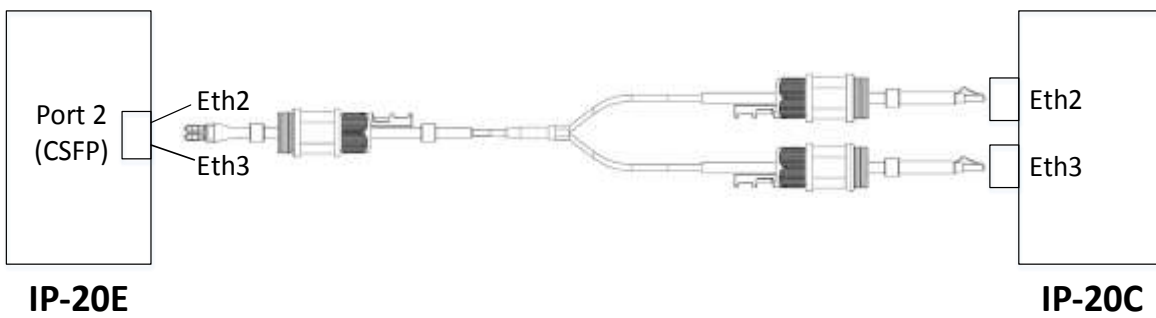


Figure 72: Multiband Cable for Use with CSFP Port

Table 11: Multiband Cable for Use with CSFP Port

Cable Marketing Model	Cable Description
IP-20_FO_SM_LC2SNG2LC_ARM_5m	CABLE,FO,DUAL LC TO LC/LC SPLIT,5.3M,SM,3xM28 GLAND,OUTDOOR

5.2.10.3 Multiband Management

The IP-20E unit in a Multiband configuration can be managed normally, as in any other configuration.

The IP-20C unit can be managed directly via its Management port, or via the IP-20E. To manage the IP-20C via the IP-20E, an optical cable must be connected between port Eth3 on the IP-20E and Eth3 on the IP-20C. In this configuration, Port 2 on the IP-20E must be used as a CSFP port. A management service must be defined between the management port of the IP-20E and Eth3 on the IP-20E. This transmits management to Eth3 on the IP-20C.

The IP-20C unit can be managed directly via its Management port, or via the IP-20E. In-band management via the IP-20E requires an ESS hardware version for IP-20C (two SFP ports). To manage the IP-20C via the IP-20E, an optical cable must be connected between port Eth3 on the IP-20E and Eth3 on the IP-20C. In this configuration, Port 2 on the IP-20E must be used as a CSFP port. To enable the connection to both Eth2 and Eth3 on the IP-20C, use the same cable described in *Synchronization with Multiband Operation*.

Note: To avoid loops, in-band management *must not* be configured on the IP-20C radio.

5.2.10.4 Limitations and Interoperability of Multiband with other Features

- Multiband is fully compatible with ACM.
- The maximum capacity of a Multiband node is 2.5 Gbps.
- LLDP is not supported between Eth2 of the IP-20E and Eth2 of the IP-20C in Multiband configurations.

5.2.11 Cross Polarization Interference Canceller (XPIC)

This feature requires:

- MultiCore 2+0, 2+2, or 4x4 (MIMO) configuration
- Multi-Carrier ABC for each XPIC pair
- XPIC script

XPIC is one of the best ways to break the barriers of spectral efficiency. Using dual-polarization radio over a single-frequency channel, a single dual core IP-20C unit transmits two separate carrier waves over the same frequency, but using alternating polarities. Despite the obvious advantages of dual-polarization, one must also keep in mind that typical antennas cannot completely isolate the two polarizations. In addition, propagation effects such as rain can cause polarization rotation, making cross-polarization interference unavoidable.

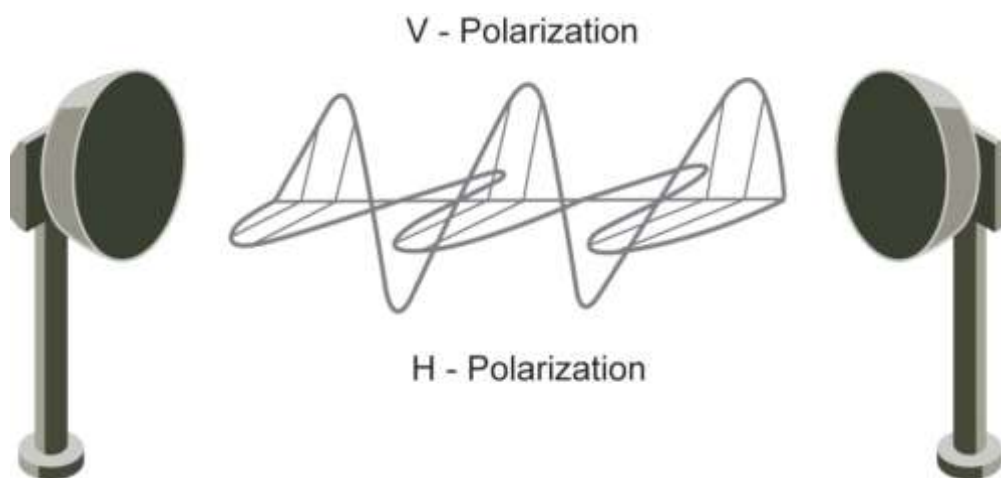


Figure 73: Dual Polarization

The relative level of interference is referred to as cross-polarization discrimination (XPD). While lower spectral efficiency systems (with low SNR requirements such as QPSK) can easily tolerate such interference, higher modulation schemes cannot and require XPIC. IP-20C's XPIC algorithm enables detection of both streams even under the worst levels of XPD such as 10 dB. IP-20C accomplishes this by adaptively subtracting from each carrier the interfering cross carrier, at the right phase and level. For high-modulation schemes such as 2048 QAM, operating at a frequency of 28 GHz, an improvement factor of more than 23 dB is required so that cross-interference does not adversely affect performance. In this scenario, IP-20C's XPIC implementation provides an improvement factor of approximately 26 db.

In addition, XPIC includes an automatic recovery mechanism that ensures that if one carrier fails, or a false signal is received, the mate carrier will not be affected. This mechanism also ensures that when the failure is cleared, both carriers will be operational.⁷

⁷ The XPIC recovery mechanism is planned for future release.

5.2.11.1 XPIC Benefits

The advantages of FibeAir IP-20C’s XPIC option include BER of 10e-6 at a co-channel sensitivity of 10 dB.

IP-20C’s dual core architecture provides the additional benefit of enabling a direct-mount XPIC configuration with a single IP-20C unit. Operators can double their capacity over a single frequency channel by using IP-20C with XPIC, with each core operating at a different polarization.

5.2.11.2 XPIC Implementation

The XPIC mechanism utilizes the received signals from the V and H modems to extract the V and H signals and cancel the cross polarization interference due to physical signal leakage between V and H polarizations.

The following figure is a basic graphic representation of the signals involved in this process.

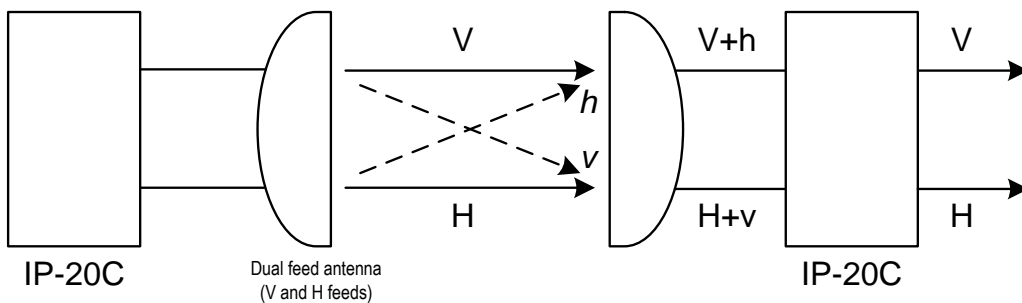


Figure 74: XPIC Implementation

Note: For the sake of simplicity, a dual feed V and H antenna is depicted. IP-20C can be directly mounted using a mediation device in this configuration.

The H+v signal is the combination of the desired signal H (horizontal) and the interfering signal V (in lower case, to denote that it is the interfering signal). The same happens with the vertical (V) signal reception= V+h. The XPIC mechanism uses the received signals from both feeds and, manipulates them to produce the desired data.

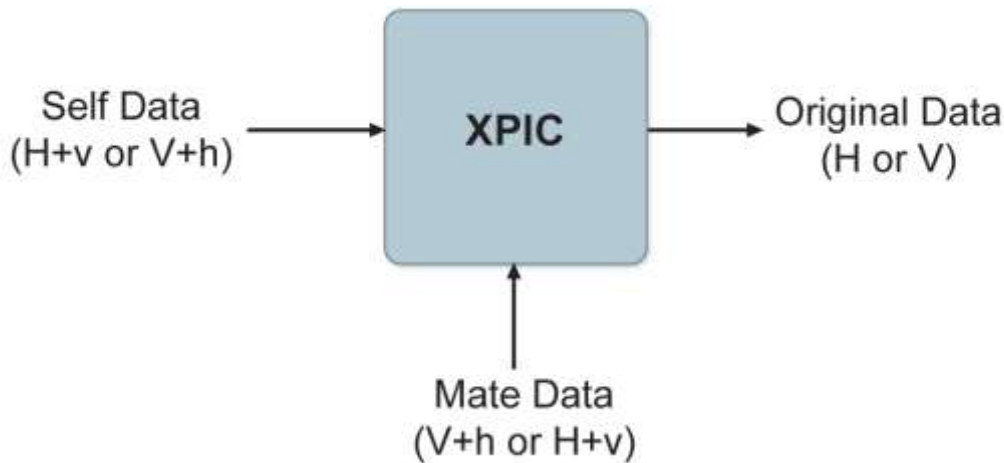


Figure 75: XPIC – Impact of Misalignments and Channel Degradation

IP-20C’s XPIC reaches a BER of 10e-6 at a co-channel sensitivity of 10 dB. The improvement factor in an XPIC system is defined as the SNR@threshold of 10e-6, with or without the XPIC mechanism.

5.2.11.3 Conditions for XPIC

All IP-20C radio scripts support XPIC. The user must enable XPIC, after loading the script.

In order for XPIC to be operational, all the following conditions must be met:

- The frequency of both carriers should be equal.
- The same script must be loaded in both carriers.

If any of these conditions is not met, an alarm will alert the user. In addition, events will inform the user which conditions are not met.

5.2.11.4 XPIC Recovery Mechanism

Note: The XPIC recovery mechanism is planned for future release.

The purpose of the XPIC recovery mechanism is to salvage half of the capacity of the link during a single equipment failure.

The XPIC mechanism is based on signal cancellation and assumes that both of the transmitted signals are received (with a degree of polarity separation). If, due to a hardware failure, one of the four carriers malfunctions, the interference from its counterpart will severely degrade the link at the other polarization. In this situation, the XRSM will intervene to shut down the interfering transmitter.

Note: The XPIC recovery mechanism does not apply to link degradation, as opposed to hardware failure. For example, link degradation caused by fading or multipath interference does not initiate the XPIC recovery mechanism.

The mechanism works as follows:

- The indication that the recovery mechanism should be activated is a loss of modem preamble lock, which takes place at SNR~10dB. This indication differentiates between hardware failure and link degradation.

- The first action taken by the recovery mechanism is to cause the remote transmitter of the faulty carrier to mute, thus eliminating the disturbing signal and saving the working link.
- Following this, the mechanism attempts at intervals to recover the failed link. In order to do so, it takes the following actions:
 - The remote transmitter is un-muted for a brief period.
 - The recovery mechanism probes the link to find out if it has recovered. If not, it again mutes the remote transmitter.
 - This action is repeated in exponentially larger intervals. This is meant to quickly bring up both channels in case of a brief channel fade, without seriously affecting the working link if the problem has been caused by a hardware failure.
 - The number of recovery attempts is user-configurable, with a default value of 8. If the system does not recover the faulty link after the defined number of attempts, the remote transmitter is set to a permanent mute, the recovery process is discontinued, and user maintenance must be performed.

Note: Every such recovery attempt will cause a brief traffic hit in the working link.

All the time intervals mentioned above (recovery attempt time, initial time between attempts, multiplication factor for attempt time, number of retries) can be configured by the user, but it is recommended to use the default values.

The XPIC recovery mechanism is enabled by default, but can be disabled by the user.

5.2.12 Unit (External) Protection

IP-20C offers MultiCore 1+1 and 2+2 HSB protection configurations. 1+1 HSB can also be implemented with Space Diversity. See *1+1 HSB with Space Diversity* on page 71.

1+1 HSB protection utilizes two IP-20C units operating in single core mode, with a single antenna. 1+1 HSB-SD utilizes IP-20C units operating in MultiCore mode, with two antennas. Both configurations provide hardware redundancy for Ethernet traffic. One IP-20C operates in active mode and the other operates in standby mode. If a protection switchover occurs, the roles are switched. The active unit goes into standby mode and the standby unit goes into active mode.

The standby unit is managed by the active unit. The standby unit's transmitter is muted, but the standby unit's receiver is kept on in order to monitor the link. However, the received signal is terminated at the switch level.

In Split Protection mode, an optical splitter is used to route traffic to an optical GbE port on each IP-20C unit. Both ports on each IP-20C unit belong to a LAG, with 100% distribution to the port connected to the optical splitter on each IP-20C unit. Split Protection mode is only available for optical GbE ports on the IP-20C.

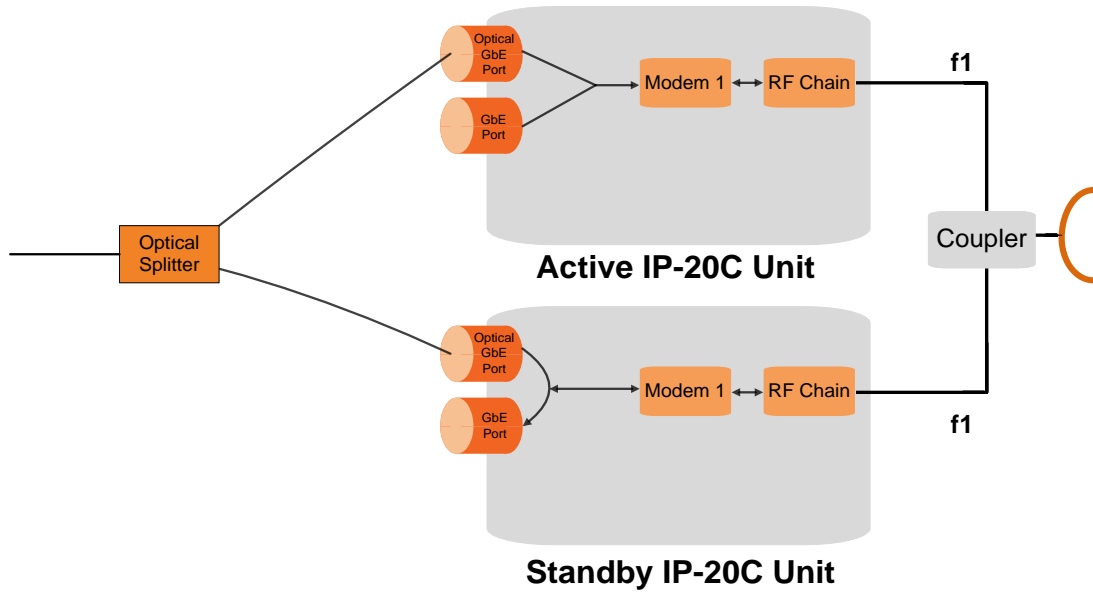


Figure 76: 1+1 HSB Protection – Split Protection Mode

Alternatively, traffic can be routed to the IP-20C units via an external switch. This is called Line Protection mode.

Line Protection mode can be used for electrical as well as optical GbE ports. Traffic is routed from two GbE ports on an external switch to a GbE port on the active and a GbE port on the standby IP-20C unit. LACP protocol is used to determine which IP-20C port is active and which port is standby, and traffic is only forwarded to the active port.

Note: The external switch must support LACP. IP-20C supports LACP for purposes of line protection only.

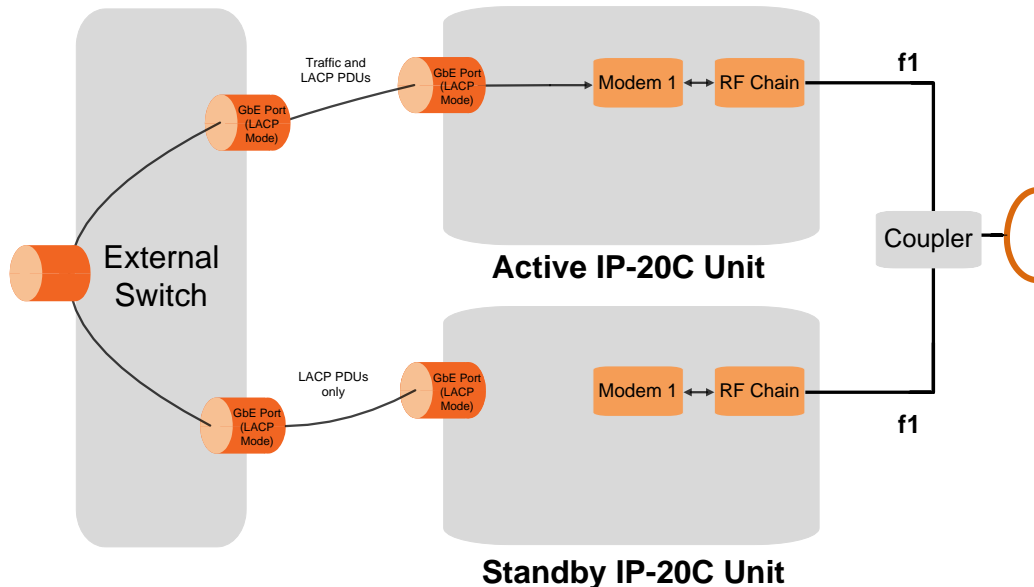


Figure 77: 1+1 HSB Protection – Line Protection Mode

In a 1+1 HSB configuration, each IP-20C monitors its own radio. If the active IP-20C detects a radio failure, it initiates a switchover to the standby IP-20C.

MultiCore 2+2 HSB protection utilizes two IP-20C units operating in dual core mode, with a single antenna, to provide hardware redundancy for Ethernet traffic in a dual core configuration. In effect, a MultiCore 2+2 HSB configuration is a protected MultiCore 2+0 configuration.

In a MultiCore 2+2 HSB configuration, each IP-20C monitors both of its cores. If the active IP-20C detects a radio failure in either of its cores, it initiates a switchover to the standby IP-20C.

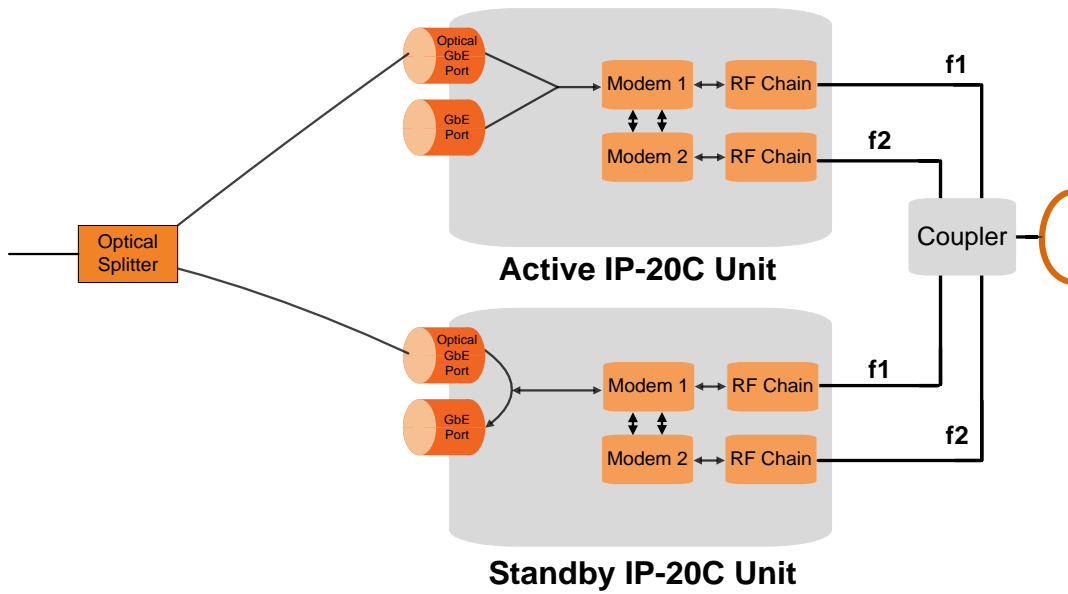


Figure 78: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Protection – Split Protection Mode

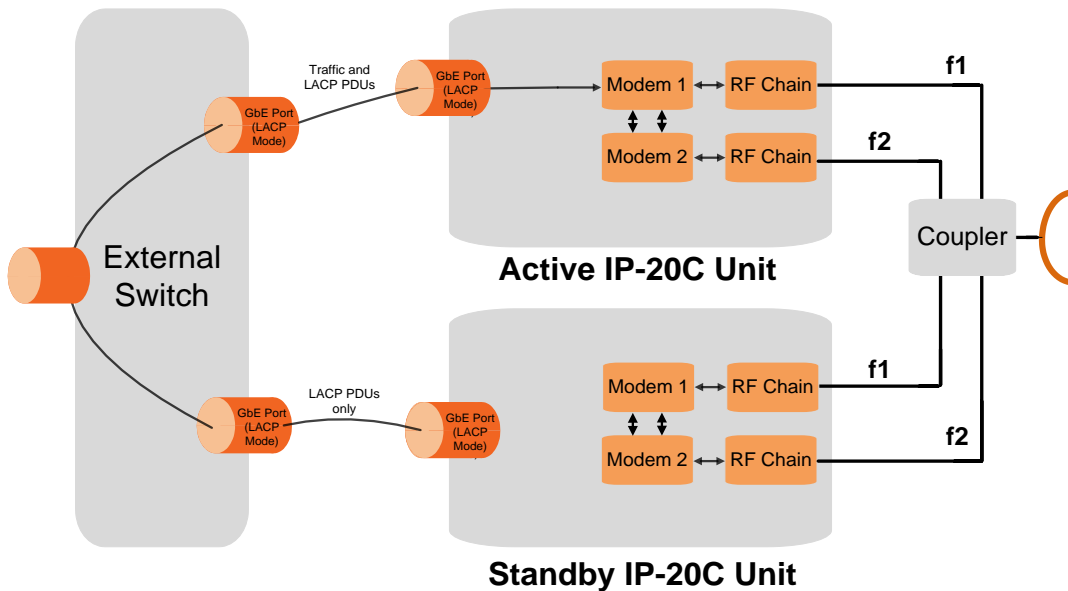


Figure 79: MultiCore 2+2 HSB Protection – Line Protection Mode

5.2.12.1 Management for External Protection

In an external protection configuration, the standby unit is managed via the active unit. A protection cable connects the two IP-20C units via their management ports. This cable is used for internal management. By placing an Ethernet splitter on the protection port, the user can add another cable for local management (for a detailed description, refer to *Management Connection for 4x4 MIMO and 1+1/2+2 HSB Configurations* on page 39). A single IP address is used for both IP-20C units, to ensure that management is not lost in the event of switchover.

Note: If in-band management is used, no splitter is necessary.

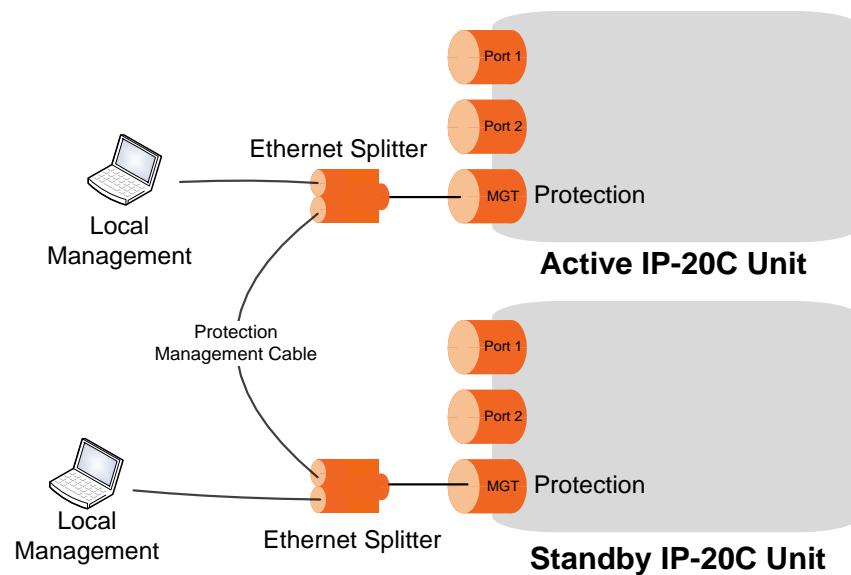


Figure 80: Internal and Local Management

The active and standby units must have the same configuration. The configuration of the active unit can be manually copied to the standby unit. Upon copying, both units are automatically reset. Therefore, it is important to ensure that the units are fully and properly configured when the system is initially brought into service.

Note: Dynamic and hitless copy-to-mate functionality is planned for future release.

5.2.12.2 Switchover

In the event of switchover, the standby unit becomes the active unit and the active unit becomes the standby unit. Switchover takes less than 50 msec.

The following events trigger switchover for HSB protection according to their priority, with the highest priority triggers listed first:

- 1 Loss of active unit
- 2 Lockout
- 3 Radio/Ethernet interface failure
- 4 Manual switch

5.2.13 ATPC

ATPC is a closed-loop mechanism by which each carrier changes the TX power according to the indication received across the link, in order to achieve a desired RSL on the other side of the link.

ATPC enables the transmitter to operate at less than maximum power for most of the time. When fading conditions occur, TX power is increased as needed until the maximum is reached.

The ATPC mechanism has several potential advantages, including less power consumption and longer amplifier component life, thereby reducing overall system cost.

ATPC is frequently used as a means to mitigate frequency interference issues with the environment, thus allowing new radio links to be easily coordinated in frequency congested areas.

5.2.13.1 ATPC Override Timer

This feature complies with NSMA Recommendation WG 18.91.032. With ATPC enabled, if the radio automatically increases its TX power up to the configured maximum it can lead to a period of sustained transmission at maximum power, resulting in unacceptable interference with other systems.

To minimize interference, IP-20C provides an ATPC override mechanism. When ATPC override is enabled, a timer begins when ATPC raises the TX power to its maximum. When the timer expires, the ATPC maximum TX power is overridden by the user-configured ATPC override TX power level until the user manually cancels the ATPC override. The unit then returns to normal ATPC operation.

The following parameters can be configured:

- **ATPC Override Admin** – Determines whether the ATPC override mechanism is enabled.
- **Override TX Level** – The TX power, in dBm, used when the unit is in an ATPC override state.
- **Override Timeout** – The amount of time, in seconds, the timer counts from the moment the radio reaches its maximum configured TX power until ATPC override goes into effect.

When the radio enters ATPC override state, the radio transmits no higher than the pre-determined ATPC override TX level, and an ATPC override alarm is raised. The radio remains in ATPC override state until the ATPC override state is manually cancelled by the user (or the unit is reset).

In a configuration with unit protection, the ATPC override state is propagated to the standby unit in the event of switchover.

Note: When canceling an ATPC override state, the user should ensure that the underlying problem has been corrected. Otherwise, ATPC may be overridden again.

5.2.14 Radio Signal Quality PMs

IP-20C supports the following radio signal quality PMs. For each of these PM types, users can display the minimum and maximum values, per radio, for every 15-minute interval. Users can also define thresholds and display the number of seconds during which the radio was not within the defined threshold.

- RSL (users can define two RSL thresholds)
- TSL
- MSE
- XPI

Users can display BER PMs, including the current BER per radio, and define thresholds for Excessive BER and Signal Degrade BER. Alarms are issued if these thresholds are exceeded. See *Configurable BER Threshold for Alarms and Traps* on page 213. Users can also configure an alarm that is raised if the RSL falls beneath a user-defined threshold. See *RSL Threshold Alarm* on page 213.

5.2.15 Radio Utilization PMs

IP-20C supports the following counters, as well as additional PMs based on these counters:

- Radio Traffic Utilization – Measures the percentage of radio capacity utilization, and used to generate the following PMs for every 15-minute interval:
 - Peak Utilization (%)
 - Average Utilization (%)
 - Over-Threshold Utilization (seconds). The utilization threshold can be defined by the user (0-100%).
- Radio Traffic Throughput – Measures the total effective Layer 2 traffic sent through the radio (Mbps), and used to generate the following PMs for every 15-minute interval:
 - Peak Throughput
 - Average Throughput
 - Over-Threshold Utilization (seconds). The threshold is defined as 0.
- Radio Traffic Capacity – Measures the total L1 bandwidth (payload plus overheads) sent through the radio (Mbps), and used to generate the following PMs for every 15-minute interval:
 - Peak Capacity
 - Average Capacity
 - Over-Threshold Utilization (seconds). The threshold is defined as 0.
- Frame Error Rate – Measures the frame error rate (%), and used to generate Frame Error Rate PMs for every 15-minute interval.

5.3 Ethernet Features

IP-20C features a service-oriented Ethernet switching fabric that provides a total switching capacity of up to 5 Gbps or 3.125 mpps. IP-20C has an electrical GbE interface that supports PoE, and two SFP interfaces, as well as an FE interface for management. The second SFP interface can also be used for data sharing.

IP-20C's service-oriented Ethernet paradigm enables operators to configure VLAN definition, CoS, and security on a service, service-point, and interface level.

IP-20C provides personalized and granular QoS that enables operators to customize traffic management parameters per customer, application, service type, or in any other way that reflects the operator's business and network requirements.

This section includes:

- Ethernet Services Overview
- IP-20C's Ethernet Capabilities
- Supported Standards
- Ethernet Service Model
- Ethernet Interfaces
- Quality of Service (QoS)
- Global Switch Configuration
- Automatic State Propagation and Link Loss Forwarding
- Adaptive Bandwidth Notification (EOAM)
- Network Resiliency
- OAM

5.3.1 Ethernet Services Overview

The IP-20C services model is premised on supporting the standard MEF services (MEF 6, 10), and builds upon this support by the use of very high granularity and flexibility. Operationally, the IP-20C Ethernet services model is designed to offer a rich feature set combined with simple and user-friendly configuration, enabling users to plan, activate, and maintain any packet-based network scenario.

This section first describes the basic Ethernet services model as it is defined by the MEF, then goes on to provide a basic overview of IP-20C's Ethernet services implementation.

The following figure illustrates the basic MEF Ethernet services model.

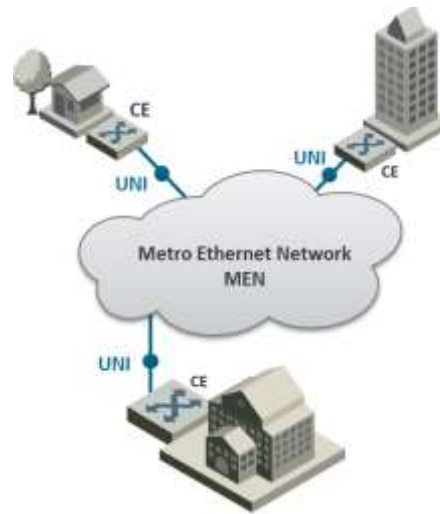


Figure 81: Basic Ethernet Service Model

In this illustration, the Ethernet service is conveyed by the Metro Ethernet Network (MEN) provider. Customer Equipment (CE) is connected to the network at the User Network Interface (UNI) using a standard Ethernet interface (10/100 Mbps, 1 Gbps). The CE may be a router, bridge/switch, or host (end system). A NI is defined as the demarcation point between the customer (subscriber) and provider network, with a standard IEEE 802.3 Ethernet PHY and MAC.

The services are defined from the point of view of the network's subscribers (users). Ethernet services can be supported over a variety of transport technologies and protocols in the MEN, such as SDH/SONET, Ethernet, ATM, MPLS, and GFP. However, from the user's perspective, the network connection at the user side of the UNI is only Ethernet.

5.3.1.1 EVC

Subscriber services extend from UNI to UNI. Connectivity between UNIs is defined as an Ethernet Virtual Connection (EVC), as shown in the following figure.

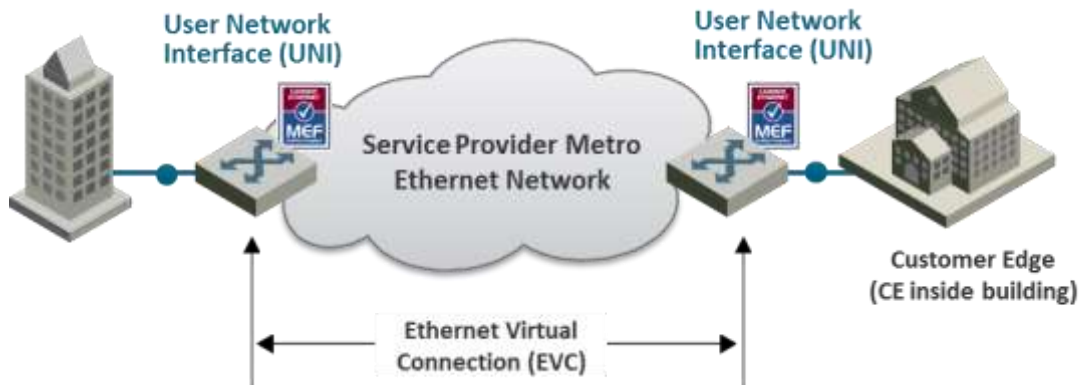


Figure 82: Ethernet Virtual Connection (EVC)

An EVC is defined by the MEF as an association of two or more UNIs that limits the exchange of service frames to UNIs in the Ethernet Virtual Connection. The EVC perform two main functions:

- Connects two or more customer sites (UNIs), enabling the transfer of Ethernet frames between them.
- Prevents data transfer involving customer sites that are not part of the same EVC. This feature enables the EVC to maintain a secure and private data channel.

A single UNI can support multiple EVCs via the Service Multiplexing attribute. An ingress service frame that is mapped to the EVC can be delivered to one or more of the UNIs in the EVC, other than the ingress UNI. It is vital to avoid delivery back to the ingress UNI, and to avoid delivery to a UNI that does not belong to the EVC. An EVC is always bi-directional in the sense that ingress service frames can originate at any UNI in an EVC.

Service frames must be delivered with the same Ethernet MAC address and frame structure that they had upon ingress to the service. In other words, the frame must be unchanged from source to destination, in contrast to routing in which headers are discarded. Based on these characteristics, an EVC can be used to form a Layer 2 private line or Virtual Private Network (VPN).

One or more VLANs can be mapped (bundled) to a single EVC.

The MEF has defined three types of EVCs:

- 1 **Point to Point EVC** – Each EVC contains exactly two UNIs. The following figure shows two point-to-point EVCs connecting one site to two other sites.

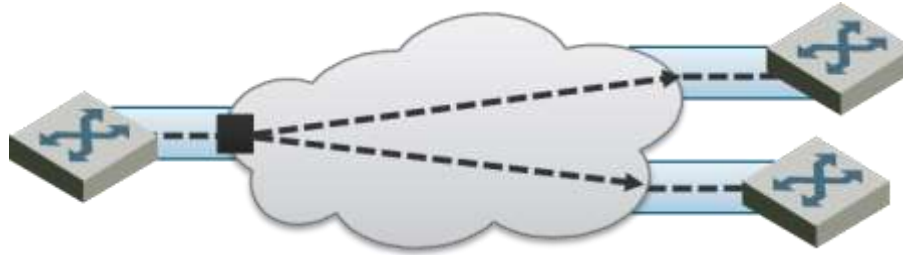


Figure 83: Point to Point EVC

- 2 **Multipoint (Multipoint-to-Multipoint) EVC** – Each EVC contains two or more UNIs. In the figure below, three sites belong to a single Multipoint EVC and can forward Ethernet frames to each other.

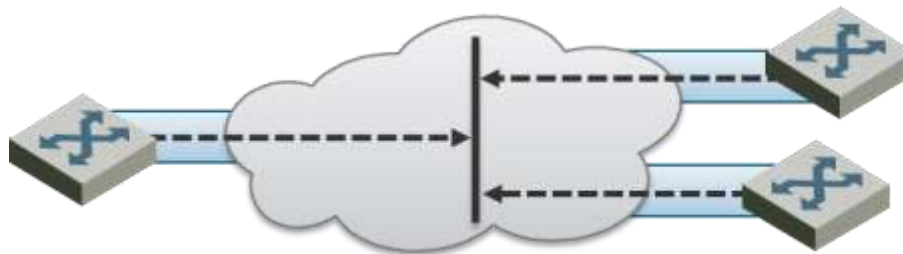


Figure 84: Multipoint to Multipoint EVC

- 3 **Rooted Multipoint EVC (Point-to-Multipoint)** – Each EVC contains one or more UNIs, with one or more UNIs defined as Roots, and the others defined as Leaves. The Roots can forward frames to the Leaves. Leaves can only forward frames to the Roots, but not to other Leaves.

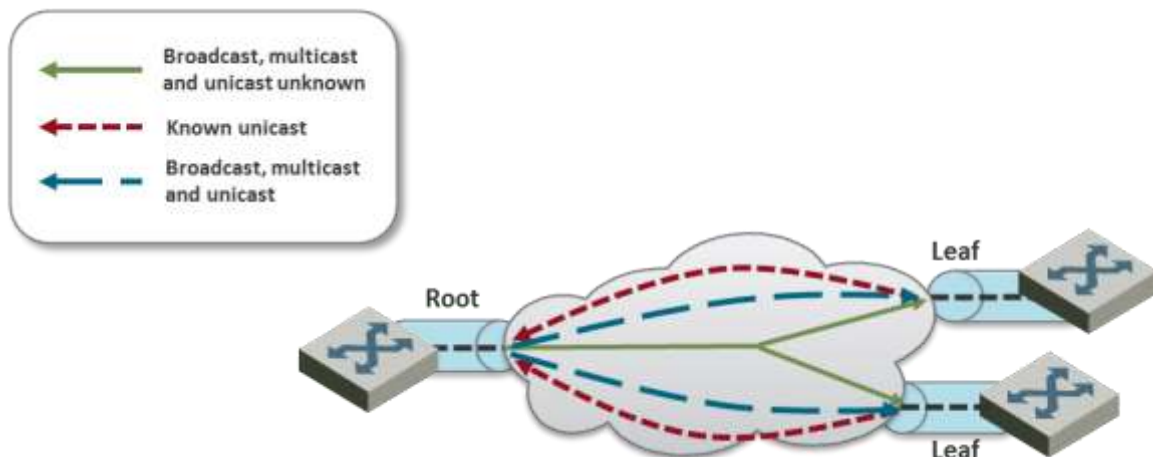


Figure 85: Rooted Multipoint EVC

In the IP-20C, an EVC is defined by either a VLAN or by Layer 1 connectivity (Pipe Mode).

5.3.1.2 Bandwidth Profile

The bandwidth profile (BW profile) is a set of traffic parameters that define the maximum limits of the customer's traffic.

At ingress, the bandwidth profile limits the traffic transmitted into the network:

- Each service frame is checked against the profile for compliance with the profile.
- Bandwidth profiles can be defined separately for each UNI (MEF 10.2).
- Service frames that comply with the bandwidth profile are forwarded.
- Service frames that do not comply with the bandwidth profile are dropped at the ingress interface.

The MEF has defined the following three bandwidth profile service attributes:

- Ingress BW profile per ingress UNI
- Ingress BW profile per EVC
- Ingress BW profile per CoS identifier

The BW profile service attribute consists of four traffic parameters:

- CIR (Committed Information Rate)
- CBS (Committed Burst Size)
- EIR (Excess Information Rate)
- EBS (Excess Burst Size)

Bandwidth profiles can be applied per UNI, per EVC at the UNI, or per CoS identifier for a specified EVC at the UNI.

The Color of the service frame is used to determine its bandwidth profile. If the service frame complies with the CIR and EIR defined in the bandwidth profile, it is marked Green. In this case, the average and maximum service frame rates are less than or equal to the CIR and CBS, respectively.

If the service frame does not comply with the CIR defined in the bandwidth profile, but does comply with the EIR and EBS, it is marked Yellow. In this case, the average service frame rate is greater than the CIR but less than the EIR, and the maximum service frame size is less than the EBS.

If the service frame fails to comply with both the CIR and the EIR defined in the bandwidth profile, it is marked Red and discarded.

In the IP-20C, bandwidth profiles are constructed using a full standardized TrTCM policer mechanism.

5.3.1.3 Ethernet Services Definitions

The MEF provides a model for defining Ethernet services. The purpose of the MEF model is to help subscribers better understand the variations among different types of Ethernet services. IP-20C supports a variety of service types defined by the MEF. All of these service types share some common attributes, but there are also differences as explained below.

Ethernet service types are generic constructs used to create a broad range of services. Each Ethernet service type has a set of Ethernet service attributes that define the characteristics of the service. These Ethernet service attributes in turn are associated with a set of parameters that provide various options for the various service attributes.



Figure 86: MEF Ethernet Services Definition Framework

The MEF defines three generic Ethernet service type constructs, including their associated service attributes and parameters:

- Ethernet Line (E-Line)
- Ethernet LAN (E-LAN)
- Ethernet Tree (E-Tree)

Multiple Ethernet services are defined for each of the three generic Ethernet service types. These services are differentiated by the method for service identification used at the UNIs. Services using All-to-One Bundling UNIs (port-based) are referred to as “Private” services, while services using Service Multiplexed (VLAN-based) UNIs are referred to as “Virtual Private” services. This relationship is shown in the following table.

Table 12: MEF-Defined Ethernet Service Types

Service Type	Port Based (All to One Bundling)	VLAN-BASED (EVC identified by VLAN ID)
E-Line (Point-to-Point EVC)	Ethernet Private Line (EPL)	Ethernet Virtual Private Line (EVPL)
E-LAN (Multipoint-to-Multipoint EVC)	Ethernet Private LAN (EP-LAN)	Ethernet Virtual Private LAN (EVP-LAN)
E-Tree (Rooted Multipoint EVC)	Ethernet Private Tree (EP-Tree)	Ethernet Virtual Private Tree (EVP-Tree)

All-to-One Bundling refers to a UNI attribute in which all Customer Edge VLAN IDs (CE-VLAN IDs) entering the service via the UNI are associated with a single EVC. Bundling refers to a UNI attribute in which more than one CE-VLAN ID can be associated with an EVC.

To fully specify an Ethernet service, additional service attributes must be defined in addition to the UNI and EVC service attributes. These service attributes can be grouped under the following categories:

- Ethernet physical interfaces
- Traffic parameters
- Performance parameters

- Class of service
- Service frame delivery
- VLAN tag support
- Service multiplexing
- Bundling
- Security filters

E-Line Service

The Ethernet line service (E-Line service) provides a point-to-point Ethernet Virtual Connection (EVC) between two UNIs. The E-Line service type can be used to create a broad range of Ethernet point-to-point services and to maintain the necessary connectivity. In its simplest form, an E-Line service type can provide symmetrical bandwidth for data sent in either direction with no performance assurances, e.g., best effort service between two FE UNIs. In more sophisticated forms, an E-Line service type can provide connectivity between two UNIs with different line rates and can be defined with performance assurances such as CIR with an associated CBS, EIR with an associated EBS, delay, delay variation, loss, and availability for a given Class of Service (CoS) instance. Service multiplexing can occur at one or both UNIs in the EVC. For example, more than one point-to-point EVC can be offered on the same physical port at one or both of the UNIs.

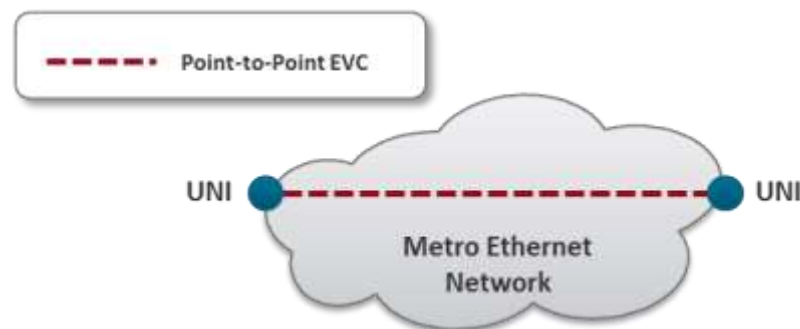


Figure 87: E-Line Service Type Using Point-to-Point EVC

Ethernet Private Line Service

An Ethernet Private Line (EPL) service is specified using an E-Line Service type. An EPL service uses a point-to-point EVC between two UNIs and provides a high degree of transparency for service frames between the UNIs that it interconnects such that the service frame's header and payload are identical at both the source and destination UNI when the service frame is delivered (L1 service). A dedicated UNI (physical interface) is used for the service and service multiplexing is not allowed. All service frames are mapped to a single EVC at the UNI. In cases where the EVC speed is less than the UNI speed, the CE is expected to shape traffic to the ingress bandwidth profile of the service to prevent the traffic from being discarded by the service. The EPL is a port-based service, with a single EVC across dedicated UNIs providing site-to-site connectivity. EPL is the most popular Ethernet service type due to its simplicity, and is used in diverse applications such as replacing a TDM private line.

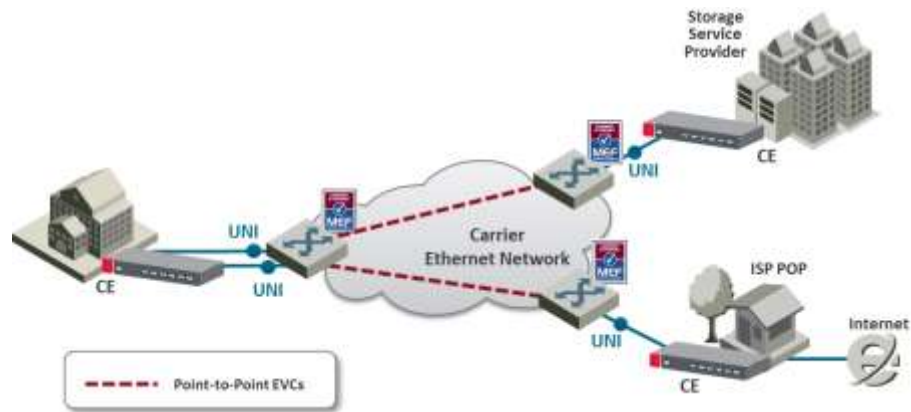


Figure 88: EPL Application Example

Ethernet Virtual Private Line Service

An Ethernet Virtual Private Line (EVPL) is created using an E-Line service type. An EVPL can be used to create services similar to EPL services. However, several characteristics differ between EPL and EVPL services.

First, an EVPL provides for service multiplexing at the UNI, which means it enables multiple EVCs to be delivered to customer premises over a single physical connection (UNI). In contrast, an EPL only enables a single service to be delivered over a single physical connection.

Second, the degree of transparency for service frames is lower in an EVPL than in an EPL.

Since service multiplexing is permitted in EVPL services, some service frames may be sent to one EVC while others may be sent to other EVCs. EVPL services can be used to replace Frame Relay and ATM L2 VPN services, in order to deliver higher bandwidth, end-to-end services.

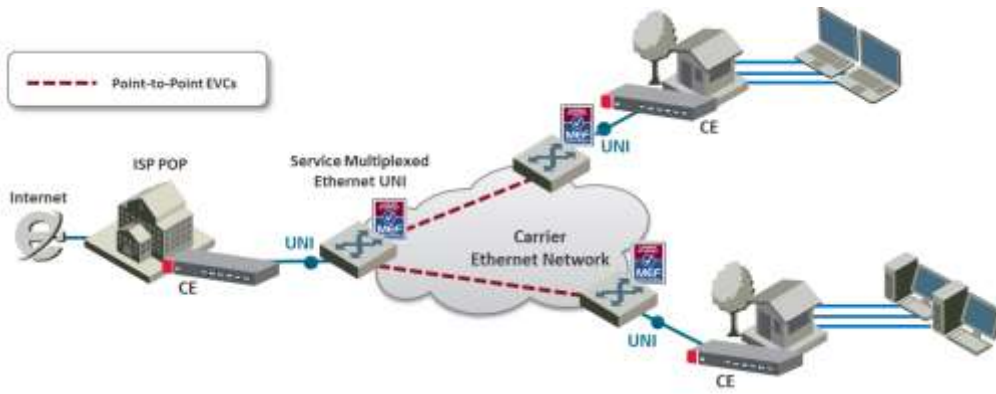


Figure 89: EVPL Application Example

E-LAN Service

The E-LAN service type is based on Multipoint to Multipoint EVCs, and provides multipoint connectivity by connecting two or more UNIs. Each site (UNI) is connected to a multipoint EVC, and customer frames sent from one UNI can be received at one or more UNIs. If additional sites are added, they can be connected to the same multipoint EVC, simplifying the service activation process. Logically, from the point of view of a customer using an E-LAN service, the MEN can be viewed as a LAN.

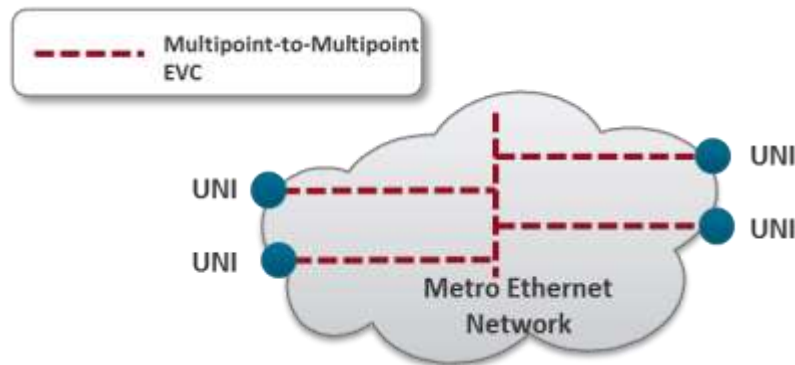


Figure 90: E-LAN Service Type Using Multipoint-to-Multipoint EVC

The E-LAN service type can be used to create a broad range of services. In its basic form, an E-LAN service can provide a best effort service with no performance assurances between the UNIs. In more sophisticated forms, an E-LAN service type can be defined with performance assurances such as CIR with an associated CBS, EIR with an associated EBS, delay, delay variation, loss, and availability for a given CoS instance.

For an E-LAN service type, service multiplexing may occur at none, one, or more than one of the UNIs in the EVC. For example, an E-LAN service type (Multipoint-to-Multipoint EVC) and an E-Line service type (Point-to-Point EVC) can be service multiplexed at the same UNI. In such a case, the E-LAN service type can be used to interconnect other customer sites while the E-Line service type is used to connect to the Internet, with both services offered via service multiplexing at the same UNI.

E-LAN services can simplify the interconnection among a large number of sites, in comparison to hub/mesh topologies implemented using point-to-point networking technologies such as Frame Relay and ATM.

For example, consider a point-to-point network configuration implemented using E-Line services. If a new site (UNI) is added, it is necessary to add a new, separate EVC to all of the other sites in order to enable the new UNI to communicate with the other UNIs, as shown in the following figure.

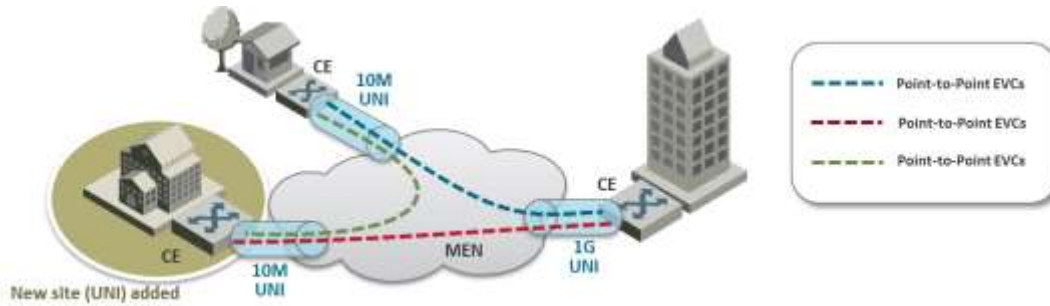


Figure 91: Adding a Site Using an E-Line service

In contrast, when using an E-LAN service, it is only necessary to add the new UNI to the multipoint EVC. No additional EVCs are required, since the E-LAN service uses a multipoint to multipoint EVC that enables the new UNI to communicate with each of the others UNIs. Only one EVC is required to achieve multi-site connectivity, as shown in the following figure.

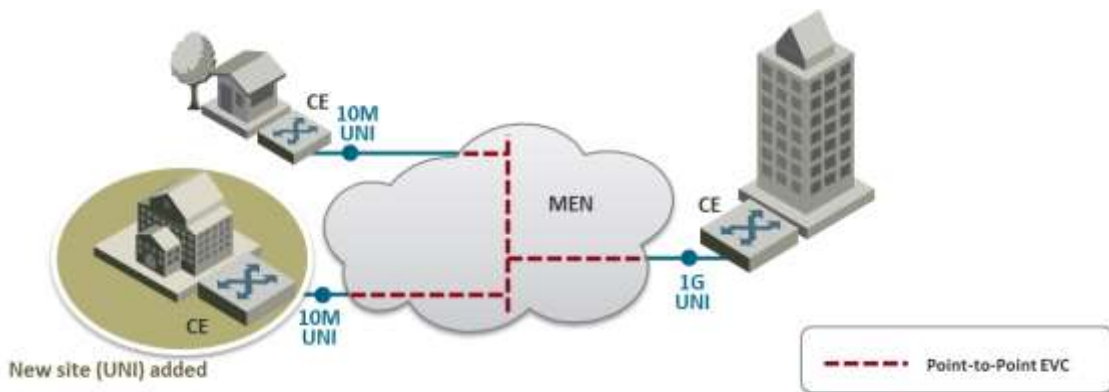


Figure 92: Adding a Site Using an E-LAN service

The E-LAN service type can be used to create a broad range of services, such as private LAN and virtual private LAN services.

Ethernet Private LAN Service

It is often desirable to interconnect multiple sites using a Local Area Network (LAN) protocol model and have equivalent performance and access to resources such as servers and storage. Customers commonly require a highly transparent service that connects multiple UNIs. The Ethernet Private LAN (EP-LAN) service is defined with this in mind, using the E-LAN service type. The EP-LAN is a Layer 2

service in which each UNI is dedicated to the EP-LAN service. A typical use case for EP-LAN services is Transparent LAN.

The following figure shows an example of an EP-LAN service in which the service is defined to provide Customer Edge VLAN (CE-VLAN) tag preservation and tunneling for key Layer 2 control protocols. Customers can use this service to configure VLANs across the sites without the need to coordinate with the service provider. Each interface is configured for All-to-One Bundling, which enables the EP-LAN service to support CE-VLAN ID preservation. In addition, EP-LAN supports CE-VLAN CoS preservation.

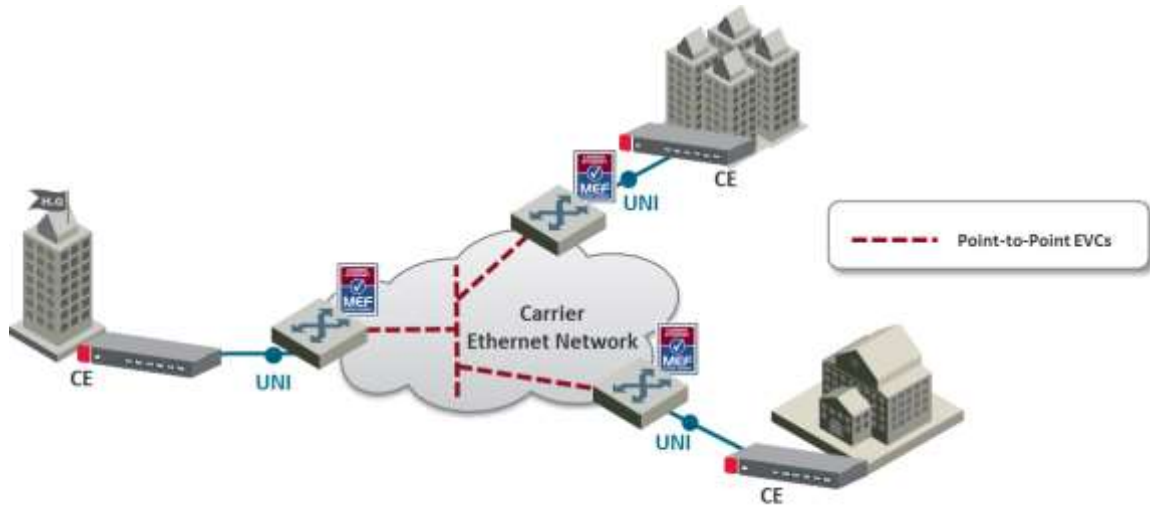


Figure 93: MEF Ethernet Private LAN Example

Ethernet Virtual Private LAN Service

Customers often use an E-LAN service type to connect their UNIs in an MEN, while at the same time accessing other services from one or more of those UNIs. For example, a customer might want to access a public or private IP service from a UNI at the customer site that is also used to provide E-LAN service among the customer’s several metro locations. The Ethernet Virtual Private LAN (EVP-LAN) service is defined to address this need. EVP-LAN is actually a combination of EVPL and E-LAN.

Bundling can be used on the UNIs in the Multipoint-to-Multipoint EVC, but is not mandatory. As such, CE-VLAN tag preservation and tunneling of certain Layer 2 control protocols may or may not be provided. Service multiplexing is allowed on each UNI. A typical use case would be to provide Internet access a corporate VPN via one UNI.

The following figure provides an example of an EVP-LAN service.

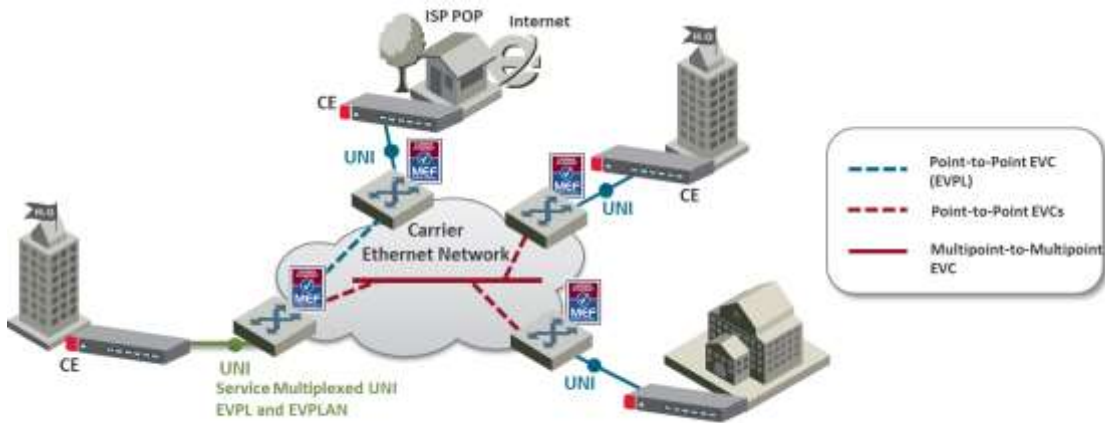


Figure 94: MEF Ethernet Virtual Private LAN Example

E-Tree Service

The E-Tree service type is an Ethernet service type that is based on Rooted-Multipoint EVCs. In its basic form, an E-Tree service can provide a single Root for multiple Leaf UNIs. Each Leaf UNI can exchange data with only the Root UNI. A service frame sent from one Leaf UNI cannot be delivered to another Leaf UNI. This service can be particularly useful for Internet access, and video-over-IP applications such as multicast/broadcast packet video. One or more CoS values can be associated with an E-Tree service.

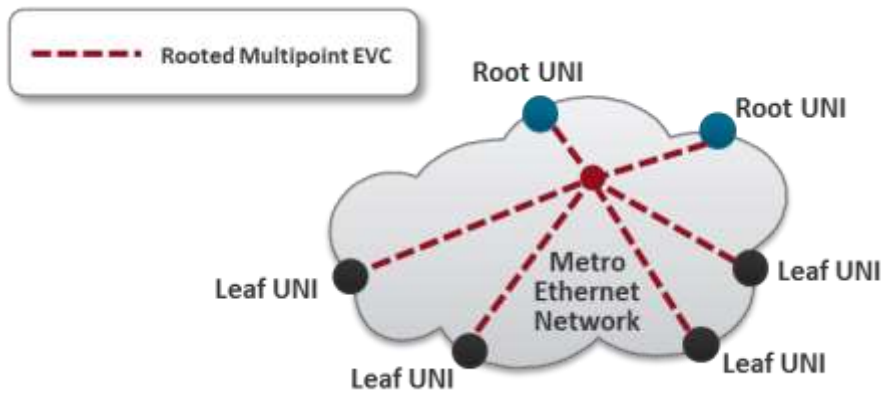


Figure 95: E-Tree Service Type Using Rooted-Multipoint EVC

Two or more Root UNIs can be supported in advanced forms of the E-Tree service type. In this scenario, each Leaf UNI can exchange data only with the Root UNIs. The Root UNIs can communicate with each other. Redundant access to the Root can also be provided, effectively allowing for enhanced service reliability and flexibility.



Figure 96: E-Tree Service Type Using Multiple Roots

Service multiplexing is optional and may occur on any combination of UNIs in the EVC. For example, an E-Tree service type using a Rooted-Multipoint EVC, and an E-Line service type using a Point-to-Point EVC, can be service multiplexed on the same UNI. In this example, the E-Tree service type can be used to support a specific application at the Subscriber UNI, e.g., ISP access to redundant PoPs (multiple Roots at ISP PoPs), while the E-Line Service type is used to connect to another enterprise site with a Point-to-Point EVC.

Ethernet Private Tree Service

The Ethernet Private Tree service (EP-Tree) is designed to supply the flexibility for configuring multiple sites so that the services are distributed from a centralized site, or from a few centralized sites. In this setup, the centralized site or sites are designed as Roots, while the remaining sites are designated as Leaves. CE-VLAN tags are preserved and key Layer 2 control protocols are tunneled. The advantage of such a configuration is that the customer can configure VLANs across its sites without the need to coordinate with the service provider. Each interface is configured for All-to-One Bundling, which means that EP-Tree services support CE-VLAN ID preservation. EP-Tree also supports CE-VLAN CoS preservation. EP-Tree requires dedication of the UNIs to the single EP-Tree service.

The following figure provides an example of an EP-Tree service.

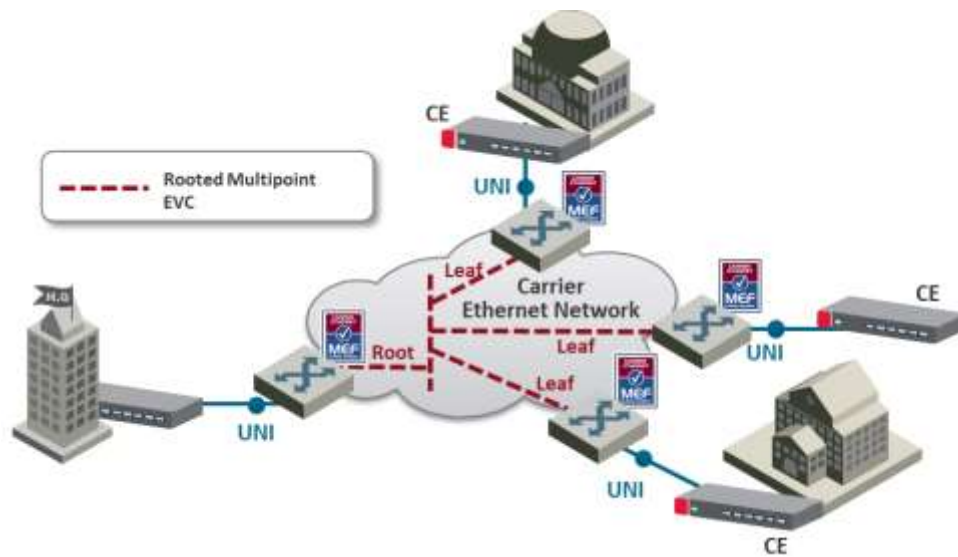


Figure 97: MEF Ethernet Private Tree Example

Ethernet Virtual Private Tree Service

In order to access several applications and services from well-defined access points (Root), the UNIs are attached to the service in a Rooted Multipoint connection. Customer UNIs can also support other services, such as EVPL and EVP-LAN services. An EVP-Tree service is used in such cases. Bundling can be used on the UNIs in the Rooted Multipoint EVC, but it is not mandatory. As such, CE-VLAN tag preservation and tunneling of certain Layer 2 Control Protocols may or may not be provided. EVP-Tree enables each UNI to support multiple services. A good example would be a customer that has an EVP-LAN service providing data connectivity among three UNIs, while using an EVP-Tree service to provide video broadcast from a video hub location. The following figure provides an example of a Virtual Private Tree service.

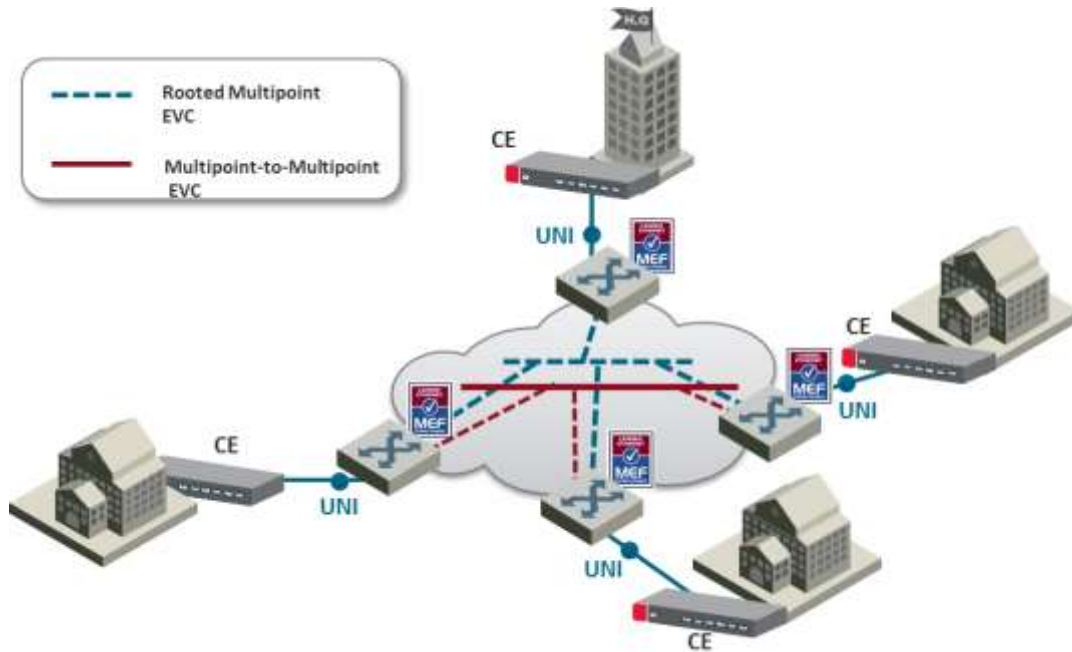


Figure 98: Ethernet Virtual Private Tree Example

IP-20C enables network connectivity for **Mobile Backhaul** cellular infrastructure, fixed networks, private networks and enterprises.

Mobile Backhaul refers to the network between the Base Station sites and the Network Controller/Gateway sites for all generations of mobile technologies. Mobile equipment and networks with ETH service layer functions can support MEF Carrier Ethernet services using the service attributes defined by the MEF.

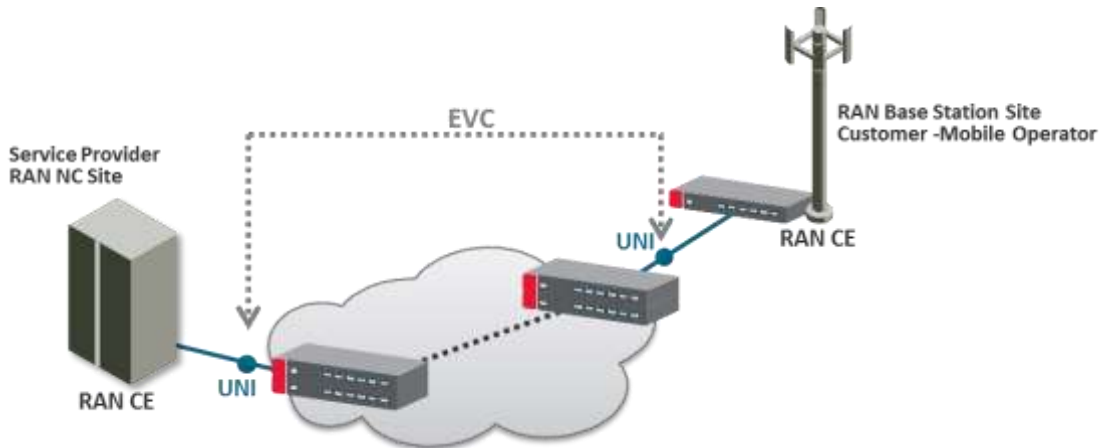


Figure 99: Mobile Backhaul Reference Model

The IP-20C services concept is purpose built to support the standard MEF services for mobile backhaul (MEF 22, mobile backhaul implementation agreement), as an addition to the baseline definition of MEF Services (MEF 6) using service attributes (as well as in MEF 10). E-Line, E-LAN and E-Tree services are well defined as the standard services.

5.3.1.4 IP-20C Universal Packet Backhaul Services Core

IP-20C addresses the customer demand for multiple services of any of the aforementioned types (EPL, EVPL, EP –LAN, EVP-LAN, EP-Tree, and EVP-Tree) through its rich service model capabilities and flexible integrated switch application. Additional Layer 1 point-based services are supported as well, as explained in more detail below.

Services support in the mobile backhaul environment is provided using the IP-20C services core, which is structured around the building blocks shown in the figure below. IP-20C provides rich and secure packet backhaul services over any transport type with unified, simple, and error-free operation.



Figure 100: Packet Service Core Building Blocks

Any Service

- Ethernet services (EVCs)
 - E-Line (Point-to-Point)
 - E-LAN (Multipoint)
 - E-Tree (Point-to-Multipoint)⁸
- Port based (Smart Pipe) services

Any Transport

- Native Ethernet (802.1Q/Q-in-Q)
- Any topology and any mix of radio and fiber interfaces
- Seamless interworking with any optical network (NG-SDH, packet optical transport, IP/MPLS service/VPN routers)

⁸ E-Tree services are planned for future release.

Virtual Switching/Forwarding Engine

- Clear distinction between user facing service interfaces (UNI) and intra-network interfaces
- Fully flexible C-VLAN and S-VLAN encapsulation (classification and preservation)
- Improved security/isolation without limiting C-VLAN reuse by different customers
- Per-service MAC learning with 128K MAC addresses support

Fully Programmable and Future-Proof

- Network-processor-based services core
- Ready today to support emerging and future standards and networking protocols

Rich Policies and Tools with Unified and Simplified Management

- Personalized QoS (H-QoS)⁹
- Superb service OAM (FM, PM)¹⁰
- Carrier-grade service resiliency (G.8032)¹¹

5.3.2 IP-20C's Ethernet Capabilities

IP-20C is built upon a service-based paradigm that provides rich and secure frame backhaul services over any type of transport, with unified, simple, and error-free operation. IP-20C's services core includes a rich set of tools that includes:

- Service-based Quality of Service (QoS).
- Service OAM, including granular PMs, and service activation.
- Carrier-grade service resiliency using G.8032¹²

The following are IP-20C's main Carrier Ethernet transport features. This rich feature set provides a future-proof architecture to support backhaul evolution for emerging services.

- Up to 64 services
- Up to 32 service points per service
- All service types:¹³
 - Multipoint (E-LAN)
 - Point-to-Point (E-Line)
 - Point-to-Multipoint (E-Tree)
 - Smart Pipe

⁹ H-QoS support is planned for future release.

¹⁰ PM support is planned for future release.

¹¹ G.8032 support is planned for future release.

¹² G.8032 support is planned for future release.

¹³ Point-to-Multipoint service support is planned for future release.

- Management
- 128K MAC learning table, with separate learning per service (including limiters)
- Flexible transport and encapsulation via 802.1q and 802.1ad (Q-in-Q), with tag manipulation possible at ingress and egress
- High precision, flexible frame synchronization solution combining SyncE and 1588v2
- Hierarchical QoS with 2K service level queues, deep buffering, hierarchical scheduling via WFQ and Strict priority, and shaping at each level
- 1K hierarchical two-rate three-Color policers
 - Port based – Unicast, Multicast, Broadcast, Ethertype
 - Service-based
 - CoS-based
- Up to four link aggregation groups (LAG)
 - Hashing based on L2, L3, MPLS, and L4
- Enhanced <50msec network level resiliency (G.8032) for ring/mesh support

5.3.3 Supported Standards

IP-20C is fully MEF-9 and MEF-14 certified for all Carrier Ethernet services. For a full list of standards and certifications supported by IP-20C, refer to the following sections:

- Supported Ethernet Standards
- MEF Certifications for Ethernet Services

5.3.4 Ethernet Service Model

IP-20C's service-oriented Ethernet paradigm is based on Carrier-Ethernet Transport (CET), and provides a highly flexible and granular switching fabric for Ethernet services.

IP-20C's virtual switching/forwarding engine is based on a clear distinction between user-facing service interfaces and intra-network service interfaces. User-facing interfaces (UNIs) are configured as Service Access Points (SAPs), while intra-network interfaces (E-NNIs or NNIs) are configured as Service Network Points (SNPs).

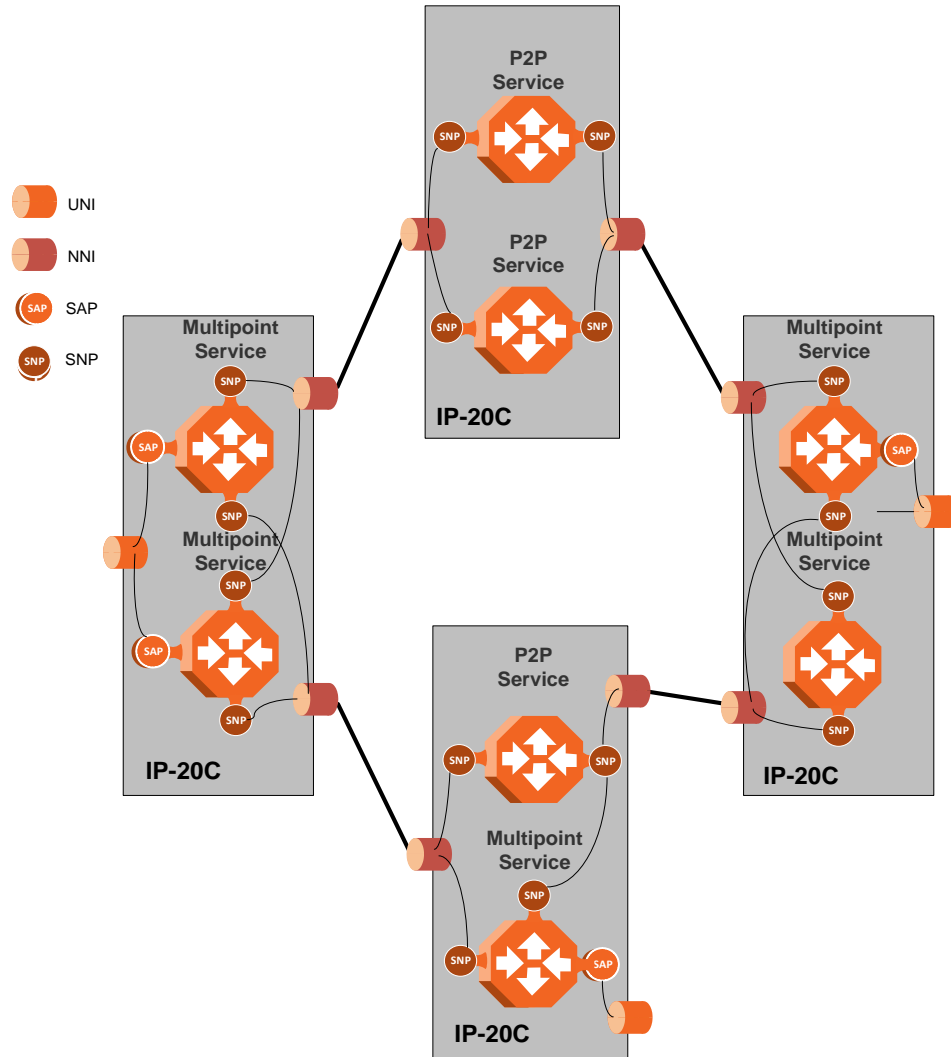


Figure 101: IP-20C Services Model

The IP-20C services core provides for fully flexible C-VLAN and S-VLAN encapsulation, with a full range of classification and preservation options available. Service security and isolation is provided without limiting the C-VLAN reuse capabilities of different customers.

Users can define up to 64 services on a single IP-20C. Each service constitutes a virtual bridge that defines the connectivity and behavior among the network element interfaces for the specific virtual bridge. In addition to user-defined services, IP-20C contains a pre-defined management service (Service ID 257). If needed, users can activate the management service and use it for in-band management.

To define a service, the user must configure virtual connections among the interfaces that belong to the service. This is done by configuring service points (SPs) on these interfaces.

A service can hold up to 32 service points. A service point is a logical entity attached to a physical or logical interface. Service points define the movement of frames through the service. Each service point includes both ingress and egress attributes.

Note: Management services can hold up to 30 SPs.

The following figure illustrates the IP-20C services model, with traffic entering and leaving the network element. IP-20C’s switching fabric is designed to provide a high degree of flexibility in the definition of services and the treatment of data flows as they pass through the switching fabric.

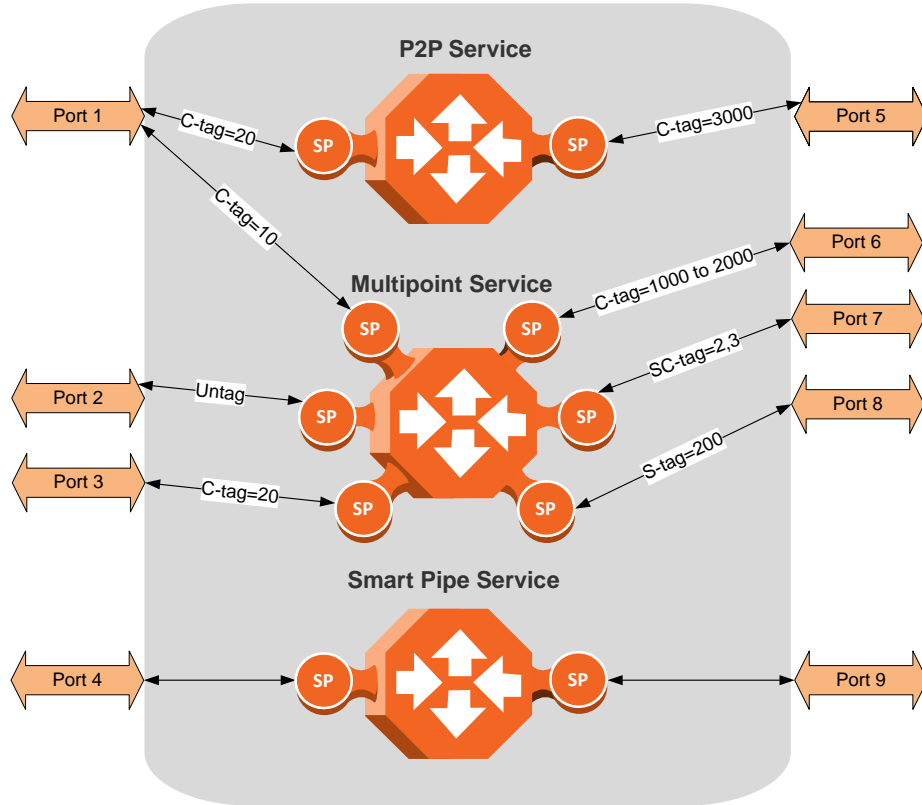


Figure 102: IP-20C Services Core

5.3.4.1 Frame Classification to Service Points and Services

Each arriving frame is classified to a specific service point, based on a key that consists of:

- The Interface ID of the interface through which the frame entered the IP-20C.
- The frame’s C-VLAN and/or S-VLAN tags.

If the classification mechanism finds a match between the key of the arriving frame and a specific service point, the frame is associated to the specific service to which the service point belongs. That service point is called the ingress service point for the frame, and the other service points in the service are optional egress service points for the frame. The frame is then forwarded from the ingress service point to an egress service point by means of flooding or dynamic address learning in the specific service. Services include a MAC entry table of up to 131,072 entries, with a global aging timer and a maximum learning limiter that are configurable per-service.

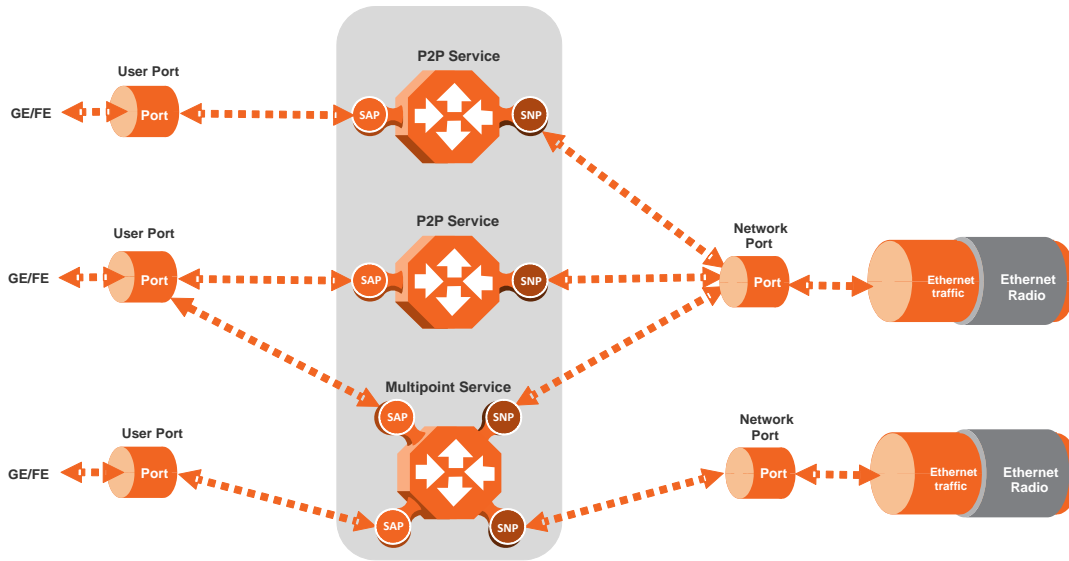


Figure 103: IP-20C Services Flow

5.3.4.2 Service Types

IP-20C supports the following service types:

- Point-to-Point Service (P2P)
- MultiPoint Service (MP)
- Management Service
- Point-to-Multipoint Service (E-Tree)

Note: Support for E-Tree services is planned for future release.

Point to Point Service (P2P)

Point-to-point services are used to provide connectivity between two interfaces of the network element. When traffic ingresses via one side of the service, it is immediately directed to the other side according to ingress and egress tunneling rules. This type of service contains exactly two service points and does not require MAC address-based learning or forwarding. Since the route is clear, the traffic is tunneled from one side of the service to the other and vice versa.

The following figure illustrates a P2P service.

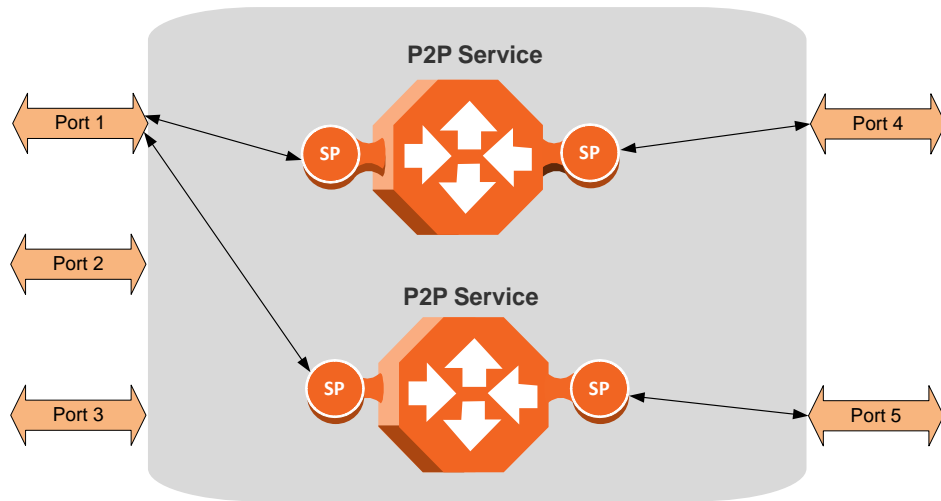


Figure 104: Point-to-Point Service

P2P services provide the building blocks for network services such as E-Line EVC (EPL and EVPL EVCs) and port-based services (Smart Pipe).

Multipoint Service (MP)

Multipoint services are used to provide connectivity between two or more service points. When traffic ingresses via one service point, it is directed to one of the service points in the service, other than the ingress service point, according to ingress and egress tunneling rules, and based on the learning and forwarding mechanism. If the destination MAC address is not known by the learning and forwarding mechanism, the arriving frame is flooded to all the other service points in the service except the ingress service point.

The following figure illustrates a Multipoint service.

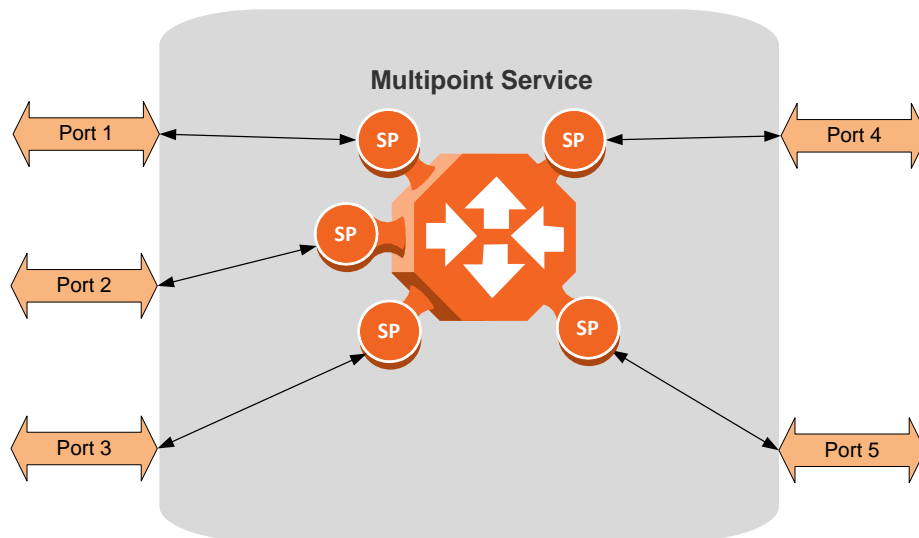


Figure 105: Multipoint Service

Multipoint services provide the building blocks for network services such as E-LAN EVCs (EP-LAN and EVP-LAN EVCs), and for E-Line EVCs (EPL and EVPL EVCs) in

which only two service points are active. In such a case, the user can disable MAC address learning in the service points to conserve system resources.

Learning and Forwarding Mechanism

IP-20C can learn up to 131,072 Ethernet source MAC addresses. IP-20C performs learning per service in order to enable the use of 64 virtual bridges in the network element. If necessary due to security issues or resource limitations, users can limit the size of the MAC forwarding table. The maximum size of the MAC forwarding table is configurable per service in granularity of 16 entries.

When a frame arrives via a specific service point, the learning mechanism checks the MAC forwarding table for the service to which the service point belongs to determine whether that MAC address is known to the service. If the MAC address is not found, the learning mechanism adds it to the table under the specific service.

In parallel with the learning process, the forwarding mechanism searches the service’s MAC forwarding table for the frame’s destination MAC address. If a match is found, the frame is forwarded to the service point associated with the MAC address. If not, the frame is flooded to all service points in the service.

The following table illustrates the operation of the learning and forwarding mechanism.

Table 13: Ethernet Services Learning and Forwarding

MAC Forwarding Table

Input Key for learning / forwarding (search) operation		Result	Entry Type
Service ID	MAC address	Service Point	
13	00:34:67:3a:aa:10	15	dynamic
13	00:0a:25:33:22:12	31	dynamic
28	00:0a:25:11:12:55	31	static
55	00:0a:25:33:22:12	15	dynamic
55	00:c3:20:57:14:89	31	dynamic
55	00:0a:25:11:12:55	31	dynamic

In addition to the dynamic learning mechanism, users can add static MAC addresses for static routing in each service. These user entries are not considered when determining the maximum size of the MAC forwarding table.

Users can manually clear all the dynamic entries from the MAC forwarding table. Users can also delete static entries per service.

The system also provides an automatic flush process. An entry is erased from the table as a result of:

- The global aging time expires for the entry.
- Loss of carrier occurs on the interface with which the entry is associated.
- Resiliency protocols, such as MSTP or G.8032.

Management Service (MNG)

The management service connects the local management port, the network element host CPU, and the traffic ports into a single service. The management service is pre-defined in the system, with Service ID 257. The pre-defined management service has a single service point that connects the service to the network element host CPU and the management port. To configure in-band management over multiple network elements, the user must connect the management service to the network by adding a service point on an interface that provides the required network connectivity.

Users can modify the attributes of the management service, but cannot delete it. The CPU service point is read-only and cannot be modified. The local management port is also connected to the service, but its service point is not visible to users. The management port is enabled by default and cannot be disabled.

The following figure illustrates a management service.

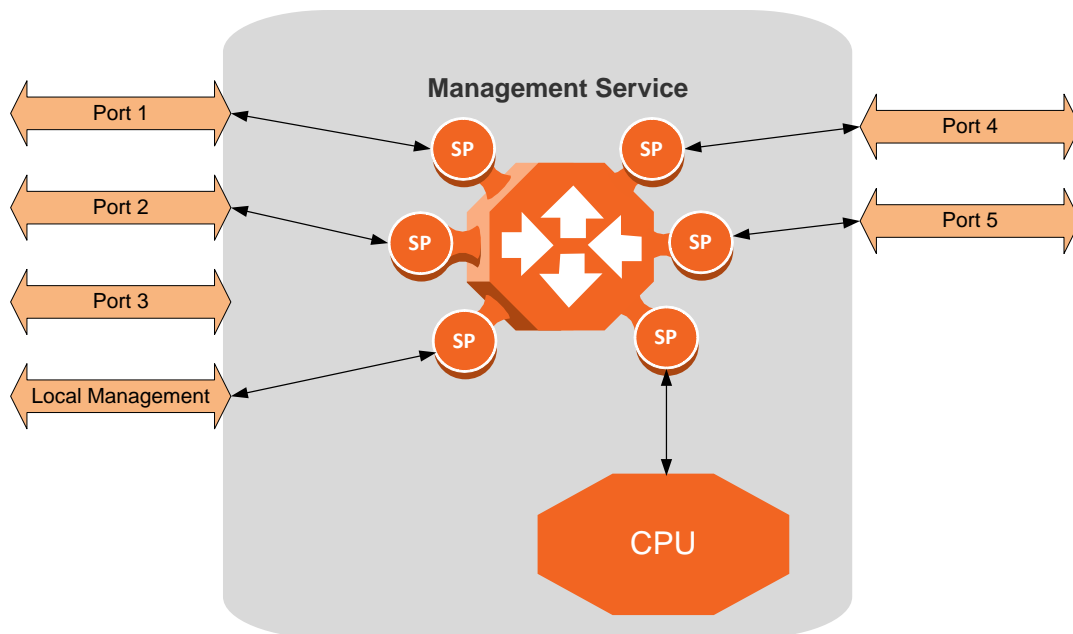


Figure 106: Management Service

Management services can provide building blocks for network services such as E-LAN EVCs (EP-LAN and EVP-LAN), as well as E-Line EVCs (EPL and EVPL EVCs) in which only two service points are active.

Service Attributes

IP-20C services have the following attributes:

- **Service ID** – A unique ID that identifies the service. The user must select the Service ID upon creating the service. The Service ID cannot be edited after the service has been created. Service ID 257 is reserved for the pre-defined Management service.

- **Service Type** – Determines the specific functionality that will be provided for Ethernet traffic using the service. For example, a Point-to-Point service provides traffic forwarding between two service points, with no need to learn a service topology based on source and destination MAC addresses. A Multipoint service enables operators to create an E-LAN service that includes several service points.
- **Service Admin Mode** – Defines whether or not the service is functional, i.e., able to receive and transmit traffic. When the Service Admin Mode is set to Operational, the service is fully functional. When the Service Admin Mode is set to Reserved, the service occupies system resources but is unable to transmit and receive data.
- **EVC-ID** – The Ethernet Virtual Connection ID (end-to-end). This parameter does not affect the network element's behavior, but is used by the NMS for topology management.
- **EVC Description** – The Ethernet Virtual Connection description. This parameter does not affect the network element's behavior, but is used by the NMS for topology management.
- **Maximum Dynamic MAC Address Learning per Service** – Defines the maximum number of dynamic Ethernet MAC address that the service can learn. This parameter is configured with a granularity of 16, and only applies to dynamic, not static, MAC addresses.
- **Static MAC Address Configuration** – Users can add static entries to the MAC forwarding table. The global aging time does not apply to static entries, and they are not counted with respect to the Maximum Dynamic MAC Address Learning. It is the responsibility of the user not to use all the 131,072 entries in the table if the user also wants to utilize dynamic MAC address learning.
- **CoS Mode** – Defines whether the service inherits ingress classification decisions made at previous stages or overwrites previous decisions and uses the default CoS defined for the service. For more details on IP-20C's hierarchical classification mechanism, refer to Classification on page 153.
- **Default CoS** – The default CoS value at the service level. If the CoS Mode is set to overwrite previous classification decisions, this is the CoS value used for frames entering the service.
- **xSTP Instance (0-46, 4095)** – The spanning tree instance ID to which the service belongs. The service can be a traffic engineering service (instance ID 4095) or can be managed by the xSTP engines of the network element.

5.3.4.3 Service Points

Service points are logical entities attached to the interfaces that make up the service. Service points define the movement of frames through the service. Without service points, a service is simply a virtual bridge with no ingress or egress interfaces.

IP-20C supports several types of service points:

- **Management (MNG) Service Point** – Only used for management services. The following figure shows a management service used for in-band management among four network elements in a ring. In this example, each service contains three MNG service points, two for East-West management connectivity in the ring, and one serving as the network gateway.

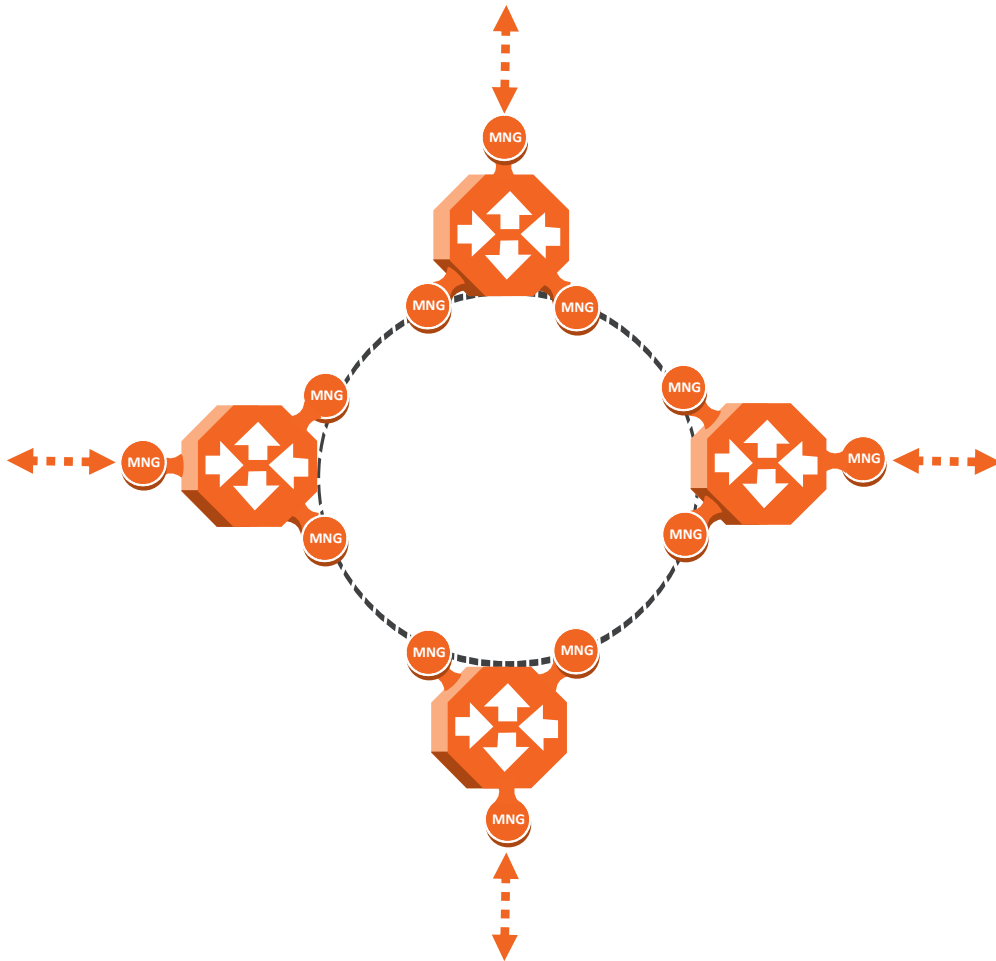


Figure 107: Management Service and its Service Points

- **Service Access Point (SAP) Service Point** – An SAP is equivalent to a UNI in MEF terminology and defines the connection of the user network with its access points. SAPs are used for Point-to-Point and Multipoint traffic services.
- **Service Network Point (SNP) Service Point** – An SNP is equivalent to an NNI or E-NNI in MEF terminology and defines the connection between the network elements in the user network. SNPs are used for Point-to-Point and Multipoint traffic services.

The following figure shows four network elements in ring. An MP Service with three service points provides the connectivity over the network. The SNPs provide the connectivity among the network elements in the user network while the SAPs provide the access points for the network.

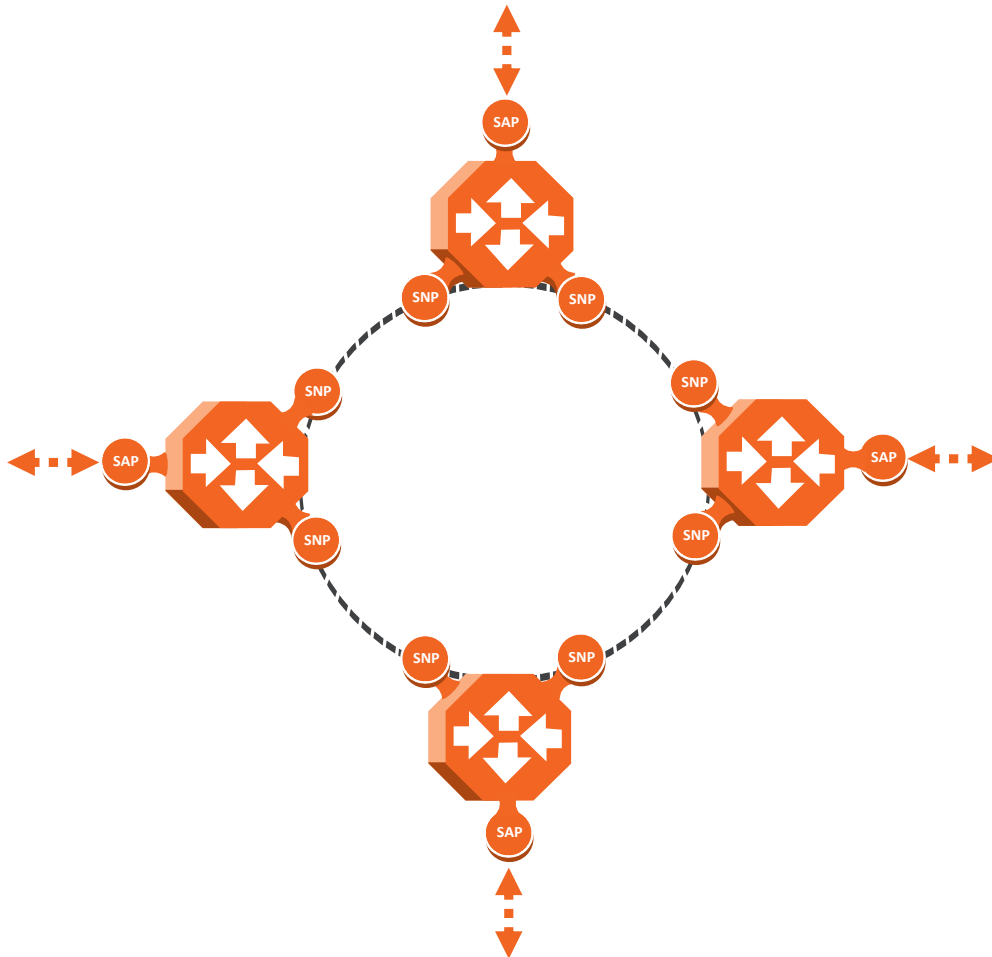


Figure 108: SAPs and SNPs

- **Pipe Service Point** – Used to create traffic connectivity between two points in a port-based manner (Smart Pipe). In other words, all the traffic from one port passes to the other port. Pipe service points are used in Point-to-Point services.

The following figure shows a Point-to-Point service with Pipe service points that create a Smart Pipe between Port 1 of the network element on the left and Port 2 of the network element on the right.



Figure 109: Pipe Service Points

The following figure shows the usage of SAP, SNP and Pipe service points in a microwave network. The SNPs are used for interconnection between the network elements while the SAPs provide the access points for the network. A Smart Pipe is also used, to provide connectivity between elements that require port-based connectivity.

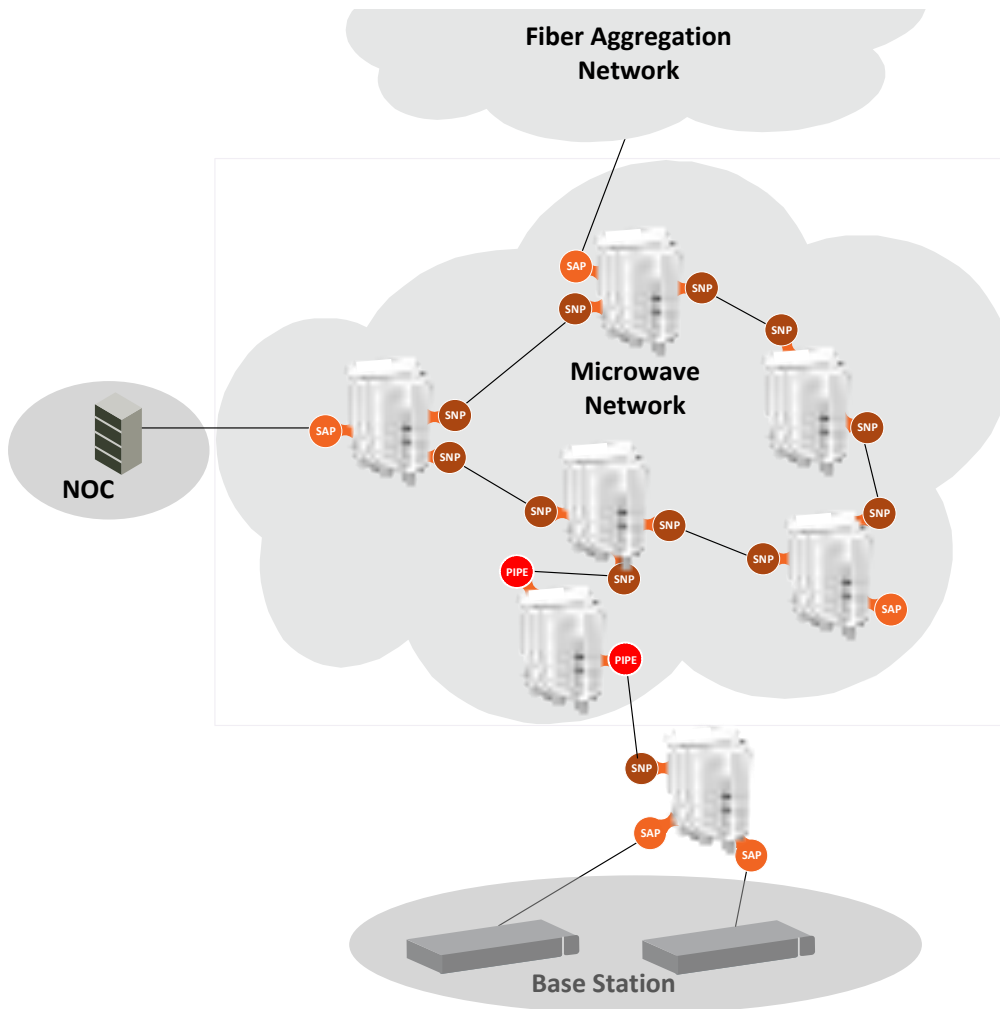


Figure 110: SAP, SNP and Pipe Service Points in a Microwave Network

The following table summarizes the service point (SP) types available per service type.

Table 14: Service Point Types per Service Type

		Service point type			
		MNG	SAP	SNP	Pipe
Service Type	Management	Yes	No	No	No
	Point-to-Point	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Multipoint	No	Yes	Yes	No

Service Point Classification

As explained above, service points connect the service to the network element interfaces. It is crucial that the network element have a means to classify incoming frames to the proper service point. This classification process is implemented by means of a parsing encapsulation rule for the interface associated with the service point. This rule is called the Attached Interface Type, and is based on a three-part key consisting of:

- The Interface ID of the interface through which the frame entered.
- The frame’s C-VLAN and/or S-VLAN tags.

The Attached Interface Type provides a definitive mapping of each arriving frame to a specific service point in a specific service. Since more than one service point may be associated with a single interface, frames are assigned to the earliest defined service point in case of conflict.

SAP Classification

SAPs can be used with the following Attached Interface Types:

- **All to one** – All C-VLANs and untagged frames that enter the interface are classified to the same service point.
- **Dot1q** – A single C-VLAN is classified to the service point.
- **QinQ** – A single S-VLAN and C-VLAN combination is classified to the service point.
- **Bundle C-Tag**– A set of multiple C-VLANs are classified to the service point.
- **Bundle S-Tag** – A single S-VLAN and a set of multiple C-VLANs are classified to the service point.

SNP classification

SNPs can be used with the following Attached Interface Types:

- **Dot1q** – A single C VLAN is classified to the service point.
- **S-Tag** – A single S- VLAN is classified to the service point.

PIPE classification

Pipe service points can be used with the following Attached Interface Types:

- **Dot1q** – All C-VLANs and untagged frames that enter the interface are classified to the same service point.
- **S-Tag** – All S-VLANs and untagged frames that enter the interface are classified to the same service point.

MNG classification

Management service points can be used with the following Attached Interface Types:

- **Dot1q** – A single C-VLAN is classified to the service point.
- **S-Tag** – A single S-VLAN is classified to the service point.
- **QinQ** – A single S-VLAN and C-VLAN combination is classified into the service point.

The following table shows which service point types can co-exist on the same interface.

Table 15: Service Point Types that can Co-Exist on the Same Interface

	MNG SP	SAP SP	SNP SP	Pipe SP
MNG SP	Only one MNG SP is allowed per interface.	Yes	Yes	Yes
SAP SP	Yes	Yes	No	No
SNP SP	Yes	No	Yes	No
PIPE SP	Yes	No	No	Only one Pipe SP is allowed per interface.

The following table shows in more detail which service point – Attached Interface Type combinations can co-exist on the same interface.

Table 16: Service Point Type-Attached Interface Type Combinations that can Co-Exist on the Same Interface

SP Type	Attached Interface Type	SAP 802.1q	Bundle C-Tag	Bundle S-Tag	All to One	QinQ	SNP 802.1q	S-Tag	Pipe 802.1q	S-Tag	MNG 802.1q	QinQ	S-Tag
SAP	802.1q	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Only for P2P Service	No	Yes	No	No
	Bundle C-Tag	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Only for P2P Service	No	Yes	No	No
	Bundle S-Tag	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No
	All to One	No	No	No	Only 1 All to One SP Per Interface	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
	QinQ	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No
SNP	802.1q	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No	Only for P2P Service	No	Yes	No	No
	S-Tag	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No	Only for P2P Service	No	No	Yes
Pipe	802.1q	Only for P2P Service	Only for P2P Service	No	No	No	Only for P2P Service	No	Only one Pipe SP Per Interface	No	Yes	No	No
	S-Tag	No	No	No	No	No	No	Only for P2P Service	No	Only one Pipe SP Per Interface	No	No	Yes
MNG	802.1q	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No	No
	QinQ	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
	S-Tag	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No

Service Point Attributes

As described above, traffic ingresses and egresses the service via service points. The service point attributes are divided into two types:

- **Ingress Attributes** – Define how frames are handled upon ingress, e.g., policing and MAC address learning.
- **Egress Attributes** – Define how frames are handled upon egress, e.g., preservation of the ingress CoS value upon egress, VLAN swapping.

The following figure shows the ingress and egress path relationship on a point-to-point service path. When traffic arrives via port 1, the system handles it using service point 1 ingress attributes then forwards it to service point 2 and handles it using the SP2 egress attributes:

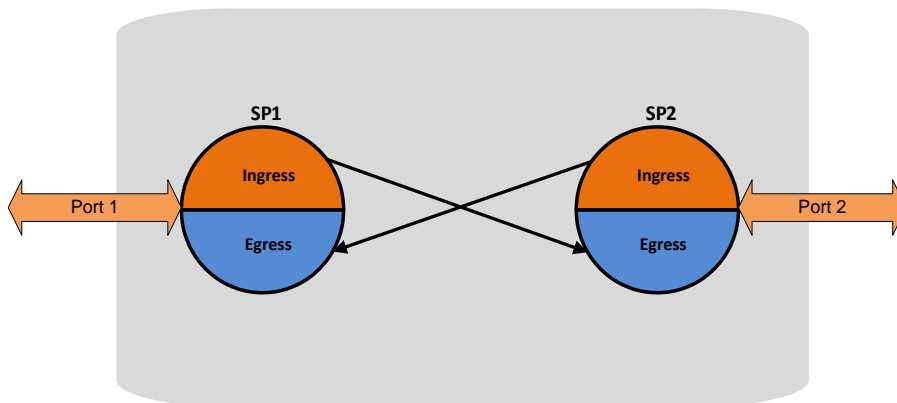


Figure 111: Service Path Relationship on Point-to-Point Service Path

Service points have the following attributes:

General Service Point Attributes

- **Service Point ID** – Users can define up to 32 service points per service, except for management services which are limited to 30 service points in addition to the pre-defined management system service point.
- **Service Point Name** – A descriptive name, which can be up to 20 characters.
- **Service Point Type** – The type of service point, as described above.
- **S-VLAN Encapsulation** – The S-VLAN ID associated with the service point.
- **C-VLAN Encapsulation** – The C-VLAN ID associated with the service point.
- **Attached C VLAN** – For service points with an Attached Interface Type of Bundle C-Tag, this attribute is used to create a list of C-VLANs associated with the service point.
- **Attached S-VLAN** – For service points with an Attached Interface Type of Bundle S-Tag, this attribute is used to create a list of S-VLANs associated with the service point.

Ingress Service Point Attributes

The ingress attributes are attributes that operate upon frames when they ingress via the service point.

- **Attached Interface Type** – The interface type to which the service point is attached, as described above. Permitted values depend on the service point type.
- **Learning Administration** – Enables or disables MAC address learning for traffic that ingresses via the service point. This option enables users to enable or disable MAC address learning for specific service points.
- **Allow Broadcast** – Determines whether to allow frames to ingress the service via the service point when the frame has a broadcast destination MAC address.
- **Allow Flooding** – Determines whether incoming frames with unknown MAC addresses are forwarded to other service points via flooding.
- **CoS Mode** – Determines whether the service point preserves the CoS decision made at the interface level, overwrites the CoS with the default CoS for the service point.
- **Default CoS** – The service point CoS. If the CoS Mode is set to overwrite the CoS decision made at the interface level, this is the CoS value assigned to frames that ingress the service point.
- **Token Bucket Profile** – This attribute can be used to attach a rate meter profile to the service point. Permitted values are 1– 250.
- **CoS Token Bucket Profile** – This attribute can be used to attach a rate meter profile to the service point at the CoS level. Users can define a rate meter for each of the eight CoS values of the service point. Permitted values are 1-250 for CoS 0–7.
- **CoS Token Bucket Admin** – Enables or disables the rate meter at the service point CoS level.

Egress Service Point Attributes

The egress attributes are attributes that operate upon frames egressing via the service point.

- **C-VLAN ID Egress Preservation** – If enabled, C-VLAN frames egressing the service point retain the same C-VLAN ID they had when they entered the service.
- **C-VLAN CoS Egress Preservation** – If enabled, the C-VLAN CoS value of frames egressing the service point is the same as the value when the frame entered the service.
- **S-VLAN CoS Egress Preservation** – If enabled, the S-VLAN CoS value of frames egressing the service point is the same as the value when the frame entered the service.
- **Marking** – Marking refers to the ability to overwrite the outgoing priority bits and Color of the outer VLAN of the egress frame, either the C-VLAN or the S-VLAN. If marking is enabled, the service point overwrites the outgoing priority bits and Color of the outer VLAN of the egress frame. Marking mode is only relevant if either the outer frame is S-VLAN and S-VLAN CoS preservation is disabled, or the outer frame is C-VLAN and C-VLAN CoS preservation is disabled. When marking is enabled and active, marking is performed according to global mapping tables that map the 802.1p-UP bits and the DEI or CFI bit to a defined CoS and Color value.

- **Service Bundle ID** – This attribute can be used to assign one of the available service bundles from the H-QoS hierarchy queues to the service point. This enables users to personalize the QoS egress path. For details, refer to Standard QoS and Hierarchical QoS (H-QoS) on page 166.

5.3.5 Ethernet Interfaces

The IP-20C switching fabric distinguishes between physical interfaces and logical interfaces. Physical and logical interfaces serve different purposes in the switching fabric.

The concept of a physical interface refers to the physical characteristics of the interface, such as speed, duplex, auto-negotiation, master/slave, and standard RMON statistics.

A logical interface can consist of a single physical interface or a group of physical interfaces that share the same function. Examples of the latter are protection groups and link aggregation groups. Switching and QoS functionality are implemented on the logical interface level.

It is important to understand that the IP-20C switching fabric regards all traffic interfaces as regular physical interfaces, distinguished only by the media type the interface uses, e.g., RJ-45, SFP, or Radio.

From the user’s point of view, the creation of the logical interface is simultaneous with the creation of the physical interface. For example, when the user enables a radio interface, both the physical and the logical radio interface come into being at the same time.

Once the interface is created, the user configures both the physical and the logical interface. In other words, the user configures the same interface on two levels, the physical level and the logical level.

The following figure shows physical and logical interfaces in a one-to-one relationship in which each physical interface is connected to a single logical interface, without grouping.

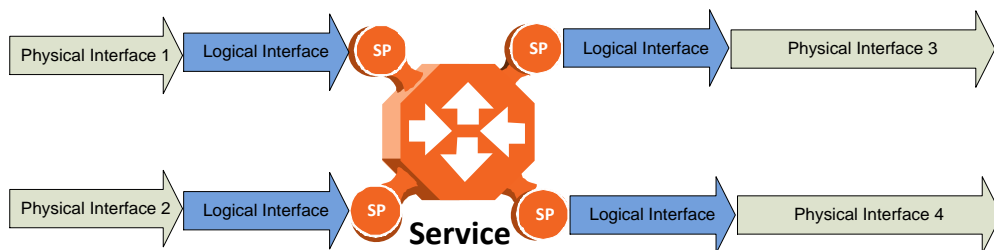


Figure 112: Physical and Logical Interfaces

Note: For simplicity only, this figure represents a uni-directional rather than a bi-directional traffic flow.

The next figure illustrates the grouping of two or more physical interfaces into a logical interface, a link aggregation group (LAG) in this example. The two physical interfaces on the ingress side send traffic into a single logical interface. The user configures each physical interface separately, and configures the logical interface as a single logical entity. For example, the user might configure each physical interface to 100 Mbps, full duplex, with auto-negotiation off. On the group level, the user might limit the group to a rate of 200 Mbps by configuring the rate meter on the logical interface level.

When physical interfaces are grouped into a logical interface, IP-20C also shows standard RMON statistics for the logical interface, i.e., for the group. This information enables users to determine the cumulative statistics for the group, rather than having to examine the statistics for each interface individually.

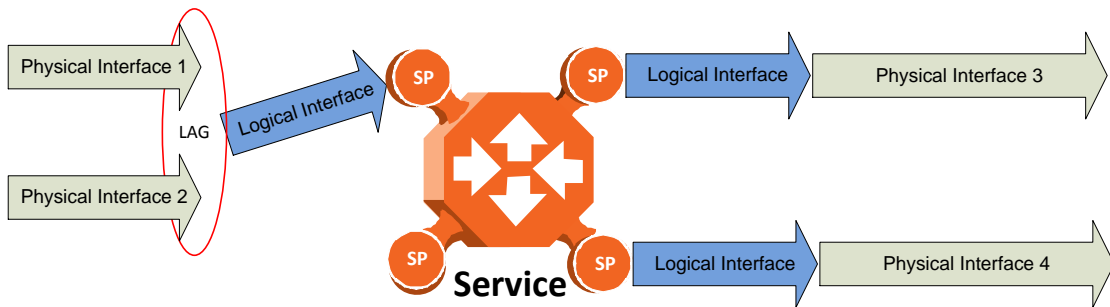


Figure 113: Grouped Interfaces as a Single Logical Interface on Ingress Side

Note: For simplicity only, this figure represents a uni-directional rather than a bi-directional traffic flow.

The following figure shows the logical interface at the egress side. In this case, the user can configure the egress traffic characteristics, such as scheduling, for the group as a whole as part of the logical interface attributes.

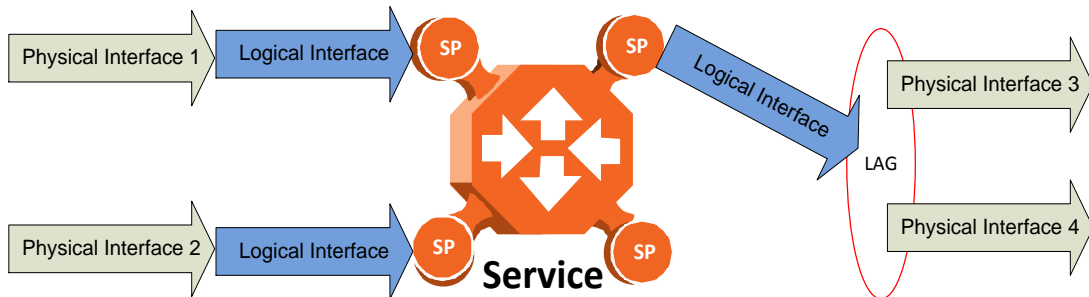


Figure 114: Grouped Interfaces as a Single Logical Interface on Egress Side

Note: For simplicity only, this figure represents a uni-directional rather than a bi-directional traffic flow.

5.3.5.1 Physical Interfaces

The physical interfaces refer to the real traffic ports (layer 1) that are connected to the network. The Media Type attribute defines the Layer 1 physical traffic interface type, which can be:

- Radio interface
- RJ-45 or SFP Ethernet interface.

Physical Interface Attributes

The following physical interface parameters can be configured by users:

- **Admin** – Enables or disables the physical interface. This attribute is set via the Interface Manager section of the Web EMS.
- **Auto Negotiation** – Enables or disables auto-negotiation on the physical interface. Auto Negotiation is always off for radio and SFP interfaces.
- **Speed and Duplex** – The physical interface speed and duplex mode. Permitted values are:
 - **Ethernet RJ-45 interfaces:** 10Mbps HD, 10Mbps FD, 100Mbps HD, 100Mbps FD, and 1000Mbps FD.
 - **Ethernet SFP interfaces:** Only 1000FD is supported
 - **Radio interfaces:** The parameter is read-only and set by the system to 1000FD.
- **Flow Control** – The physical port flow control capability. Permitted values are: Symmetrical Pause and/or Asymmetrical Pause. This parameter is only relevant in Full Duplex mode.¹⁴
- **IFG** – The physical port Inter-frame gap. Although users can modify the IFG field length, it is strongly recommended not to modify the default value of 12 bytes without a thorough understanding of how the modification will impact traffic. Permitted values are 6 to 15 bytes.
- **Preamble** – The physical port preamble value. Although users can modify the preamble field length, it is strongly recommended not to modify the default values of 8 bytes without a thorough understanding of how the modification will impact traffic. Permitted values are 6 to 15 bytes.
- **Interface description** – A text description of the interface, up to 40 characters.

The following read-only physical interface status parameters can be viewed by users:

- **Operational State** – The operational state of the physical interface (Up or Down).
- **Actual Speed and Duplex** – The actual speed and duplex value for the Ethernet link as agreed by the two sides of the link after the auto negotiation process.
- **Actual Flow Control State** – The actual flow control state values for the Ethernet link as agreed by the two sides after the auto negotiation process.

¹⁴ This functionality is planned for future release.

- **Actual Physical Mode** (only relevant for RJ-45 interfaces) – The actual physical mode (master or slave) for the Ethernet link, as agreed by the two sides after the auto negotiation process.

Ethernet Statistics

The FibeAir IP-20C platform stores and displays statistics in accordance with RMON and RMON2 standards.

Users can display various peak TX and RX rates (in seconds) and average TX and RX rates (in seconds), both in bytes and in packets, for each measured time interval. Users can also display the number of seconds in the interval during which TX and RX rates exceeded the configured threshold.

The following transmit statistic counters are available:

- Transmitted bytes (not including preamble) in good or bad frames. Low 32 bits.
- Transmitted bytes (not including preamble) in good or bad frames. High 32 bits.
- Transmitted frames (good or bad)
- Multicast frames (good only)
- Broadcast frames (good only)
- Control frames transmitted
- Pause control frame transmitted
- FCS error frames
- Frame length error
- Oversized frames – frames with length > 1518 bytes (1522 bytes for VLAN-tagged frames) without errors
- Undersized frames (good only)
- Fragments frames (undersized bad)
- Jabber frames – frames with length > 1518 bytes (1522 for VLAN-tagged frames) with errors
- Frames with length 64 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 65-127 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 128-255 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 256-511 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 512-1023 bytes, good or bad.
- Frames with length 1024-1518 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 1519-1522 bytes, good or bad

The following receive statistic counters are available:

- Received bytes (not including preamble) in good or bad frames. Low 32 bits.
- Received bytes (not including preamble) in good or bad frames. High 32 bits.
- Received frames (good or bad)
- Multicast frames (good only)
- Broadcast frames (good only)
- Control frames received

- Pause control frame received
- FCS error frames
- Frame length error
- Code error
- Counts oversized frames – frames with length > 1518 bytes (1522 bytes for VLAN-tagged frames) without errors *and* frames with length > MAX_LEN without errors
- Undersized frames (good only)
- Fragments frames (undersized bad)
- Counts jabber frames – frames with length > 1518 bytes (1522 for VLAN-tagged frames) with errors
- Frames with length 64 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 65-127 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 128-255 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 256-511 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 512-1023 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length 1024-1518 bytes, good or bad
- VLAN-tagged frames with length 1519-1522 bytes, good or bad
- Frames with length > MAX_LEN without errors
- Frames with length > MAX_LEN with errors

5.3.5.2 Logical Interfaces

A logical interface consists of one or more physical interfaces that share the same traffic ingress and egress characteristics. From the user's point of view, it is more convenient to define interface behavior for the group as a whole than for each individual physical interface that makes up the group. Therefore, classification, QoS, and resiliency attributes are configured and implemented on the logical interface level, in contrast to attributes such as interface speed and duplex mode, which are configured on the physical interface level.

It is important to understand that the user relates to logical interfaces in the same way in both a one-to-one scenario in which a single physical interface corresponds to a single logical interface, and a grouping scenario such as a link aggregation group or a radio protection group, in which several physical interfaces correspond to a single logical interface.

The following figure illustrates the relationship of a LAG group to the switching fabric. From the point of view of the user configuring the logical interface attributes, the fact that there are two Ethernet interfaces is not relevant. The user configures and manages the logical interface just as if it represented a single Ethernet interface.

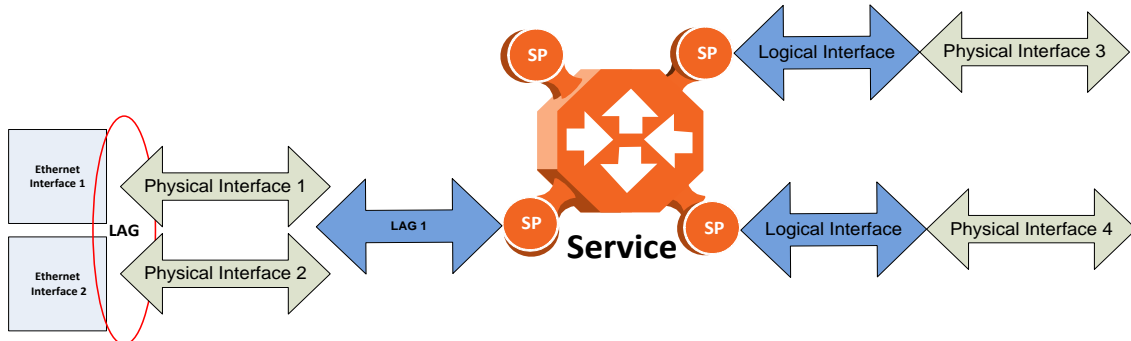


Figure 115: Relationship of Logical Interfaces to the Switching Fabric

Logical Interface Attributes

The following logical interface attributes can be configured by users:

General Attributes

- **Traffic Flow Administration** – Enables traffic via the logical interface. This attribute is useful when the user groups several physical interfaces into a single logical interface. The user can enable or disable traffic to the group using this parameter.

Ingress Path Classification at Logical Interface Level

These attributes represent part of the hierarchical classification mechanism, in which the logical interface is the lowest point in the hierarchy.

- **VLAN ID** – Users can specify a specific CoS and Color for a specific VLAN ID. In the case of double-tagged frames, the match must be with the frame’s outer VLAN. Permitted values are CoS 0 to 7 and Color Green or Yellow per VLAN ID. This is the highest classification priority on the logical interface level, and overwrites any other classification criteria at the logical interface level.
- **802.1p Trust Mode** – When this attribute is set to Trust mode and the arriving packet is 802.1Q or 802.1AD, the interface performs QoS and Color classification according to user-configurable tables for 802.1q UP bit (C-VLAN frames) or 802.1AD UP bit (S-VLAN frames) to CoS and Color classification.
- **MPLS Trust Mode** – When this attribute is set to Trust mode and the arriving packet has MPLS EXP priority bits, the interface performs QoS and Color classification according to a user-configurable MPLS EXP bit to CoS and Color classification table. Both 802.1p and DSCP classification have priority over MPLS Trust Mode, so that if a match is found on either the 802.1p or DSCP levels, MPLS bits are not considered.

- **IP DSCP Trust Mode** –When this attribute is set to Trust mode and the arriving packet has IP priority bits, the interface performs QoS and Color classification according to a user-configurable DSCP bit to CoS and Color classification table. 802.1p classification has priority over DSCP Trust Mode, so that if a match is found on the 802.1p level, DSCP bits are not considered.
- **Default CoS** – The default CoS value for frames passing through the interface. This value can be overwritten on the service point and service level. The Color is assumed to be Green.

For more information about classification at the logical interface level, refer to Logical Interface-Level Classification on page 154.

Ingress Path Rate Meters at Logical Interface Level

- **Unicast Traffic Rate Meter Admin** – Enables or disables the unicast rate meter (policer) on the logical interface.
- **Unicast Traffic Rate Meter Profile** – Associates the rate meter (policer) with a specific rate meter (policer) profile.
- **Multicast Traffic Rate Meter Admin** – Enables or disables the multicast rate meter (policer) on the logical interface.
- **Multicast Traffic Rate Meter Profile** – Associates the rate meter (policer) with a specific rate meter (policer) profile.
- **Broadcast Traffic Rate Meter Admin** – Enables or disables the broadcast rate meter (policer) on the logical interface.
- **Broadcast Traffic Rate Meter Profile** – Associates the rate meter (policer) with a specific rate meter (policer) profile.
- **Ethertype 1 Rate Meter Admin** – Enables or disables the Ethertype 1 rate meter (policer) on the logical interface.
- **Ethertype 1 Rate Meter Profile** – Associates the rate meter (policer) with a specific rate meter (policer) profile.
- **Ethertype 1 Value** – The Ethertype value to which the user wants to apply this rate meter (policer). The field length is 4 nibbles (for example, 0x0806 - ARP).
- **Ethertype 2 Rate Meter Admin** – Enables or disables the Ethertype 2 rate meter (policer) on the logical interface.
- **Ethertype 2 Rate Meter Profile** – Associates the rate meter (policer) with a specific rate meter (policer) profile.
- **Ethertype 2 Value** – The Ethertype value to which the user wants to apply the rate meter (policer). The field length is 4 nibbles (for example, 0x0806 - ARP).
- **Ethertype 3 Rate Meter Admin** – Enables or disables the Ethertype 3 rate meter (policer) on the logical interface.
- **Ethertype 3 Rate Meter Profile** – Associates the rate meter (policer) with a specific rate meter (policer) profile.
- **Ethertype 3 Value** – The Ethertype value to which the user wants to apply the rate meter (policer). The field length is 4 nibbles (for example, 0x0806 - ARP).
- **Inline Compensation** – The logical interface's ingress compensation value. The rate meter (policer) attached to the logical interface uses this value to compensate for Layer 1 non-effective traffic bytes.

Egress Path Shapers at Logical Interface Level

- **Logical Port Shaper Profile** – Users can assign a single leaky bucket shaper to each interface. The shaper on the interface level stops traffic from the interface if a specific user-defined peak information rate (PIR) has been exceeded.¹⁵
- **Outline Compensation** – The logical interface’s egress compensation value. Any shaper attached to this interface, in any layer, uses this value to compensate for Layer 1 non-effective traffic bytes. Permitted values are even numbers between 0 and 26 bytes. The default value is 0 bytes.

Egress Path Scheduler at Logical Interface Level

- **Logical Interface Priority Profile** – This attribute is used to attach an egress scheduling priority profile to the logical interface.
- **Logical Port WFQ Profile** – This attribute is used to attach an egress scheduling WFQ profile to the logical interface. The WFQ profile provides a means of allocating traffic among queues with the same priority.

The following read-only logical interface status parameters can be viewed by users:

- **Traffic Flow Operational Status** – Indicates whether or not the logical interface is currently functional.

Logical Interface Statistics

RMON Statistics at Logical Interface Level

As discussed in Ethernet Statistics on page 145, if the logical interface represents a group, such as a LAG or a 1+1 HSB pair, the IP-20C platform stores and displays RMON and RMON2 statistics for the logical interface.

Rate Meter (Policer) Statistics at Logical Interface Level

For the rate meter (policer) at the logical interface level, users can view the following statistics counters:

- Green Frames
- Green Bytes
- Yellow Frames
- Yellow Bytes
- Red Frames
- Red Bytes

Note: Rate meter (policer) counters are 64 bits wide.

¹⁵ This attribute is reserved for future use. The current release supports traffic shaping per queue and per service bundle, which provides the equivalent of shaping per logical interface.

Link Aggregation Groups (LAG) and LACP

Link aggregation (LAG) enables users to group several physical interfaces into a single logical interface bound to a single MAC address. This logical interface is known as a LAG group. Traffic sent to the interfaces in a LAG group is distributed by means of a load balancing function. IP-20C uses a distribution function of up to Layer 4 in order to generate the most efficient distribution among the LAG physical ports, taking into account:

- MAC DA and MAC SA
- IP DA and IP SA
- C-VLAN
- S-VLAN
- Layer 3 Protocol Field
- UDP/TCP Source Port and Destination Port
- MPLS Label

For LAG groups that consist of exactly two interfaces, users can change the distribution function by selecting from ten pre-defined LAG distribution schemes. The feature includes a display of the TX throughput for each interface in the LAG, to help users identify the best LAG distribution scheme for their specific link.

LAG can be used to provide redundancy for Ethernet interfaces, both on the same IP-20C unit (line protection) and on separate units (line protection and equipment protection). LAGs can also be used to provide redundancy for radio links.

LAG can also be used to aggregate several interfaces in order to create a wider (aggregate) Ethernet link. For example, LAG can be used to create a 3 Gbps channel by grouping the three Ethernet interfaces to a single LAG.

A LAG group can be configured to be automatically closed in the event of LAG degradation. This option is used if the customer wants traffic from the switch to be re-routed during such time as the link is providing less than a certain capacity. When enabled, the LAG is automatically closed in the event that any one or more ports in the LAG fail. When all ports in the LAG are again operational, the LAG is automatically re-opened.

Up to four LAG groups can be created.

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) expands the capabilities of static LAG, and provides interoperability with third-party equipment that uses LACP. LACP improves the communication between LAG members. This improves error detection capabilities in situations such as improper LAG configuration or improper cabling. It also enables the LAG to detect uni-directional failure and remove the link from the LAG, preventing packet loss.

IP-20's LACP implementation does not include write parameters or churn detection.

Note: LACP can only be used with Ethernet interfaces. LACP cannot be used with Enhanced LAG Distribution or with the LAG Group Shutdown in Case of Degradation Event feature.

LAG groups can include interfaces with the following constraints:

- Only physical interfaces (including radio interfaces), not logical interfaces, can belong to a LAG group.
- Interfaces can only be added to the LAG group if no services or service points are attached to the interface.
- Any classification rules defined for the interface are overridden by the classification rules defined for the LAG group.
- When removing an interface from a LAG group, the removed interface is assigned the default interface values.

IP-20C enables users to select the LAG members without limitations, such as interface speed and interface type. Proper configuration of a LAG group is the responsibility of the user.

5.3.6 Quality of Service (QoS)

Related topics:

- Ethernet Service Model
- In-Band Management

Quality of Service (QoS) deals with the way frames are handled within the switching fabric. QoS is required in order to deal with many different network scenarios, such as traffic congestion, packet availability, and delay restrictions.

IP-20C's personalized QoS enables operators to handle a wide and diverse range of scenarios. IP-20C's smart QoS mechanism operates from the frame's ingress into the switching fabric until the moment the frame egresses via the destination port.

QoS capability is very important due to the diverse topologies that exist in today's network scenarios. These can include, for example, streams from two different ports that egress via single port, or a port-to-port connection that holds hundreds of services. In each topology, a customized approach to handling QoS will provide the best results.

The figure below shows the basic flow of IP-20C's QoS mechanism. Traffic ingresses (left to right) via the Ethernet or radio interfaces, on the "ingress path." Based on the services model, the system determines how to route the traffic. Traffic is then directed to the most appropriate output queue via the "egress path."

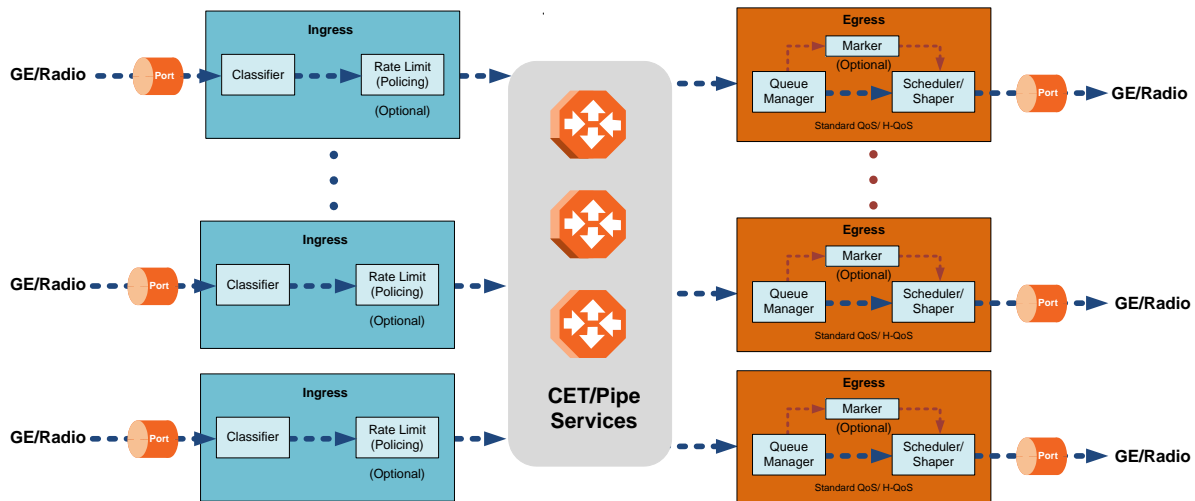


Figure 116: QoS Block Diagram

The ingress path consists of the following QoS building blocks:

- **Ingress Classifier** – A hierarchical mechanism that deals with ingress traffic on three different levels: interface, service point, and service. The classifier determines the exact traffic stream and associates it with the appropriate service. It also calculates an ingress frame CoS and Color. CoS and Color classification can be performed on three levels, according to the user’s configuration.
- **Ingress Rate Metering** – A hierarchical mechanism that deals with ingress traffic on three different levels: interface, service point, and service point CoS. The rate metering mechanism enables the system to measure the incoming frame rate on different levels using a TrTCM standard MEF rate meter, and to determine whether to modify the color calculated during the classification stage.

The egress path consists of the following QoS building blocks:

- **Queue Manager** – This is the mechanism responsible for managing the transmission queues, utilizing smart WRED per queue and per packet color (Green or Yellow).
- **Scheduling and Shaping** – A hierarchical mechanism that is responsible for scheduling the transmission of frames from the transmission queues, based on priority among queues, Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ) in bytes per each transmission queue, and eligibility to transmit based on required shaping on several different levels (per queue, per service bundle, and per port).
- **Marker** – This mechanism provides the ability to modify priority bits in frames based on the calculated CoS and Color.

The following two modes of operation are available on the egress path:

- **Standard QoS** – This mode provides eight transmission queues per port.
- **Hierarchical QoS (H-QoS)** – In this mode, users can associate services from the service model to configurable groups of eight transmission queues (service bundles), from a total 2K queues. In H-QoS mode, IP-20C performs QoS in a hierarchical manner in which the egress path is managed on three levels: ports, service bundles, and specific queues. This enables users to fully distinguish between streams, therefore providing a true SLA to customers.

The following figure illustrates the difference between how standard QoS and H-QoS handle traffic:

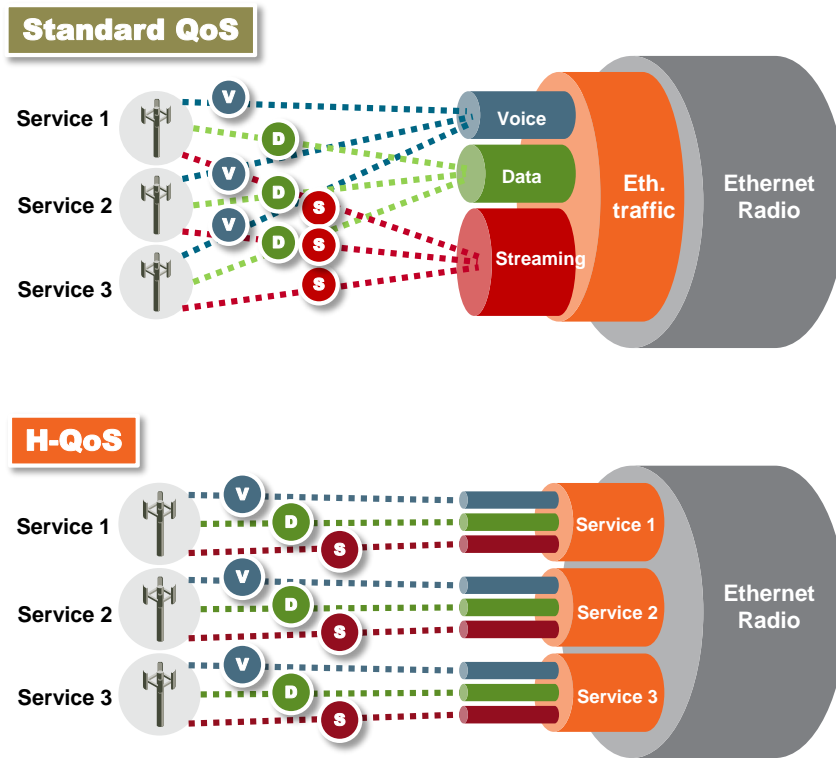


Figure 117: Standard QoS and H-QoS Comparison

5.3.6.1 QoS on the Ingress Path

Classification

IP-20C supports a hierarchical classification mechanism. The classification mechanism examines incoming frames and determines their CoS and Color. The benefit of hierarchical classification is that it provides the ability to “zoom in” or “zoom out”, enabling classification at higher or lower levels of the hierarchy. The nature of each traffic stream defines which level of the hierarchical classifier to apply, or whether to use several levels of the classification hierarchy in parallel.

The hierarchical classifier consists of the following levels:

- Logical interface-level classification
- Service point-level classification
- Service level classification

The following figure illustrates the hierarchical classification model. In this figure, traffic enters the system via the port depicted on the left and enters the service via the SAP depicted on the upper left of the service. The classification can take place at the logical interface level, the service point level, and/or the service level.

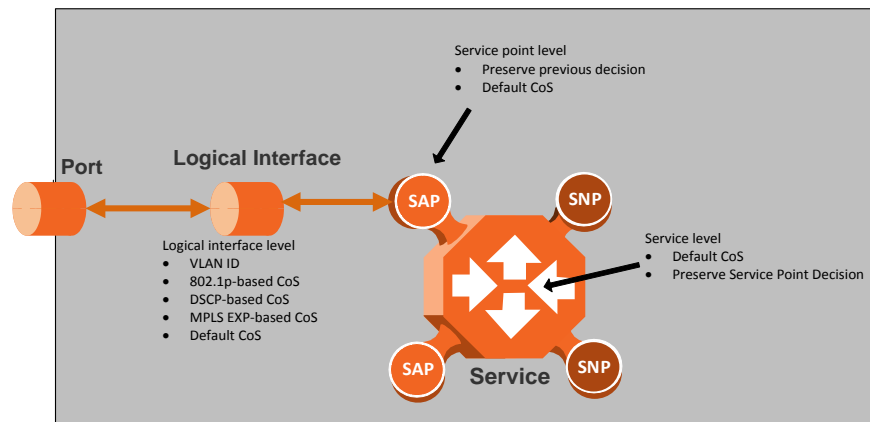


Figure 118: Hierarchical Classification

Logical Interface-Level Classification

Logical interface-level classification enables users to configure classification on a single interface or on a number of interfaces grouped together, such as a LAG group.

The classifier at the logical interface level supports the following classification methods, listed from highest to lowest priority. A higher level classification method supersedes a lower level classification method:

- VLAN ID
- 802.1p bits.
- MPLS EXP field.
- DSCP bits.
- Default CoS

IP-20C performs the classification on each frame ingressing the system via the logical interface. Classification is performed step by step from the highest priority to the lowest priority classification method. Once a match is found, the classifier determines the CoS and Color decision for the frame for the logical interface-level.

For example, if the frame is an untagged IP Ethernet frame, a match will not be found until the third priority level (DSCP priority bits). The CoS and Color values defined for the frame's DSCP priority bits will be applied to the frame.

Users can disable some of these classification methods by configuring them as un-trusted. For example, if 802.1p classification is configured as un-trusted for a specific interface, the classification mechanism does not perform classification by VLAN UP bits. This is useful, for example, if the required classification is based on DSCP priority bits.

If no match is found at the logical interface level, the default CoS is applied to incoming frames at this level. In this case, the Color of the frame is assumed to be Green.

The following figure illustrates the hierarchy of priorities among classification methods, from highest (on the left) to lowest (on the right) priority.

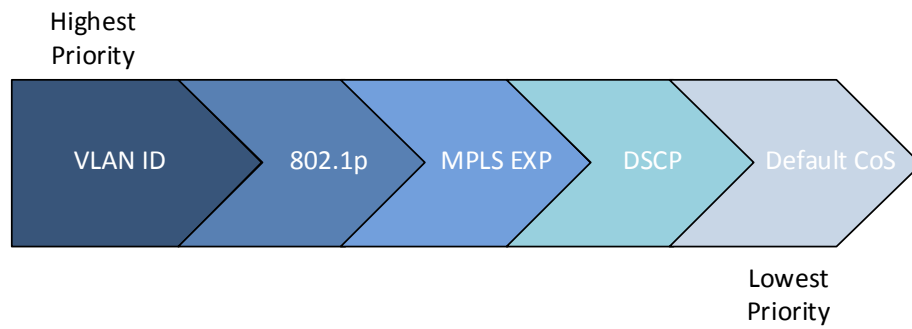


Figure 119: Classification Method Priorities

Interface-level classification is configured as part of the logical interface configuration. For details, refer to Ingress Path Classification at Logical Interface Level on page 147.

The following tables show the default values for logical interface-level classification. The key values for these tables are the priority bits of the respective frame encapsulation layers (VLAN, IP, and MPLS), while the key results are the CoS and Colors calculated for incoming frames. These results are user-configurable, but it is recommended that only advanced users should modify the default values.

Table 17: C-VLAN 802.1 UP and CFI Default Mapping to CoS and Color

802.1 UP	CFI	CoS (configurable)	Color (configurable)
0	0	0	Green
0	1	0	Yellow
1	0	1	Green
1	1	1	Yellow
2	0	2	Green
2	1	2	Yellow
3	0	3	Green
3	1	3	Yellow
4	0	4	Green
4	1	4	Yellow
5	0	5	Green
5	1	5	Yellow
6	0	6	Green
6	1	6	Yellow
7	0	7	Green
7	1	7	Yellow

Table 18: S-VLAN 802.1 UP and DEI Default Mapping to CoS and Color

802.1 UP	DEI	CoS (Configurable)	Color (Configurable)
0	0	0	Green
0	1	0	Yellow
1	0	1	Green
1	1	1	Yellow
2	0	2	Green
2	1	2	Yellow
3	0	3	Green
3	1	3	Yellow
4	0	4	Green
4	1	4	Yellow
5	0	5	Green
5	1	5	Yellow
6	0	6	Green
6	1	6	Yellow
7	0	7	Green
7	1	7	Yellow

Table 19: MPLS EXP Default Mapping to CoS and Color

MPLS EXP bits	CoS (configurable)	Color (configurable)
0	0	Yellow
1	1	Green
2	2	Yellow
3	3	Green
4	4	Yellow
5	5	Green
6	6	Green
7	7	Green

Table 20: DSCP Default Mapping to CoS and Color

DSCP	DSCP (bin)	Description	CoS (Configurable)	Color (Configurable)
0 (default)	000000	BE (CS0)	0	Green
10	001010	AF11	1	Green
12	001100	AF12	1	Yellow

DSCP	DSCP (bin)	Description	CoS (Configurable)	Color (Configurable)
14	001110	AF13	1	Yellow
18	010010	AF21	2	Green
20	010100	AF22	2	Yellow
22	010110	AF23	2	Yellow
26	011010	AF31	3	Green
28	011100	AF32	3	Yellow
30	011110	AF33	3	Yellow
34	100010	AF41	4	Green
36	100100	AF42	4	Yellow
38	100110	AF43	4	Yellow
46	101110	EF	7	Green
8	001000	CS1	1	Green
16	010000	CS2	2	Green
24	011000	CS3	3	Green
32	100000	CS4	4	Green
40	101000	CS5	5	Green
48	110000	CS6	6	Green
51	110011	DSCP_51	6	Green
52	110100	DSCP_52	6	Green
54	110110	DSCP_54	6	Green
56	111000	CS7	7	Green

Default value is CoS equal best effort and Color equal Green.

Service Point-Level Classification

Classification at the service point level enables users to give special treatment, in higher resolution, to specific traffic flows using a single interface to which the service point is attached. The following classification modes are supported at the service point level. Users can configure these modes by means of the service point CoS mode.

- Preserve previous CoS decision (logical interface level)
- Default service point CoS

If the service point CoS mode is configured to preserve previous CoS decision, the CoS and Color are taken from the classification decision at the logical interface level. If the service point CoS mode is configured to default service point CoS mode, the CoS is taken from the service point’s default CoS, and the Color is Green.

Service-Level Classification

Classification at the service level enables users to provide special treatment to an entire service. For example, the user might decide that all frames in a management service should be assigned a specific CoS regardless of the ingress port. The following classification modes are supported at the service level:

- Preserve previous CoS decision (service point level)
- Default CoS

If the service CoS mode is configured to preserve previous CoS decision, frames passing through the service are given the CoS and Color that was assigned at the service point level. If the service CoS mode is configured to default CoS mode, the CoS is taken from the service's default CoS, and the Color is Green.

Rate Meter (Policing)

IP-20C's TrTCM rate meter mechanism complies with MEF 10.2, and is based on a dual leaky bucket mechanism. The TrTCM rate meter can change a frame's CoS settings based on CIR/EIR+CBS/EBS, which makes the rate meter mechanism a key tool for implementing bandwidth profiles and enabling operators to meet strict SLA requirements.

The IP-20C hierarchical rate metering mechanism is part of the QoS performed on the ingress path, and consists of the following levels:

- Logical interface-level rate meter
- Service point-level rate meter¹⁶
- Service point CoS-level rate meter¹⁷

MEF 10.2 is the de-facto standard for SLA definitions, and IP-20C's QoS implementation provides the granularity necessary to implement service-oriented solutions.

Hierarchical rate metering enables users to define rate meter policing for incoming traffic at any resolution point, from the interface level to the service point level, and even at the level of a specific CoS within a specific service point. This option enables users to customize a set of eight policers for a variety of traffic flows within a single service point in a service.

Another important function of rate metering is to protect resources in the network element from malicious users sending traffic at an unexpectedly high rate. To prevent this, the rate meter can cut off traffic from a user that passes the expected ingress rate.

TrTCM rate meters use a leaky bucket mechanism to determine whether frames are marked Green, Yellow, or Red. Frames within the Committed Information Rate (CIR) or Committed Burst Size (CBS) are marked Green. Frames within the Excess Information Rate (EIR) or Excess Burst Size (EBS) are marked Yellow. Frames that do not fall within the CIR/CBS+EIR/EBS are marked Red and dropped, without being sent any further.

¹⁶ Service point-level rate metering is planned for future release.

¹⁷ Service point and CoS-level rate metering is planned for future release.

IP-20C provides up to 1024 user-defined TrTCM rate meters. The rate meters implement a bandwidth profile, based on CIR/EIR, CBS/EBS, Color Mode (CM), and Coupling flag (CF). Up to 250 different profiles can be configured.

Ingress rate meters operate at three levels:

- Logical Interface:
 - Per frame type (unicast, multicast, and broadcast)
 - Per frame ethertype
- Per Service Point
- Per Service Point CoS

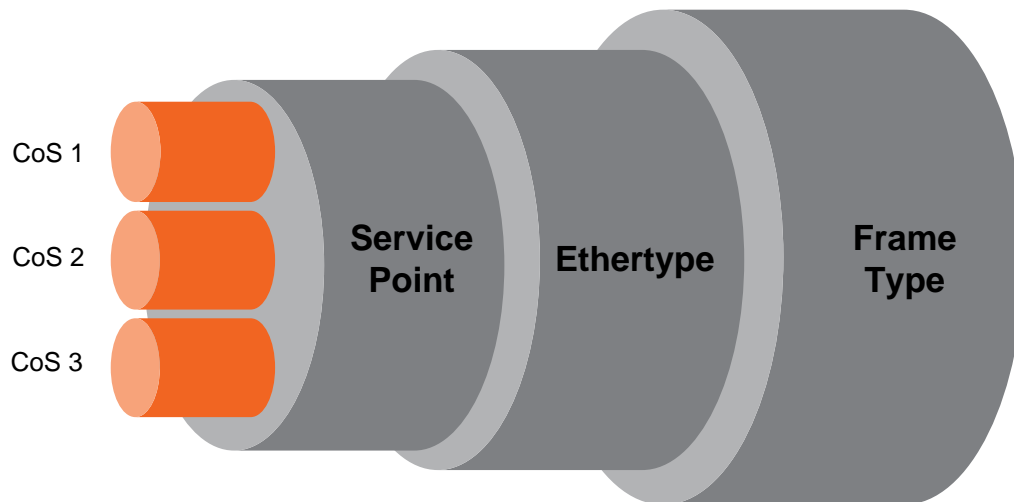


Figure 120: Ingress Policing Model

At each level (logical interface, service point, and service point + CoS), users can attach and activate a rate meter profile. Users must create the profile first, then attach it to the interface, service point, or service point + CoS.

Global Rate Meter Profiles

Users can define up to 250 rate meter user profiles. The following parameters can be defined for each profile:

- **Committed Information Rate (CIR)** – Frames within the defined CIR are marked Green and passed through the QoS module. Frames that exceed the CIR rate are marked Yellow. The CIR defines the average rate in bits/s of Service Frames up to which the network delivers service frames and meets the performance objectives. Permitted values are 0 to 1 Gbps, with a minimum granularity of 32Kbps.
- **Committed Burst Size (CBS)** – Frames within the defined CBS are marked Green and passed through the QoS module. This limits the maximum number of bytes available for a burst of service frames in order to ensure that traffic conforms to the CIR. Permitted values are 0 to 8192kbytes, with a minimum granularity of 2 Kbytes.
- **Excess Information Rate (EIR)** – Frames within the defined EIR are marked Yellow and processed according to network availability. Frames beyond the combined CIR and EIR are marked Red and dropped by the policer. Permitted values are 0 to 1 Gbps, with a minimum granularity of 32 Kbps.

- **Excess Burst Size (EBS)** – Frames within the defined EBS are marked Yellow and processed according to network availability. Frames beyond the combined CBS and EBS are marked Red and dropped by the policer. Permitted values are 0 to 8192kbytes, with a minimum granularity of 2 Kbytes.
- **Color Mode** – Color mode can be enabled (Color aware) or disabled (Color blind). In Color aware mode, all frames that ingress with a CFI/DEI field set to 1 (Yellow) are treated as EIR frames, even if credits remain in the CIR bucket. In Color blind mode, all ingress frames are treated first as Green frames regardless of CFI/DEI value, then as Yellow frames (when there is no credit in the Green bucket). A Color-blind policer discards any previous Color decisions.
- **Coupling Flag** – If the coupling flag between the Green and Yellow buckets is enabled, then if the Green bucket reaches the maximum CBS value the remaining credits are sent to the Yellow bucket up to the maximum value of the Yellow bucket.

The following parameter is neither a profile parameter, nor specifically a rate meter parameter, but rather, is a logical interface parameter. For more information about logical interfaces, refer to Logical Interfaces on page 146.

- **Line Compensation** – A rate meter can measure CIR and EIR at Layer 1 or Layer 2 rates. Layer 1 capacity is equal to Layer 2 capacity plus 20 additional bytes for each frame due to the preamble and Inter Frame Gap (IFG). In most cases, the preamble and IFG equals 20 bytes, but other values are also possible. Line compensation defines the number of bytes to be added to each frame for purposes of CIR and EIR calculation. When Line Compensation is 20, the rate meter operates as Layer 1. When Line Compensation is 0, the rate meter operates as Layer 2. This parameter is very important to users that want to distinguish between Layer 1 and Layer 2 traffic. For example, 1 Gbps of traffic at Layer 1 is equal to ~760 Mbps if the frame size is 64 bytes, but ~986 Mbps if the frame size is 1500 bytes. This demonstrates that counting at Layer 2 is not always fair in comparison to counting at Layer 1, that is, the physical level.

Rate Metering (Policing) at the Logical Interface Level

Rate metering at the logical interface level supports the following:

- Unicast rate meter
- Multicast rate meter
- Broadcast rate meter
- User defined Ethertype 1 rate meter
- User defined Ethertype 2 rate meter
- User defined Ethertype 3 rate meter

For each rate meter, the following statistics are available:

- Green Frames (64 bits)
- Green Bytes (64 bits)
- Yellow Frames (64 bits)
- Yellow Bytes (64 bits)
- Red Frames (64 bits)
- Red Bytes (64 bits)

Rate Metering (Policing) at the Service Point Level

Users can define a single rate meter on each service point, up to a total number of 1024 rate meters per network element at the service point and CoS per service point levels.

The following statistics are available for each service point rate meter:

- Green Frames (64 bits)
- Green Bytes (64 bits)
- Yellow Frames (64 bits)
- Yellow Bytes (64 bits)
- Red Frames (64 bits)
- Red Bytes (64 bits)

Rate Metering (Policing) at the Service Point + CoS Level

Users can define a single rate meter for each CoS on a specific service point, up to a total number of 1024 rate meters per network element at the service point and CoS per service point levels.

The following statistics are available for each service point + CoS rate meter:

- Green Frames (64 bits)
- Green Bytes (64 bits)
- Yellow Frames (64 bits)
- Yellow Bytes (64 bits)
- Red Frames (64 bits)
- Red Bytes (64 bits)

5.3.6.2 QoS on the Egress Path

Queue Manager

The queue manager (QM) is responsible for managing the output transmission queues. IP-20C supports up to 2K service-level transmission queues, with configurable buffer size. Users can specify the buffer size of each queue independently. The total amount of memory dedicated to the queue buffers is 2 Gigabits.

The following considerations should be taken into account in determining the proper buffer size:

- **Latency considerations** – If low latency is required (users would rather drop frames in the queue than increase latency) small buffer sizes are preferable.
- **Throughput immunity to fast bursts** – When traffic is characterized by fast bursts, it is recommended to increase the buffer sizes to prevent packet loss. Of course, this comes at the cost of a possible increase in latency.

Users can configure burst size as a tradeoff between latency and immunity to bursts, according to the application requirements.

The 2K queues are ordered in groups of eight queues. These eight queues correspond to CoS values, from 0 to 7; in other words, eight priority queues.

The following figure depicts the queue manager. Physically, the queue manager is located between the ingress path and the egress path.

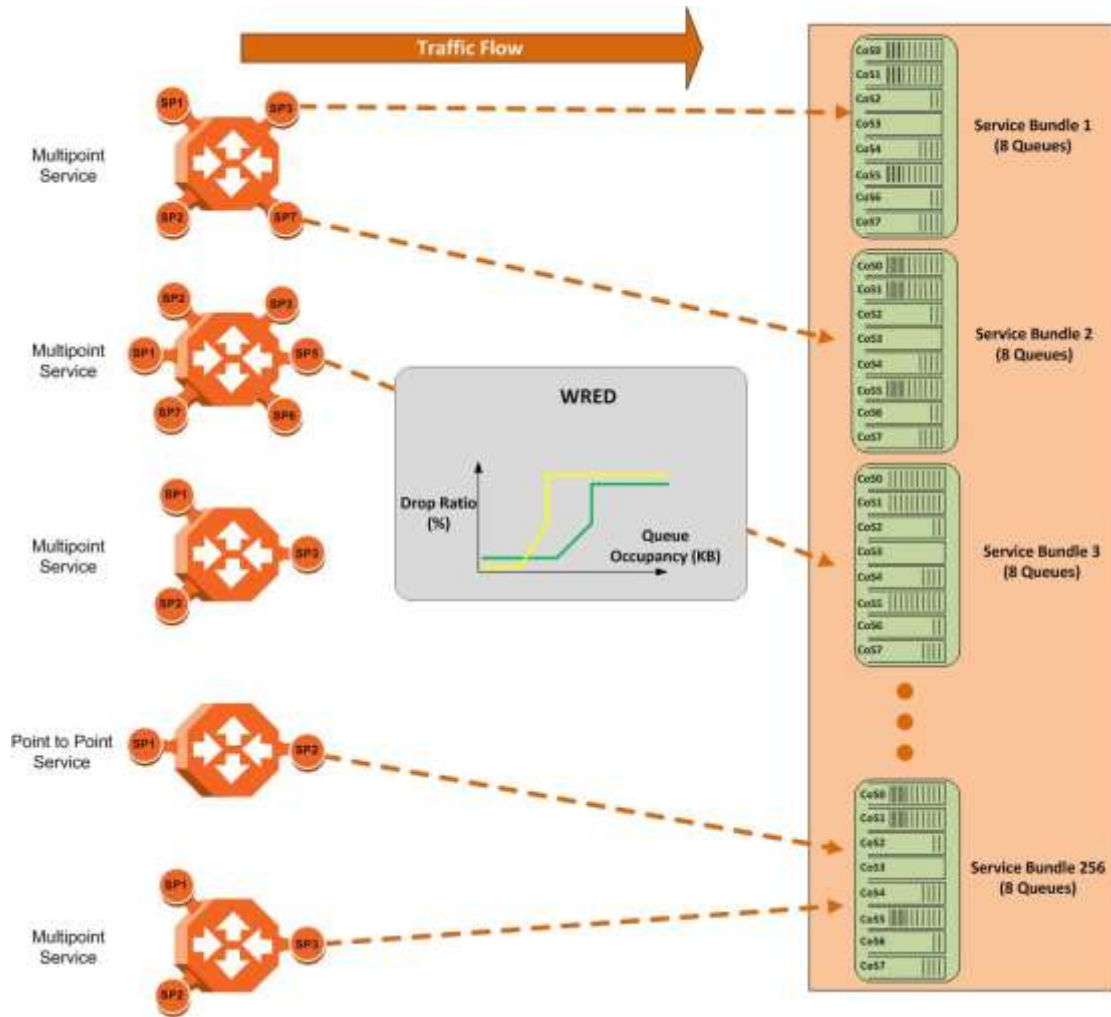


Figure 121: IP-20C Queue Manager

In the figure above, traffic is passing from left to right. The traffic passing from the ingress path is routed to the correct egress destination interfaces via the egress service points. As part of the assignment of the service points to the interfaces, users define the group of eight queues through which traffic is to be transmitted out of the service point. This is part of the service point egress configuration.

After the traffic is tunneled from the ingress service points to the egress service points, it is aggregated into one of the eight queues associated with the specific service point. The exact queue is determined by the CoS calculated by the ingress path. For example, if the calculated CoS is 6, the traffic is sent to queue 6, and so on.

Before assigning traffic to the appropriate queue, the system makes a determination whether to forward or drop the traffic using a WRED algorithm with a predefined green and yellow curve for the desired queue. This operation is integrated with the queue occupancy level.

The 2K queues share a single memory of 2 Gbits. IP-20C enables users to define a specific size for each queue which is different from the default size. Moreover, users can create an over-subscription scenario among the queues for when the buffer size of the aggregate queues is lower than the total memory allocated to all the queues. In doing this, the user must understand both the benefits and the potential hazards, namely, that if a lack of buffer space occurs, the queue manager will drop incoming frames without applying the usual priority rules among frames.

The queue size is defined by the WRED profile that is associated with the queue. For more details, refer to WRED on page 163.

WRED

The Weighted Random Early Detection (WRED) mechanism can increase capacity utilization of TCP traffic by eliminating the phenomenon of global synchronization. Global synchronization occurs when TCP flows sharing bottleneck conditions receive loss indications at around the same time. This can result in periods during which link bandwidth utilization drops significantly as a consequence of simultaneous falling to a “slow start” of all the TCP flows. The following figure demonstrates the behavior of two TCP flows over time without WRED.

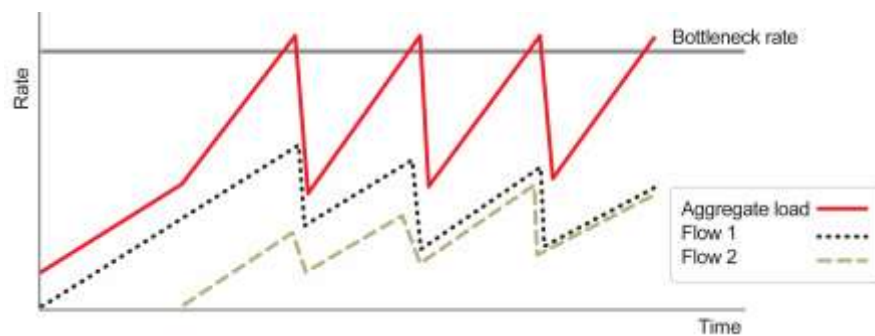


Figure 122: Synchronized Packet Loss

WRED eliminates the occurrence of traffic congestion peaks by restraining the transmission rate of the TCP flows. Each queue occupancy level is monitored by the WRED mechanism and randomly selected frames are dropped before the queue becomes overcrowded. Each TCP flow recognizes a frame loss and restrains its transmission rate (basically by reducing the window size). Since the frames are dropped randomly, statistically each time another flow has to restrain its transmission rate as a result of frame loss (before the real congestion occurs). In this way, the overall aggregated load on the radio link remains stable while the transmission rate of each individual flow continues to fluctuate similarly. The following figure demonstrates the transmission rate of two TCP flows and the aggregated load over time when WRED is enabled.

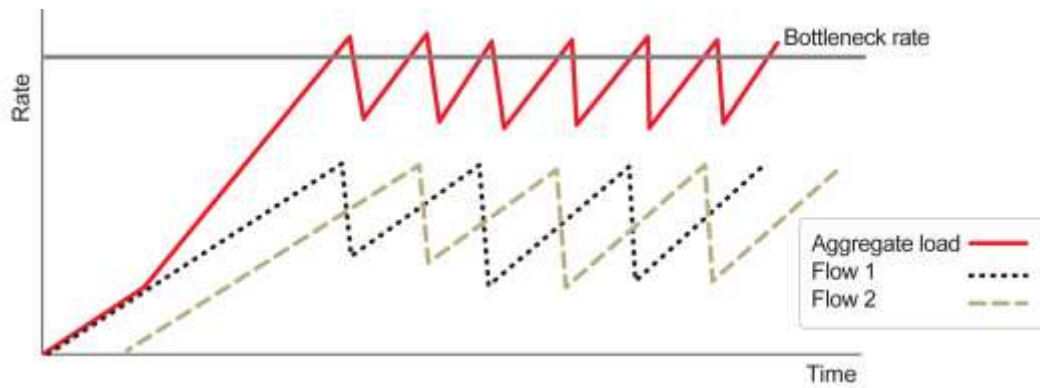


Figure 123: Random Packet Loss with Increased Capacity Utilization Using WRED

When queue occupancy goes up, this means that the ingress path rate (the TCP stream that is ingressing the switch) is higher than the egress path rate. This difference in rates should be fixed in order to reduce packet drops and to reach the maximal media utilization, since IP-20C will not egress packets to the media at a rate which is higher than the media is able to transmit.

To deal with this, IP-20C enables users to define up to 30 WRED profiles. Each profile contains a Green traffic curve and a Yellow traffic curve. These curves describe the probability of randomly dropping frames as a function of queue occupancy. In addition, using different curves for Yellow packets and Green packets enables users to enforce the rule that Yellow packets be dropped before Green packets when there is congestion.

IP-20C also includes two pre-defined read-only WRED profiles:

- Profile number 31 defines a tail-drop curve and is configured with the following values:
 - 100% Yellow traffic drop after 64kbytes occupancy.
 - 100% Green traffic drop after 128kbytes occupancy.
 - Yellow maximum drop is 100%
 - Green maximum drop is 100%
- Profile number 32 defines a profile in which all will be dropped. It is for internal use and should not be applied to traffic.

A WRED profile can be assigned to each queue. The WRED profile assigned to the queue determines whether or not to drop incoming packets according to the occupancy of the queue. Basically, as queue occupancy grows, the probability of dropping each incoming frame increases as well. As a consequence, statistically more TCP flows will be restrained before traffic congestion occurs.

The following figure provides an example of a WRED profile.

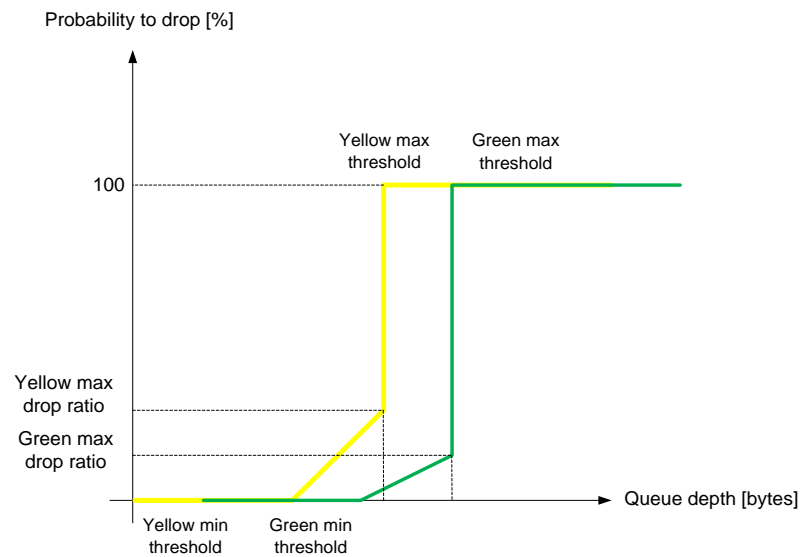


Figure 124: WRED Profile Curve

Note: The tail-drop profile, Profile 31, is the default profile for each queue. A tail drop curve is useful for reducing the effective queue size, such as when low latency must be guaranteed.

Global WRED Profile Configuration

IP-20C supports 30 user-configurable WRED profiles and one pre-defined (default) profile. The following are the WRED profile attributes:

- **Green Minimum Threshold** – Permitted values are 0 Kbytes to 8 Mbytes, with granularity of 8 Kbytes.
- **Green Maximum Threshold** – Permitted values are 0 Kbytes to 8 Mbytes, with granularity of 8 Kbytes.
- **Green-Maximum Drop** – Permitted values are 1% to 100%, with 1% drop granularity.
- **Yellow Minimum Threshold** – Permitted values are 0 Kbytes to 8 Mbytes, with granularity of 8 Kbytes.
- **Yellow Maximum Threshold** – Permitted values are 0 Kbytes to 8 Mbytes, with granularity of 8 Kbytes.
- **Yellow Maximum Drop** – Permitted values are 1% to 100%, with 1% drop granularity.

Notes: K is equal to 1024.
Users can enter any value within the permitted range. Based on the value entered by the user, the software automatically rounds off the setting according to the granularity. If the user enters a value below the lowest granular value (except 0), the software adjusts the setting to the minimum.

For each curve, frames are passed on and not dropped up to the minimum Green and Yellow thresholds. From this point, WRED performs a pseudo-random drop with a ratio based on the curve up to the maximum Green and Yellow thresholds. Beyond this point, 100% of frames with the applicable Color are dropped.

The system automatically assigns the default “tail drop” WRED profile (Profile ID 31) to every queue. Users can change the WRED profile per queue based on the application served by the queue.

Standard QoS and Hierarchical QoS (H-QoS)

In a standard QoS mechanism, egress data is mapped to a single egress interface. This single interface supports up to eight priority queues, which correspond to the CoS of the data. Since all traffic for the interface egresses via these queues, there is no way to distinguish between different services and traffic streams within the same priority.

The figure below shows three services, each with three distinct types of traffic streams:

- Voice – high priority
- Data – medium priority
- Streaming – lower priority

While the benefits of QoS on the egress path can be applied to the aggregate streams, without H-QoS they will not be able to distinguish between the various services included in these aggregate streams. Moreover, different behavior among the different traffic streams that constitute the aggregate stream can cause unpredictable behavior between the streams. For example, in a situation in which one traffic stream can transmit 50 Mbps in a shaped manner while another can transmit 50 Mbits in a burst, frames may be dropped in an unexpected way due to a lack of space in the queue resulting from a long burst.

Hierarchical QoS (H-QoS) solves this problem by enabling users to create a real egress tunnel for each stream, or for a group of streams that are bundled together. This enables the system to fully perform H-QoS with a top-down resolution, and to fully control the required SLA for each stream.

H-QoS Hierarchy

The egress path hierarchy is based on the following levels:

- Queue level
- Service bundle level
- Logical interface level

The queue level represents the physical priority queues. This level holds 2K queues. Each eight queues are bundled and represent eight CoS priority levels. One or more service points can be attached to a specific bundle, and the traffic from the service point to one of the eight queues is based on the CoS that was calculated on the ingress path.

Note: With standard QoS, all services are assigned to a single default service bundle.

The service bundle level represents the groups of eight priority queues. Every eight queues are managed as a single service bundle.

The interface level represents the physical port through which traffic from the specified service point egresses.

The following summarizes the egress path hierarchy:

- Up to 5 physical interfaces
- One service bundle per interface in standard QoS / 32 service bundles per interface in H-QoS.
- Eight queues per service bundle

H-QoS on the Interface Level

Users can assign a single leaky bucket shaper to each interface. The shaper on the interface level stops traffic from the interface if a specific user-defined peak information rate (PIR) has been exceeded.

In addition, users can configure scheduling rules for the priority queues, as follows:

- Scheduling (serve) priorities among the eight priority queues.
- Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ) among queues with the same priority.

Note: The system assigns the rules for all service bundles under the interface.

RMON counters are valid on the interface level.

H-QoS on the Service Bundle Level

Users can assign a dual leaky bucket shaper to each service bundle. On the service bundle level, the shaper changes the scheduling priority if traffic via the service bundle is above the user-defined CIR and below the PIR. If traffic is above the PIR, the scheduler stops transmission for the service bundle.

Service bundle traffic counters are valid on this level.

Note: With standard QoS, users assign the egress traffic to a single service bundle (Service Bundle ID 1).

H-QoS on the Queue Level

The egress service point points to a specific service bundle. Depending on the user application, the user can connect either a single service point or multiple service points to a service bundle. Usually, if multiple service points are connected to a service bundle, the service points will share the same traffic type and characteristics. Mapping to the eight priority queues is based on the CoS calculated on the ingress path, before any marking operation, which only changes the egress CoS and Color.

Users can assign a single leaky bucket to each queue. The shaper on the queue level stops traffic from leaving the queue if a specific user-defined PIR has been exceeded.

Traffic counters are valid on this level.

The following figure provides a detailed depiction of the H-QoS levels.

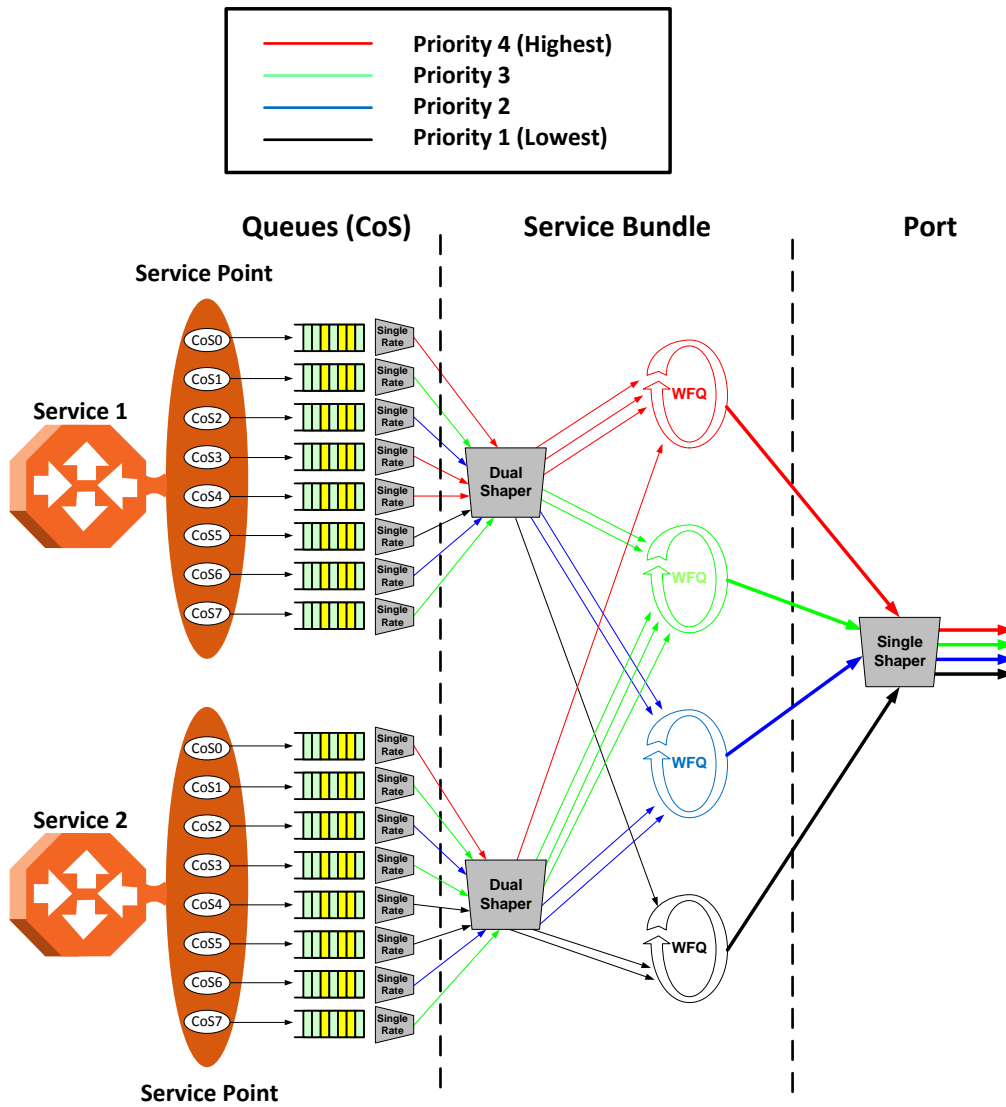


Figure 125: Detailed H-QoS Diagram

H- QoS Mode

As discussed above, users can select whether to work in Standard QoS mode or H-QoS mode.

- If the user configured all the egress service points to transmit traffic via a single service bundle, the operational mode is Standard QoS. In this mode, only Service Bundle 1 is active and there are eight output transmission queues.
- If the user configured the egress service points to transmit traffic via multiple service bundles, the operational mode is H-QoS. H-QoS mode enables users to fully distinguish among the streams and to achieve SLA per service.

Shaping on the Egress Path

Egress shaping determines the traffic profile for each queue. IP-20C performs egress shaping on the following three levels:

- Queue level – Single leaky bucket shaping.
- Service Bundle level – Dual leaky bucket shaping
- Interface level – Single leaky bucket shaping

Queue Shapers

Users can configure up to 31 single leaky bucket shaper profiles. The CIR value can be set to the following values:

- 16,000 – 32,000,000 bps – granularity of 16,000 bps
- 32,000,000 – 131,008,000 bps – granularity of 64,000 bps

Note: Users can enter any value within the permitted range. Based on the value entered by the user, the software automatically rounds off the setting according to the granularity. If the user enters a value below the lowest granular value (except 0), the software adjusts the setting to the minimum.

Users can attach one of the configured queue shaper profiles to each priority queue. If no profile is attached to the queue, no egress shaping is performed on that queue.

Service Bundle Shapers

Users can configure up to 255 dual leaky bucket shaper profiles. The profiles can be configured as follows:

- Valid CIR values are:
 - 0 – 32,000,000 bps – granularity of 16,000 bps
 - 32,000,000 – 1,000,000,000 bps – granularity of 64,000 bps
- Valid PIR values are:
 - 16,000 – 32,000,000 bps – granularity of 16,000 bps
 - 32,000,000 – 1,000,000,000 bps – granularity of 64,000 bps

Note: Users can enter any value within the permitted range. Based on the value entered by the user, the software automatically rounds off the setting according to the granularity. If the user enters a value below the lowest granular value (except 0), the software adjusts the setting to the minimum.

Users can attach one of the configured service bundle shaper profiles to each service bundle. If no profile is attached to the service bundle, no egress shaping is performed on that service bundle.

Interface Shapers

Users can configure up to 31 single leaky bucket shaper profiles. The CIR can be set to the following values:

- 0 – 8,192,000 bps – granularity of 32,000 bps
- 8,192,000 – 32,768,000 bps – granularity of 128,000 bps
- 32,768,000 – 131,072,000 bps – granularity of 512,000 bps
- 131,072,000 – 999,424,000 bps – granularity of 8,192,000 bps

Note: Users can enter any value within the permitted range. Based on the value entered by the user, the software automatically rounds off the setting according to the granularity. If the user enters a value below the value (except 0), the software adjusts the setting to the minimum.

Users can attach one of the configured interface shaper profiles to each interface. If no profile is attached to the interface, no egress shaping is performed on that interface.

Line Compensation for Shaping

Users can configure a line compensation value for all the shapers under a specific logical interface. For more information, refer to Global Rate Meter Profiles on page 159.

Egress Scheduling

Egress scheduling is responsible for transmission from the priority queues. IP-20C uses a unique algorithm with a hierarchical scheduling model over the three levels of the egress path that enables compliance with SLA requirements.

The scheduler scans all the queues over all the service bundles, per interface, and determines which queue is ready to transmit. If more than one queue is ready to transmit, the scheduler determines which queue transmits first based on:

- **Queue Priority** – A queue with higher priority is served before lower-priority queues.
- **Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ)** – If two or more queues have the same priority and are ready to transmit, the scheduler transmits frames from the queues based on a WFQ algorithm that determines the ratio of frames per queue based on a predefined weight assigned to each queue.

The following figure shows the scheduling mechanism for a single service bundle (equivalent to Standard QoS). When a user assigns traffic to more than a single service bundle (H-QoS mode), multiple instances of this model (up to 32 per port) are valid.

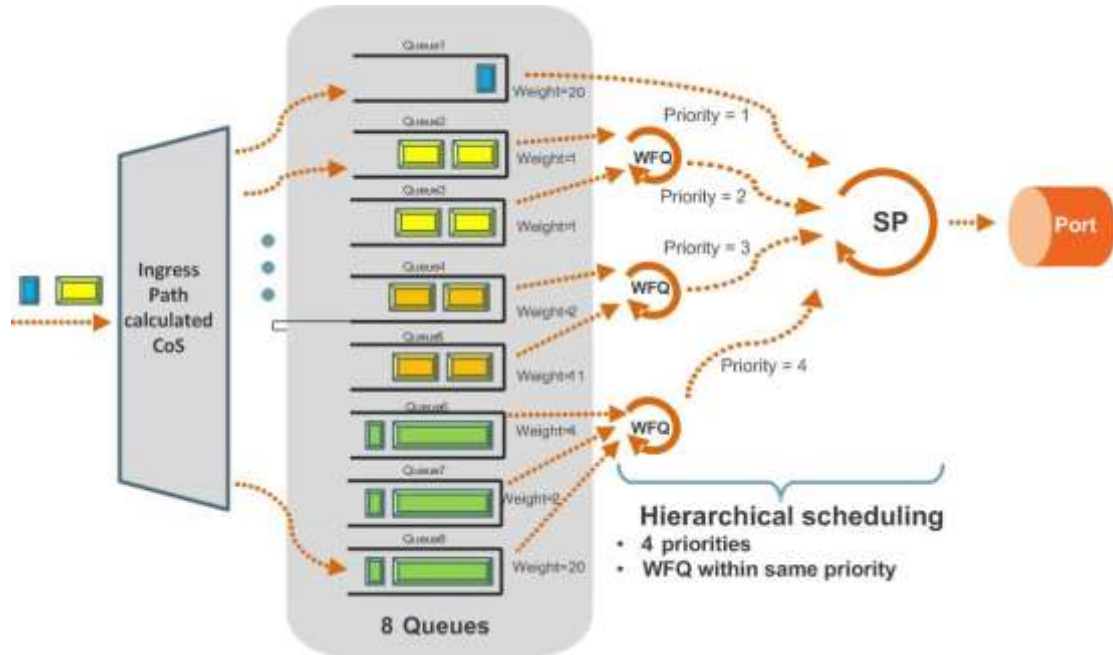


Figure 126: Scheduling Mechanism for a Single Service Bundle

Interface Priority

The profile defines the exact order for serving the eight priority queues in a single service bundle. When the user attaches a profile to an interface, all the service bundles under the interface inherit the profile.

The priority mechanism distinguishes between two states of the service bundle:

- Green State – Committed state
- Yellow state – Best effort state

Green State refers to any time when the *service bundle total rate* is below the user-defined CIR. Yellow State refers to any time when the *service bundle total rate* is above the user-defined CIR but below the PIR.

User can define up to four Green priority profiles, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest). An additional four Yellow priority profiles are defined automatically.

The following table provides a sample of an interface priority profile. This profile is also used as the default interface priority profile.

Table 21: QoS Priority Profile Example

Profile ID (1-9)

CoS	Green Priority (user defined)	Yellow Priority (read only)	Description
0	1	1	Best Effort
1	2	1	Data Service 4
2	2	1	Data Service 3
3	2	1	Data Service 2
4	2	1	Data Service 1
5	3	1	Real Time 2 (Video with large buffer)
6	3	1	Real Time 1 (Video with small buffer)
7	4	4	Management (Sync, PDUs, etc.)

When the service bundle state is Green (committed state), the service bundle priorities are as defined in the Green Priority column. When the service bundle state is Yellow (best effort state), the service bundle priorities are system-defined priorities shown in the Yellow Priority column.

Note: CoS 7 is always marked with the highest priority, no matter what the service bundle state is, since it is assumed that only high priority traffic will be tunneled via CoS 7.

The system supports up to nine interface priority profiles. Profiles 1 to 8 are defined by the user, while profile 9 is the pre-defined read-only default interface priority profile.

The following interface priority profile parameters can be configured by users:

- **Profile ID** – Profile ID number. Permitted values are 1 to 8.
- **CoS 0 Priority** – CoS 0 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 0 Description** – CoS 0 user description field, up to 20 characters.
- **CoS 1 Priority** – CoS 1 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 1 Description** – CoS 1 user description field, up to 20 characters.
- **CoS 2 Priority** – CoS 2 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 2 Description** – CoS 2 user description field, up to 20 characters.
- **CoS 3 Priority** – CoS 3 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 3 Description** – CoS 3 user description field, up to 20 characters.
- **CoS 4 Priority** – CoS 4 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 4 Description** – CoS 4 user description field, up to 20 characters.
- **CoS 5 Priority** – CoS 5 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 5 Description** – CoS 5 user description field, up to 20 characters.
- **CoS 6 Priority** – CoS 6 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 6 Description** – CoS 6 user description field, up to 20 characters.

- **CoS 7 Priority** – CoS 7 queue priority, from 4 (highest) to 1 (lowest).
- **CoS 7 Description** – CoS 7 user description field, up to 20 characters.

Users can attach one of the configured interface priority profiles to each interface. By default, the interface is assigned Profile ID 9, the pre-defined system profile.

Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ)

As described above, the scheduler serves the queues based on their priority, but when two or more queues have data to transmit and their priority is the same, the scheduler uses Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ) to determine the priorities within each priority. WFQ defines the transmission ratio, in bytes, between the queues. All the service bundles under the interface inherit the WFQ profile attached to the interface.

The system supports up to six WFQ interface profiles. Profile ID 1 is a pre-defined read-only profile, and is used as the default profile. Profiles 2 to 6 are user-defined profiles.

The following table provides an example of a WFQ profile.

Table 22: WFQ Profile Example

Profile ID (1-7)		
CoS	Queue Weight (Green)	Queue Weight (Yellow – not visible to users)
0	20	20
1	20	20
2	20	20
3	20	20
4	20	20
5	20	20
6	20	20
7	20	20

For each CoS, the user can define;

- **Profile ID** – Profile ID number. Permitted values are 2 to 6.
- **Weight** – Transmission quota in bytes. Permitted values are 1 to 20.

Users can attach one of the configured interface WFQ profiles to each interface. By default, the interface is assigned Profile ID 1, the pre-defined system profile.

Egress PMs and Statistics

Queue-Level Statistics

IP-20C supports the following counters per queue at the queue level:

- Transmitted Green Packet (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Green Bytes (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Green Bits per Second (32 bits counter)
- Dropped Green Packets (64 bits counter)
- Dropped Green Bytes (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Yellow Packets (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Yellow Bytes (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Yellow Bits per Second (32 bits counter)
- Dropped Yellow Packets (64 bits counter)
- Dropped Yellow Bytes (64 bits counter)

Service Bundle-Level Statistics

IP-20C supports the following counters per service bundle at the service bundle level:

- Transmitted Green Packets (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Green Bytes (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Green Bits per Second (32 bits counter)
- Dropped Green Packets (64 bits counter)
- Dropped Green Bytes (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Yellow Packets (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Yellow Bytes (64 bits counter)
- Transmitted Yellow Bits per Second (32 bits counter)
- Dropped Yellow Packets (64 bits counter)
- Dropped Yellow Bytes (64 bits counter)

PMs for Queue Traffic

For each logical interface, users can configure thresholds for Green and Yellow traffic per queue. Users can then display the following PMs for 15-minute and 24-hour intervals, per queue and color:

- Maximum bytes passed per second
- Minimum bytes passed per second
- Average bytes passed per second
- Maximum bytes dropped per second
- Minimum bytes dropped per second
- Average bytes dropped per second
- Maximum packets passed per second
- Minimum packets passed per second
- Average packets passed per second
- Maximum packets dropped per second
- Minimum packets dropped per second
- Average packets dropped per second
- Seconds bytes per second were over the configured threshold per interval

Interface-Level Statistics

For information on statistics at the interface level, refer to Ethernet Statistics on page 145.

Marker

Marking refers to the ability to overwrite the outgoing priority bits and Color of the outer VLAN of the egress frame. Marking mode is only applied if the outer frame is S-VLAN and S-VLAN CoS preservation is disabled, or if the outer frame is C-VLAN and C-VLAN CoS preservation is disabled. If outer VLAN preservation is enabled for the relevant outer VLAN, the egress CoS and Color are the same as the CoS and Color of the frame when it ingressed into the switching fabric.

Marking is performed according to a global table that maps CoS and Color values to the 802.1p-UP bits and the DEI or CFI bits. If Marking is enabled on a service point, the CoS and Color of frames egressing the service via that service point are overwritten according to this global mapping table.

If marking and CoS preservation for the relevant outer VLAN are both disabled, marking is applied according to the Green frame values in the global marking table.

When marking is performed, the following global tables are used by the marker to decide which CoS and Color to use as the egress CoS and Color bits.

Table 23: 802.1q UP Marking Table (C-VLAN)

CoS	Color	802.1q UP (Configurable)	CFI Color (Configurable)
0	Green	0	0
0	Yellow	0	1

CoS	Color	802.1q UP (Configurable)	CFI Color (Configurable)
1	Green	1	0
1	Yellow	1	1
2	Green	2	0
2	Yellow	2	1
3	Green	3	0
3	Yellow	3	1
4	Green	4	0
4	Yellow	4	1
5	Green	5	0
5	Yellow	5	1
6	Green	6	0
6	Yellow	6	1
7	Green	7	0
7	Yellow	7	1

Table 24: 802.1ad UP Marking Table (S-VLAN)

CoS	Color	802.1ad UP (configurable)	DEI Color (configurable)
0	Green	0	0
0	Yellow	0	1
1	Green	1	0
1	Yellow	1	1
2	Green	2	0
2	Yellow	2	1
3	Green	3	0
3	Yellow	3	1
4	Green	4	0
4	Yellow	4	1
5	Green	5	0
5	Yellow	5	1
6	Green	6	0
6	Yellow	6	1
7	Green	7	0
7	Yellow	7	1

The keys for these tables are the CoS and Color. The results are the 802.1q/802.1ad UP and CFI/DEI bits, which are user-configurable. It is strongly recommended that the default values not be changed except by advanced users.

Standard QoS and Hierarchical QoS (H-QoS) Summary

The following table summarizes and compares the capabilities of standard QoS and H-QoS.

Table 25: Summary and Comparison of Standard QoS and H-QoS

Capability	Standard QoS	Hierarchical QoS
Number of transmission queues per port	8	256
Number of service bundles	1 (always service bundle id equal 1)	32
WRED	Per queue (two curves – for green traffic and for yellow traffic via the queue)	Per queue (two curves – for green traffic and for yellow traffic via the queue)
Shaping at queue level	Single leaky bucket	Single leaky bucket
Shaping at service bundle level	Dual leaky bucket	Dual leaky bucket
Shaping at port level	Single leaky bucket (this level is not relevant since it is recommended to use service bundle level with dual leaky bucket)	Single leaky bucket
Transmission queues priority	Per queue priority (4 priorities).	Per queue priority (4 priorities). All service bundles for a specific port inherit the 8-queues priority settings.
Weighted fair Queue (WFQ)	Queue level (between queues)	Queue level (between queues) Service Bundle level (between service bundles)
Marker	Supported	Supported
Statistics	Queue level (8 queues) Service bundle level (1 service bundle) Port level	Queue level (256 queues) Service bundle level (32 service bundles) Port level

5.3.7 Global Switch Configuration

The following parameters are configured globally for the IP-20C switch:

- **S-VLAN Ethertype** – Defines the ethertype recognized by the system as the S-VLAN ethertype. IP-20C supports the following S-VLAN etherypes:
 - 0x8100
 - 0x88A8 (default)
 - 0x9100
 - 0x9200
- **C-VLAN Ethertype** – Defines the ethertype recognized by the system as the C-VLAN ethertype. IP-20C supports 0x8100 as the C-VLAN ethertype.

MRU – The maximum segment size defines the maximum receive unit (MRU) capability and the maximum transmit capability (MTU) of the system. Users can configure a global MRU for the system. Permitted values are 64 bytes to 9612 bytes.

5.3.8 Automatic State Propagation and Link Loss Forwarding

Related topics:

- Network Resiliency
- Unit (External) Protection
- Link Aggregation Groups (LAG)

Automatic State Propagation (ASP) enables propagation of radio failures back to the Ethernet port. You can also configure ASP to close the Ethernet port based on a radio failure at the remote carrier. ASP improves the recovery performance of resiliency protocols.

Note: It is recommended to configure both ends of the link to the same ASP configuration.

5.3.8.1 Automatic State Propagation Operation

Automatic state propagation is configured as pairs of interfaces. Each interface pair includes one Monitored Interface and one Controlled Interface. Multiple pairs can be configured using the same Monitored Interface and multiple Controlled Interfaces.

The Monitored Interface is a radio interface, a radio protection group, or a Multi-Carrier ABC group. The Controlled Interface is an Ethernet interface or LAG. An Ethernet interface can only be assigned to one Monitored interface.

Each Controlled Interface is assigned an LLF ID. If **ASP trigger by remote fault** is enabled on the remote side of the link, the ASP state of the Controlled Interface is propagated to the Controlled Interface with the same LLF ID at the remote side of the link. This means if ASP is triggered locally, it is propagated to the remote side of the link, but only to Controlled Interfaces with LLF IDs that match the LLF IDs of the affected Controlled Interfaces on the local side of the link.

The following events in the Monitored Interface trigger ASP:

- Radio LOF
- Radio Excessive BER
- Remote Radio LOF
- Remote Excessive BER
- Remote LOC

The user can also configure the ASP pair so that Radio LOF, Radio Excessive BER, or loss of the Ethernet connection at the remote side of the link will also trigger ASP.

When a triggering event takes place:

- If the Controlled Interface is an electrical GbE port, the port is closed.
- If the Controlled Interface is an optical GbE port, the port is muted.

The Controlled Interface remains closed or muted until all triggering events are cleared.

In addition, when a local triggering event takes place, the ASP mechanism sends an indication to the remote side of the link. Even when no triggering event has taken place, the ASP mechanism sends periodic update messages indicating that no triggering event has taken place.

Users can configure a trigger delay time, so that when a triggering event takes place, the ASP mechanism does not propagate the event until this delay time has elapsed.

5.3.8.2 Automatic State Propagation and Protection

When the Controlled Interface is part of a 1+1 HSB protection configuration, a port shutdown message is only sent to the remote side of the link if both of the protected interfaces are shut down.

In a 1+1 HSB configuration using Multi-Unit LAG mode, in which two Ethernet interfaces on each unit belong to a static LAG, an ASP triggering event only shuts down the external user port.

When the Monitored interface is part of a 1+1 HSB configuration, ASP is only triggered if both interfaces fail.

Closing an Ethernet port because of ASP does not trigger a protection switch.

5.3.8.3 Preventing Loss of In-Band Management

If the link uses in-band management, shutting down the Ethernet port can cause loss of management access to the unit. To prevent this, users can configure ASP to operate in ASP Management Safe mode. In ASP Management Safe mode, the ASP mechanism does not physically shut down the Controlled Interface when ASP is triggered. Instead, the ASP mechanism sends a failure indication message. This message is used to propagate the failure indication to external equipment.

ASP Management Safe mode is particularly useful when the IP-20C unit is an element in the following network topologies:

- Ring or mesh network topology.
- An IP-20N connected to an IP-20C unit being utilized as a pipe via an Ethernet interface (back-to-back on the same site).¹⁸
- Payload traffic is spanned by G.8032 in the network.
- In-band management is spanned by MSTP in the network.
- An IP-20C unit being utilized as a pipe is running one MSTP instance for spanning in-band management.¹⁹

¹⁸ ASP interoperability among IP-20 units requires that all units be running software version 7.7 or higher.

¹⁹ G.8032 and MSTP are planned for future release.

5.3.9 Adaptive Bandwidth Notification (EOAM)

Adaptive Bandwidth Notification (ABN, also known as EOAM) enables third party applications to learn about bandwidth changes in a radio link when ACM is active. Once ABN is enabled, the radio unit reports bandwidth information to third-party switches.

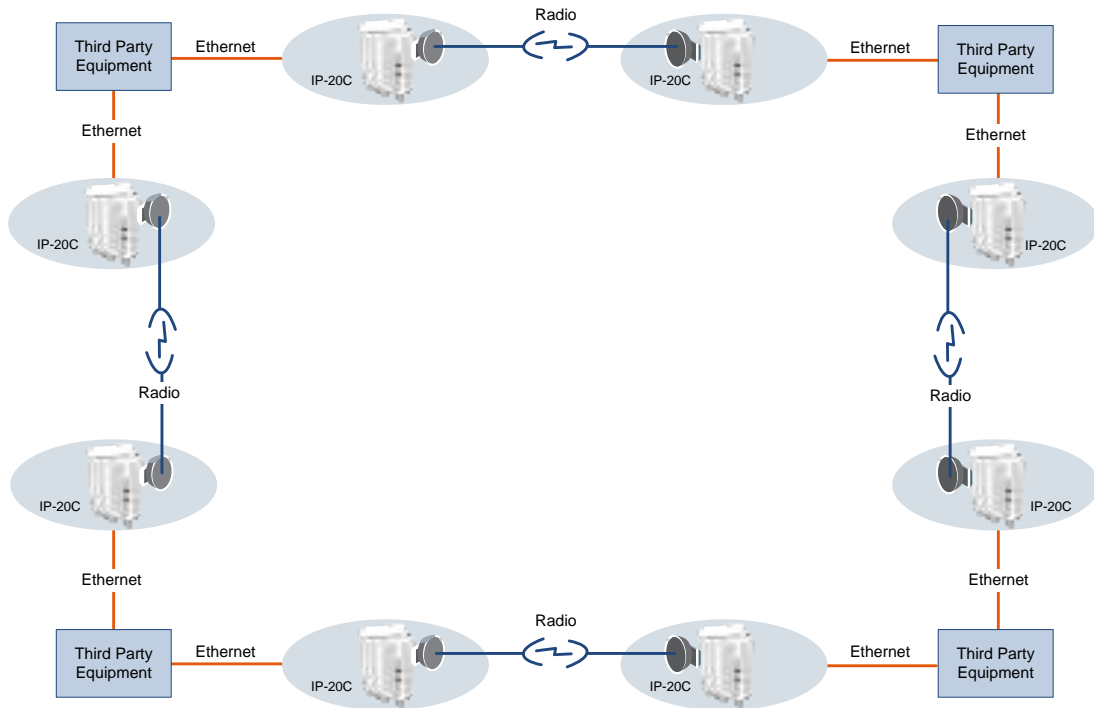


Figure 127: Network Topology with IP-20C Units and Third-Party Equipment

The ABN entity creates a logical relationship between a radio interface or a logical group of radio interfaces, called the Monitored Interface, and an Ethernet interface or a logical group of Ethernet interfaces, called the Control Interface. When bandwidth degrades from the nominal bandwidth value in the Monitored Interface, messages relaying the actual bandwidth values are periodically sent over the Control Interface. A termination message is sent once the bandwidth returns to its nominal level.

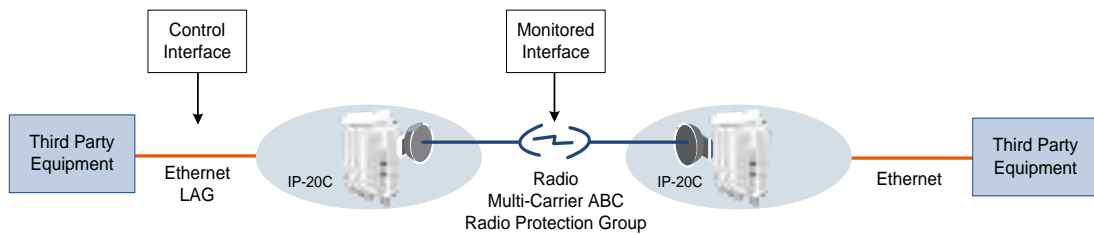


Figure 128: ABN Entity

The nominal bandwidth is calculated by the system based on the maximum bandwidth profile. If the Monitored Interface is a Multi-Carrier ABC group, the nominal bandwidth is based on the sum of the group members. If the Monitored Interface is a protection group, the nominal bandwidth relates to the active interface.

The ABN entity measures the bandwidth in samples once a change in profile takes place. A weighted average is calculated based on the samples at regular, user-defined intervals to determine whether a bandwidth degradation event has occurred. Bandwidth degradation is reported only if the measured bandwidth remains below the nominal bandwidth at the end of a user-defined holdoff period. This prevents the IP-20C from reporting bandwidth degradation due to short fading events.

5.3.10 Network Resiliency

IP-20C provides carrier-grade service resiliency using the following protocols:

- G.8032 Ethernet Ring Protection Switching (ERPS)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

These protocols are designed to prevent loops in ring/mesh topologies.

Note: G.8032 and MSTP are planned for future release.

5.3.10.1 G.8032 Ethernet Ring Protection Switching (ERPS)

ERPS, as defined in the G.8032 ITU standard, is currently the most advanced ring protection protocol, providing convergence times of sub-50ms. ERPS prevents loops in an Ethernet ring by guaranteeing that at any time, traffic can flow on all except one link in the ring. This link is called the Ring Protection Link (RPL). Under normal conditions, the RPL is blocked, i.e., not used for traffic. One designated Ethernet Ring Node, the RPL Owner Node, is responsible for blocking traffic at one end of the RPL. When an Ethernet ring failure occurs, the RPL Owner unblocks its end of the RPL, allowing the RPL to be used for traffic. The other Ethernet Ring Node adjacent to the RPL, the RPL Neighbor Node, may also participate in blocking or unblocking its end of the RPL. A number of ERP instances (ERPis) can be created on the same ring.

G.8032 ERPS Benefits

ERPS, as the most advanced ring protection protocol, provides the following benefits:

- Provides sub-50ms convergence times.
- Provides service-based granularity for load balancing, based on the ability to configure multiple ERPis on a single physical ring.
- Provides configurable timers to control switching and convergence parameters per ERPi.

G.8032 ERPS Operation

The ring protection mechanism utilizes an APS protocol to implement the protection switching actions. Forced and manual protection switches can also be initiated by the user, provided the user-initiated switch has a higher priority than any other local or far-end request.

Ring protection switching is based on the detection of defects in the transport entity of each link in the ring. For purposes of the protection switching process, each transport entity within the protected domain has a state of either Signal Fail

(SF) or Non-Failed (OK). R-APS control messages are forwarded by each node in the ring to update the other nodes about the status of the links.

Note: An additional state, Signal Degrade (SD), is planned for future release. The SD state is similar to SF, but with lower priority.

Users can configure up to 16 ERPIS. Each ERPI is associated with an Ethernet service defined in the system. This enables operators to define a specific set of G.8032 characteristics for individual services or groups of services within the same physical ring. This includes a set of timers that enables operators to optimize protection switching behavior per ERPI:

- **Wait to Restore (WTR) Timer** – Defines a minimum time the system waits after signal failure is recovered before reverting to idle state.
- **Guard Time** – Prevents unnecessary state changes and loops.
- **Hold-off Time** – Determines the time period from failure detection to response.

Each ERPI maintains a state machine that defines the node's state for purposes of switching and convergence. The state is determined according to events that occur in the ring, such as signal failure and forced or manual switch requests, and their priority. Possible states are:

- Idle
- Protecting
- Forced Switch (FS)
- Manual Switch (MS)
- Pending

As shown in the following figure, in idle (normal) state, R-APS messages pass through all links in the ring, while the RPL is blocked for traffic. The RPL can be on either edge of the ring. R-APS messages are sent every five seconds.

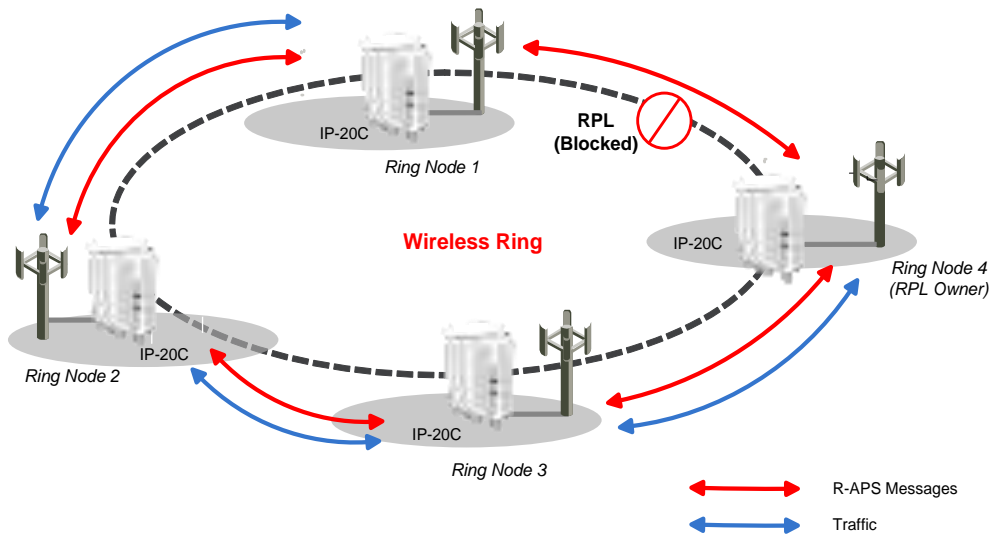


Figure 129: G.8032 Ring in Idle (Normal) State

Once a signal failure is detected, the RPL is unblocked for each ERPI. As shown in the following figure, the ring switches to protecting state. The nodes that detect the failure send periodic SF messages to alert the other nodes in the link of the failure and initiate the protecting state.

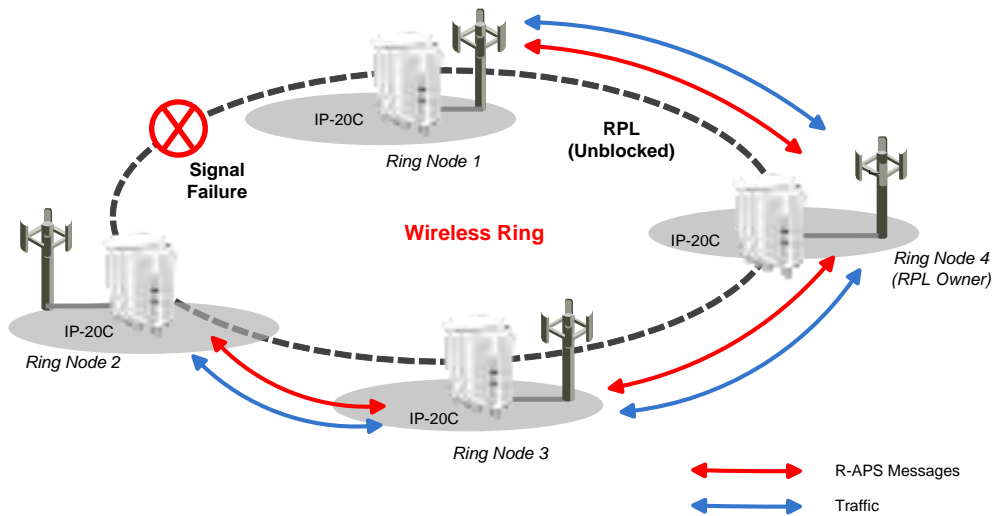


Figure 130: G.8032 Ring in Protecting State

The ability to define multiple ERPIs and assign them to different Ethernet services or groups of services enables operators to perform load balancing by configuring a different RPL for each ERPI. The following figure illustrates a ring in which four ERPIs each carry services with 33% capacity in idle state, since each link is designated the RPL, and is therefore idle, for a different ERPI.

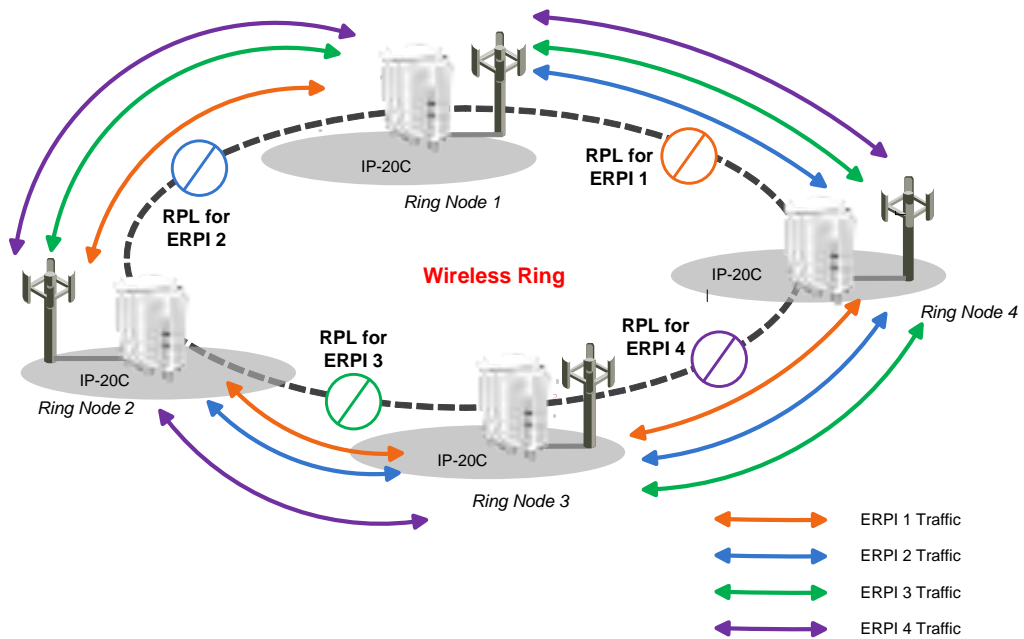


Figure 131: Load Balancing Example in G.8032 Ring

5.3.10.2 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

MSTP, as defined in IEEE 802.1q, provides full connectivity for frames assigned to any given VLAN throughout a bridged LAN consisting of arbitrarily interconnected bridges.

With MSTP, an independent multiple spanning tree instance (MSTI) is configured for each group of services, and only one path is made available (unblocked) per spanning tree instance. This prevents network loops and provides load balancing capability. It also enables operators to differentiate among Ethernet services by mapping them to different, specific MSTIs. The maximum number of MSTIs is configurable, from 2 to 16.

MSTP is an extension of, and is backwards compatible with, Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP).

IP-20C supports MSTP according to the following IEEE standards:

- 802.1q
- 802.1ad amendment (Q-in-Q)
- 802.1ah (TE instance)

MSTP Benefits

MSTP significantly improves network resiliency in the following ways:

- Prevents data loops by configuring the active topology for each MSTI such that there is never more than a single route between any two points in the network.

- Provides for fault tolerance by automatically reconfiguring the spanning tree topology whenever there is a bridge failure or breakdown in a data path.
- Automatically reconfigures the spanning tree to accommodate addition of bridges and bridge ports to the network, without the formation of transient data loops.
- Enables frames assigned to different services or service groups to follow different data routes within administratively established regions of the network.
- Provides for predictable and reproducible active topology based on management of the MSTP parameters.
- Operates transparently to the end stations.
- Consumes very little bandwidth to establish and maintain MSTIs, constituting a small percentage of the total available bandwidth which is independent of both the total traffic supported by the network and the total number of bridges or LANs in the network.
- Does not require bridges to be individually configured before being added to the network.

MSTP Operation

MSTP includes the following elements:

- **MST Region** – A set of physically connected bridges that can be portioned into a set of logical topologies.
- **Internal Spanning Tree (IST)** – Every MST Region runs an IST, which is a special spanning tree instance that disseminates STP topology information for all other MSTIs.
- **CIST Root** – The bridge that has the lowest Bridge ID among all the MST Regions.
- **Common Spanning Tree (CST)** – The single spanning tree calculated by STP, RSTP, and MSTP to connect MST Regions. All bridges and LANs are connected into a single CST.
- **Common Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)** – A collection of the ISTs in each MST Region, and the CST that interconnects the MST regions and individual spanning trees. MSTP connects all bridges and LANs with a single CIST.

MSTP specifies:

- An MST Configuration Identifier that enables each bridge to advertise its configuration for allocating frames with given VIDs to any of a number of MSTIs.
- A priority vector that consists of a bridge identifier and path cost information for the CIST.
- An MSTI priority vector for any given MSTI within each MST Region.

Each bridge selects a CIST priority vector for each port based on the priority vectors and MST Configuration Identifiers received from the other bridges and on an incremental path cost associated with each receiving port. The resulting priority vectors are such that in a stable network:

- One bridge is selected to be the CIST Root.

- A minimum cost path to the CIST Root is selected for each bridge.
- The CIST Regional Root is identified as the one root per MST Region whose minimum cost path to the root is not through another bridge using the same MST Configuration Identifier.

Based on priority vector comparisons and calculations performed by each bridge for each MSTI, one bridge is independently selected for each MSTI to be the MSTI Regional Root, and a minimum cost path is defined from each bridge or LAN in each MST Region to the MSTI Regional Root.

The following events trigger MSTP re-convergence:

- Addition or removal of a bridge or port.
- A change in the operational state of a port or group (LAG or protection).
- A change in the service to instance mapping.
- A change in the maximum number of MSTIs.
- A change in an MSTI bridge priority, port priority, or port cost.

Note: All except the last of these triggers can cause the entire MSTP to re-converge. The last trigger only affects the modified MSTI.

MSTP Interoperability

MSTP in IP-20C units is interoperable with:

- FibeAir IP-10 units running RSTP.
- Third-party bridges running MSTP.
- Third-party bridges running RSTP

5.3.11 OAM

FibeAir IP-20C provides complete Service Operations Administration and Maintenance (SOAM) functionality at multiple layers, including:

- Fault management status and alarms.
- Maintenance signals, such as AIS, and RDI.
- Maintenance commands, such as loopbacks and Linktrace commands.

IP-20C is fully compliant with G.8013/Y.1731, MEF-17, MEF-20, MEF-30, and MEF-31.

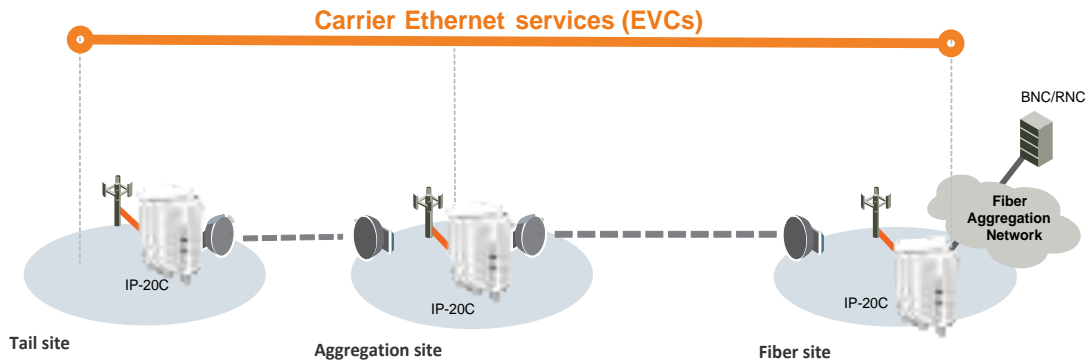


Figure 132: IP-20C End-to-End Service Management

5.3.11.1 Connectivity Fault Management (FM)

The Y.1731 standard and the, MEF-30 specifications define SOAM. SOAM is concerned with detecting, isolating, and reporting connectivity faults spanning networks comprising multiple LANs, including LANs other than IEEE 802.3 media.

Y.1731 Ethernet FM (Connectivity Fault Management) consists of three protocols that operate together to aid in fault management:

- Continuity check
- Link trace
- Loopback.

Note: Link trace is planned for future release.

FibeAir IP-20C utilizes these protocols to maintain smooth system operation and non-stop data flow.

The following are the basic building blocks of FM:

- Maintenance domains, their constituent maintenance points, and the managed objects required to create and administer them.

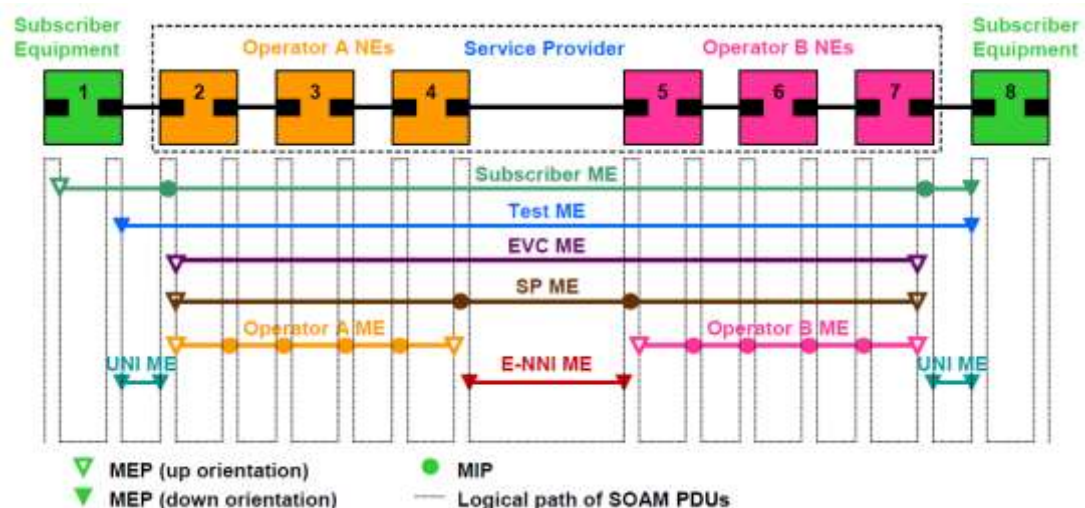


Figure 133 SOAM Maintenance Entities (Example)

- Protocols and procedures used by maintenance points to maintain and diagnose connectivity faults within a maintenance domain.

- CCM (Continuity Check Message): CCM can detect Connectivity Faults (loss of connectivity or failure in the remote MEP).
- Loopback: LBM/LBR mechanism is an on-demand mechanism. It is used to verify connectivity from any MEP to any certain Maintenance Point in the MA/MEG. A session of loopback messages can include up to 1024 messages with varying intervals ranging from 1 to 60 seconds. Message size can reach jumbo frame size.
- Linktrace: The LTM/LTR mechanism is an on-demand mechanism. It can detect the route of the data from any MEP to any other MEP in the MA/MEG. It can be used for the following purposes:
 - Adjacent relation retrieval – The ETH-LT function can be used to retrieve the adjacency relationship between an MEP and a remote MEP or MIP. The result of running ETH-LT function is a sequence of MIPs from the source MEP until the target MIP or MEP.
 - Fault localization – The ETH-LT function can be used for fault localization. When a fault occurs, the sequence of MIPs and/or MEP will probably be different from the expected sequence. The difference between the sequences provides information about the fault location.
 - AIS: AIS (defined in G.8013/Y.17310) is the Ethernet alarm indication signal function used to suppress alarms following detection of defect conditions at the server (sub) layer.

5.3.11.2 Ethernet Line Interface Loopback

FibeAir IP-20C supports loopback testing for its radio interfaces. In addition, the Ethernet Line Interface Loopback feature provides the ability to run loopbacks over the link. When Ethernet loopback is enabled on an interface, the system loops back all packets ingressing the interface. This enables loopbacks to be performed over the link from other points in the network.

For example, as shown in the figure below, a loopback can be performed from test equipment over the line to an Ethernet interface. A loopback can also be performed from the other side of the radio link.

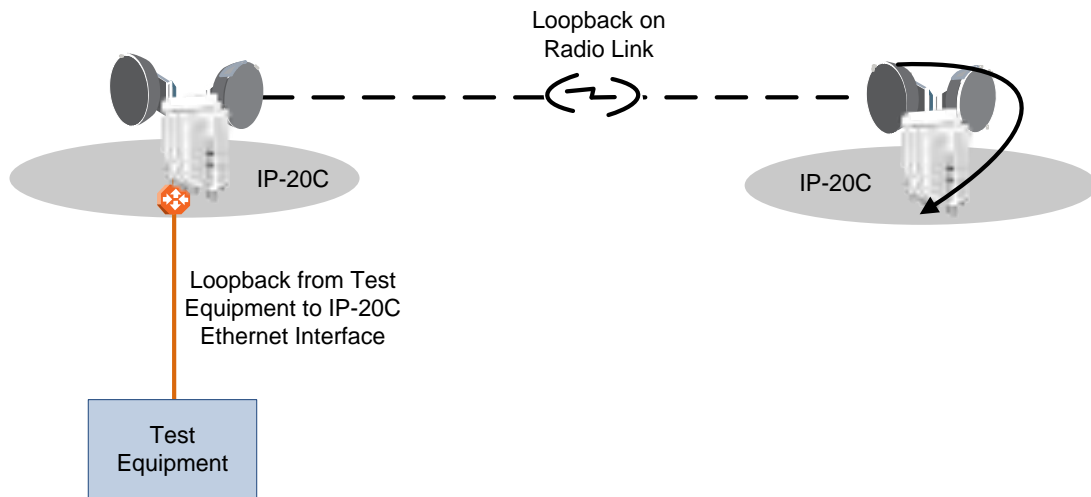


Figure 134: Ethernet Line Interface Loopback – Application Examples

Ethernet loopbacks can be performed on any logical interface. This includes GbE interfaces, radio interfaces, and LAGS. Ethernet loopbacks cannot be performed on the management interface.

The following parameters can be configured for an Ethernet loopback:

- The interface can be configured to swap DA and SA MAC addresses during the loopback. This prevents Ethernet loops from occurring. It is recommended to enable MAC address swapping if MSTP or LLDP is enabled.
- Ethernet loopback has a configurable duration period of up to 15 minutes, but can be disabled manually before the duration period ends. Permanent loopback is not supported.

Ethernet loopbacks can be configured on more than one interface simultaneously.

When an Ethernet loopback is active, network resiliency protocols (G.8032 and MSTP) will detect interface failure due to the failure to receive BPDUs.²⁰

In a system using in-band management, Ethernet loopback activation on the remote side of the link causes loss of management to the remote unit. The duration period of the loopback should take this into account.

²⁰

G.8032 and MSTP are planned for future release.

5.3.11.3 SFP DDM and Inventory Monitoring

FibeAir IP-20C supports static and dynamic monitoring for all SFP modules used in Ethernet and MIMO ports. Dynamic monitoring PMs are also available.

DDM (Digital Diagnostic Monitoring) enables users to display dynamic information about the SFP state, including:

- RX Power (in dBm)
- TX Power (in dBm)
- Bias current (mA)
- Temperature (both Celsius and Fahrenheit)

Inventory monitoring enables users to display the following information about each SFP module installed in the IP-20 unit:

- Connector Type
- Transceiver Type (e.g., 10G BASE-LR)
- Vendor Name
- Vendor Part Number
- Vendor Serial Number
- Vendor Revision
- Wavelength
- Maximum length of link per fiber optic cable type

DDM PMs can be displayed for 15-minute and 24-hour intervals. For each interval, the following PMs are displayed:

- Minimum RX power during the interval (dBm)
- Average RX power during the interval (dBm)
- Maximum RX power during the interval (dBm)
- Minimum TX power during the interval (dBm)
- Average TX power during the interval (dBm)
- Maximum TX power during the interval (dBm)

Note: DDM parameters are not relevant for electrical SFPs.

Thresholds for these alarms are programmed into the SFP modules by the manufacturer.

5.4 Synchronization

This section describes IP-20C's flexible synchronization solution that enables operators to configure a combination of synchronization techniques, based on the operator's network and migration strategy, including:

- PTP optimized transport, supporting IEEE 1588 and NTP, with guaranteed ultra-low PDV and support for ACM and narrow channels.
- Native Sync Distribution, for end-to-end distribution using GbE.
- SyncE PRC Pipe Regenerator mode, providing PRC grade (G.811) performance for pipe ("regenerator") applications.

This section includes:

- IP-20C Synchronization Solution
- Available Synchronization Interfaces
- Synchronous Ethernet (SyncE)
- IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport
- SSM Support and Loop Prevention

Related topics:

- NTP Support

5.4.1 IP-20C Synchronization Solution

Ceragon's synchronization solution ensures maximum flexibility by enabling the operator to select any combination of techniques suitable for the operator's network and migration strategy.

- Native Sync Distribution
 - End-to-End Native Synchronization distribution
 - Synchronization Status Messages (SSM) to prevent loops and enable use of most reliable clock source
 - User-defined clock source priority and quality level
 - Automated determination of relative clock source quality levels
- SyncE PRC Pipe Regenerator mode
 - PRC grade (G.811) performance for pipe ("regenerator") applications
- IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport
 - Transparent Clock – Resides between master and slave nodes, and measures and adjusts for delay variation to guarantee ultra-low PDV.
 - Boundary Clock – Regenerates frequency and phase synchronization, providing, increasing the scalability of the synchronization network while rigorously maintaining timing accuracy.²¹

²¹ Boundary Clock is planned for future release.

5.4.2 Available Synchronization Interfaces

Frequency signals can be taken by the system from a number of different interfaces (one reference at a time). The reference frequency may also be conveyed to external equipment through different interfaces.

Table 26: Synchronization Interface Options

Available interfaces as frequency input (reference sync source)	Available interfaces as frequency output
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Radio carrier • GbE Ethernet interfaces 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Radio carrier • GbE Ethernet interfaces

It is possible to configure up to eight synchronization sources in the system. At any given moment, only one of these sources is active; the clock is taken from the active source onto all other appropriately configured interfaces

5.4.3 Synchronous Ethernet (SyncE)

SyncE is standardized in ITU-T G.8261 and G.8262, and refers to a method whereby the frequency is delivered on the physical layer.

5.4.3.1 SyncE PRC Pipe Regenerator Mode

In SyncE PRC pipe regenerator mode, frequency is transported between two GbE interfaces through the radio link.

PRC pipe regenerator mode makes use of the fact that the system is acting as a simple link (so no distribution mechanism is necessary) in order to achieve the following:

- Improved frequency distribution performance, with PRC quality.
- Simplified configuration

In PRC pipe regenerator mode, frequency is taken from the incoming GbE Ethernet signal, and used as a reference for the radio frame. On the receiver side, the radio frame frequency is used as the reference signal for the outgoing Ethernet PHY.

Frequency distribution behaves in a different way for optical and electrical GbE interfaces, because of the way these interfaces are implemented:

- For optical interfaces, separate and independent frequencies are transported in each direction.
- For electrical interfaces, each PHY must act either as clock master or as clock slave in its own link. For this reason, frequency can only be distributed in one direction, determined by the user.

5.4.4 IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport

Precision Timing Protocol (PTP) refers to the distribution of frequency and phase information across a packet-switched network.

IP-20C supports PTP optimized transport, a message-based protocol that can be implemented across packet-based networks. IEEE-1588v2 provides phase synchronization, and is designed to provide higher accuracy and precision, to the scale of nanoseconds.

IEEE-1588v2 PTP synchronization is based on a master-slave architecture in which the master and slave exchange PTP packets carrying clock information. The master is connected to a reference clock, and the slave synchronizes itself to the master.

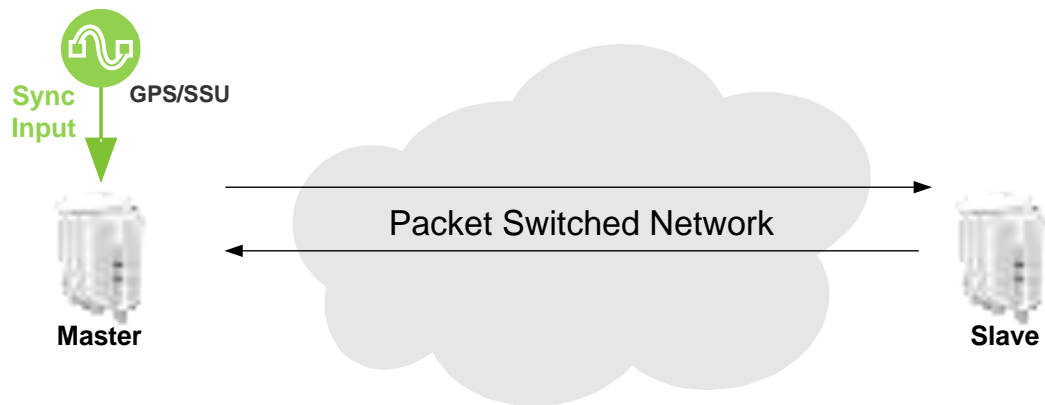


Figure 135: IEEE-1588v2 PTP Optimized Transport – General Architecture

Accurate synchronization requires a determination of the propagation delay for PTP packets. Propagation delay is determined by a series of messages between the master and slave.

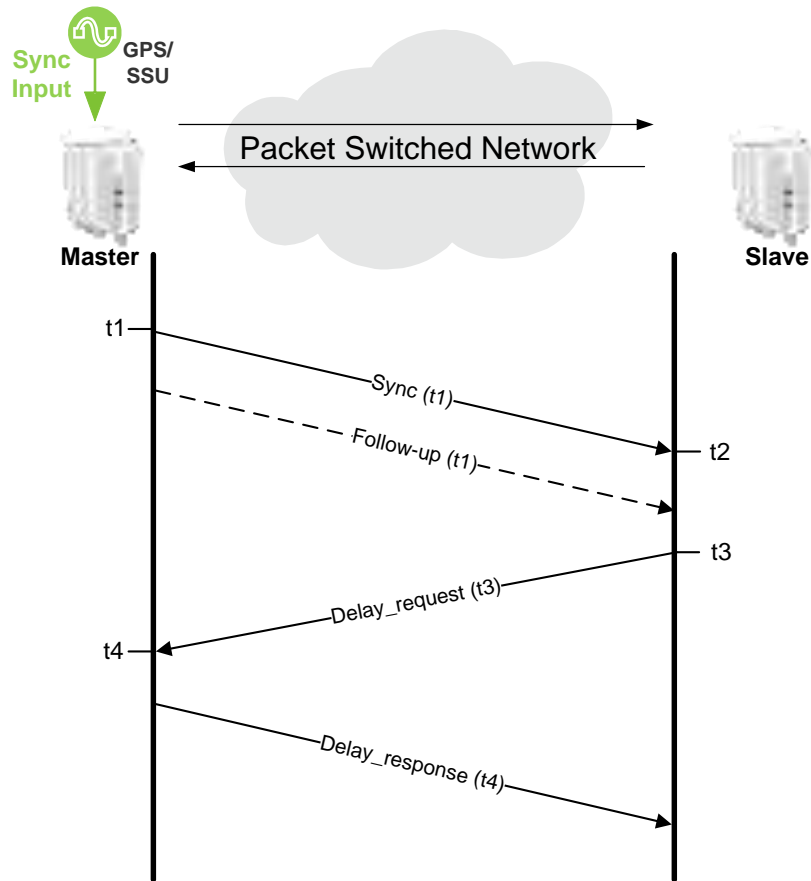


Figure 136: Calculating the Propagation Delay for PTP Packets

In this information exchange:

- 1 The master sends a Sync message to the slave and notes the time (t1) the message was sent.
- 2 The slave receives the Sync message and notes the time the message was received (t2).
- 3 The master conveys the t1 timestamp to the slave, in one of the following ways:
 - One-Step – Embedding the t1 timestamp in the Sync message.
 - Two-Step – Embedding the t1 timestamp in a Follow-up message.
- 4 The slave sends a Delay_request message to the master and notes the time the message was sent (t3).
- 5 The master receives the Delay_request message and notes the time the message was received (t4).
- 6 The master conveys the t4 timestamp to the slave by embedding the t4 timestamp in a Delay_response message.

Based on this message exchange, the protocol calculates both the clock offset between the master and slave and the propagation delay, based on the following formulas:

$$\text{Offset} = [(t2 - t1) - (t4 - t3)]/2$$

$$\text{Propagation Delay} = [(t2 - t1) + (t4 - t3)]/2$$

The calculation is based on the assumption that packet delay is constant and that delays are the same in each direction. For information on the factors that may undermine these assumptions and how IP-20C's IEEE-1588v2 implementations mitigate these factors, see *Mitigating PDV* on page 196.

5.4.4.1 IEEE-1588v2 Characteristics

IEEE-1588v2 provides packet-based synchronization that can transmit both frequency accuracy and phase information. This is essential for LTE applications, and adds the ability to transmit phase information to SyncE.

The main IEEE-1588v2 benefits include:

- Nanosecond precession.
- Meets strict LTE-A requirements for rigorous frequency and phase timing.
- Hardware time stamping of PTP packets.
- Standard protocol compatible with third-party equipment.
- Short frame and higher message rates.
- Supports unicast as well as multicast.
- Enables smooth transition from unsupported networks.
- Mitigates PDV issues by using Transparent Clock and Boundary Clock (see *Mitigating PDV* on page 196).
- Minimal consumption of bandwidth and processing power.
- Simple configuration.

5.4.4.2 Mitigating PDV

To get the most out of PTP and minimize PDV, IP-20C supports Transparent Clock and Boundary Clock²².

PTP calculates path delay based on the assumption that packet delay is constant and that delays are the same in each direction. Delay variation invalidates this assumption. High PDV in wireless transport for synchronization over packet protocols, such as IEEE-1588, can dramatically affect the quality of the recovered clock. Slow variations are the most harmful, since in most cases it is more difficult for the receiver to average out such variations.

PDV can arise from both packet processing delay variation and radio link delay variation.

Packet processing delay variation can be caused by:

- Queuing Delay – Delay associated with incoming and outgoing packet buffer queuing.
- Head of Line Blocking – Occurs when a high priority frame, such as a frame that contains IEEE-1588 information, is forced to wait until a lower-priority frame that has already started to be transmitted completes its transmission.

²² Boundary Clock is planned for future release.

- **Store and Forward** – Used to determine where to send individual packets. Incoming packets are stored in local memory while the MAC address table is searched and the packet's cyclic redundancy field is checked before the packet is sent out on the appropriate port. This process introduces variations in the time latency of packet forwarding due to packet size, flow control, MAC address table searches, and CRC calculations.

Radio link delay variation is caused by the effect of ACM, which enables dynamic modulation changes to accommodate radio path fading, typically due to weather changes. Lowering modulation reduces link capacity, causing traffic to accumulate in the buffers and producing transmission delay.

Note: When bandwidth is reduced due to lowering of the ACM modulation point, it is essential that high priority traffic carrying IEEE-1588 packets be given the highest priority using IP-20C's enhanced QoS mechanism, so that this traffic will not be subject to delays or discards.

These factors can combine to produce a minimum and maximum delay, as follows:

- Minimum frame delay can occur when the link operates at a high modulation and no other frame has started transmission when the IEEE-1588 frame is ready for transmission.
- Maximum frame delay can occur when the link is operating at QPSK modulation and a large (e.g., 1518 bytes) frame has just started transmission when the IEEE-1588 frame is ready for transmission.

The worst case PDV is defined as the greatest difference between the minimum and maximum frame delays. The worst case can occur not just in the radio equipment itself but in every switch across the network.

To ensure minimal packet delay variation (PDV), IP-20C's synchronization solution includes 1588v2-compliant Transparent Clock and Boundary Clock synchronization protocols. The following two sections describe these protocols and how they counter PDV.

5.4.4.3 Transparent Clock

IP-20C supports End-to-End Transparent Clock, which updates the correction field for the delay associated with individual packet transfers. End-to-End Transparent Clock is the most appropriate option for microwave radio links.

A Transparent Clock node resides between a master and a slave node, and updates the packets passing between the master and slave to compensate for delay, enabling the terminating clock in the slave node to remove the delay accrued in the Transparent Clock node. The Transparent Clock node is itself neither a master nor a slave node, but rather, serves as a bridge between master and slave nodes.

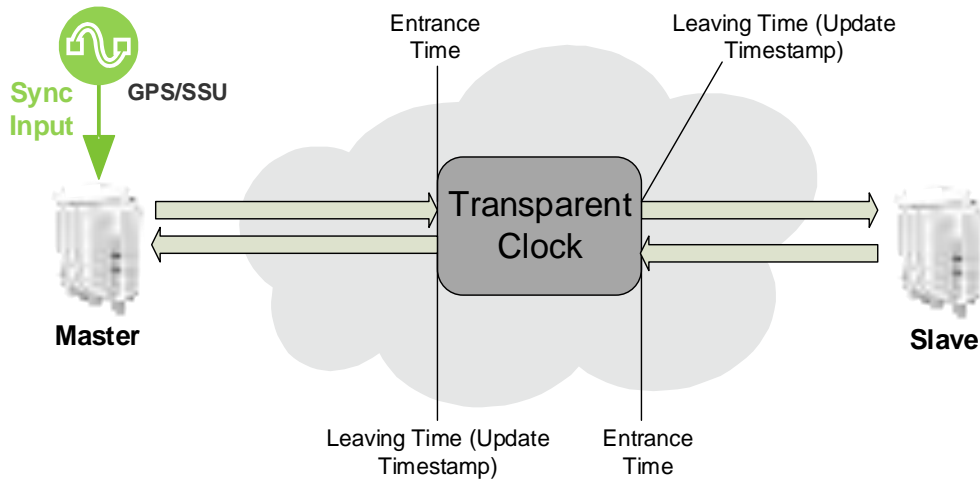


Figure 137: Transparent Clock – General Architecture

IP-20C uses 1588v2-compliant Transparent Clock to counter the effects of asymmetrical delay and delay variation. Transparent Clock measures and adjusts for delay variation, enabling the IP-20C to guarantee ultra-low PDV.

The Transparent Clock algorithm forwards and adjusts the messages to reflect the residency time associated with the Sync and Delay_Request messages as they pass through the device. The delays are inserted in the 64-bit time-interval correction field.

As shown in the following figure, IP-20C measures and updates PTP messages based on both the radio link delay, and the packet processing delay that results from the network processor (switch operation).

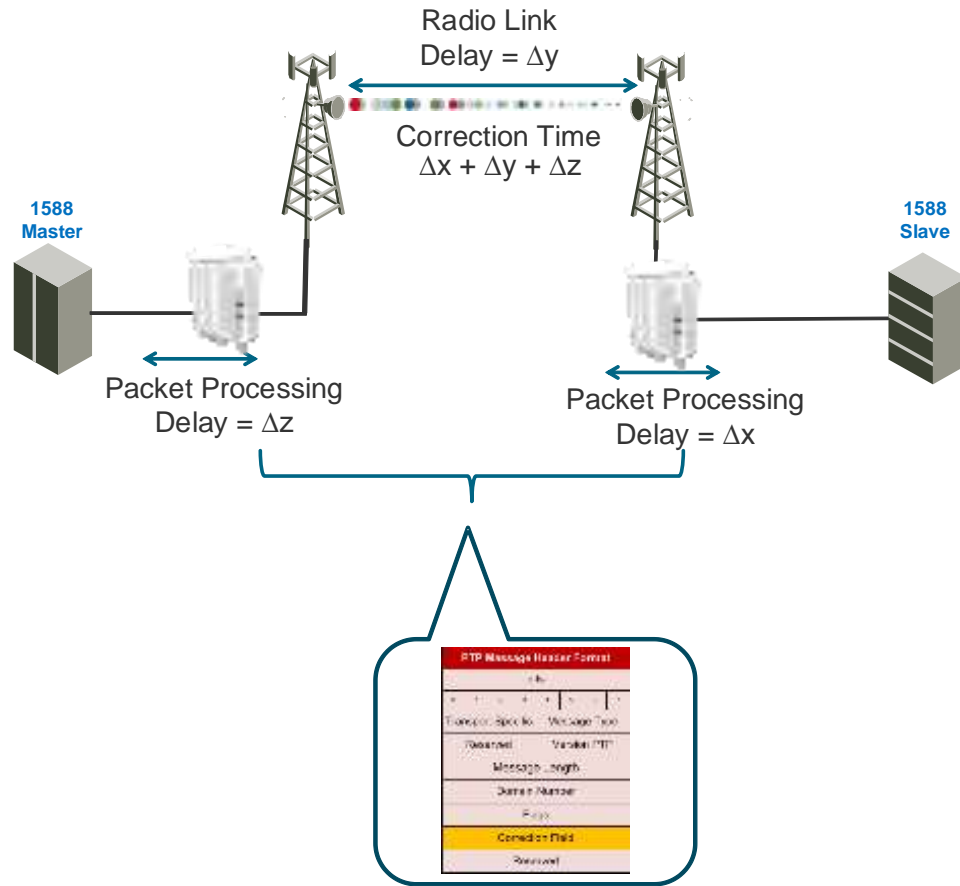


Figure 138: Transparent Clock Delay Compensation

5.4.4.4 Boundary Clock

Note: Boundary Clock is planned for future release.

IEEE-1588v2 Boundary Clock enables the IP-20C to regenerate phase synchronization via standard Ethernet. Boundary Clock complies with ITU-T Telecom Profile G.8275.1. This enables IP-20C, with Boundary Clock, to meet the rigorous synchronization requirements of LTE-Advanced (LTE-A) networks.

In Boundary Clock, a single node can include up to four ports; master ports for time stamp distribution and one slave port that is locked onto a grandmaster.

The Boundary Clock node terminates the PTP flow on the slave port, recovers the clock and timestamp, and regenerates the PTP flow on the master ports. The Boundary Clock node selects the best synchronization source available in the domain and regenerates PTP towards the slave clocks. This reduces the processing load from grandmaster clocks and increases the scalability of the synchronization network, while rigorously maintaining timing accuracy.

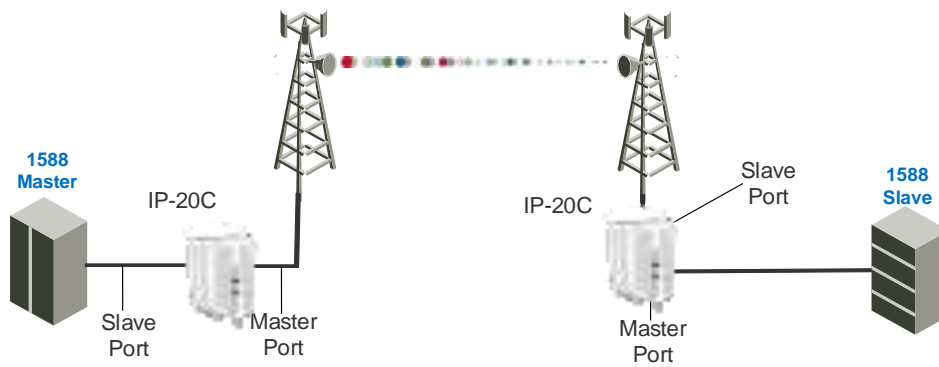


Figure 139: Boundary Clock – General Architecture

Boundary Clock uses the Best Master Clock Algorithm (BMCA) to determine which of the clocks in the network has the highest quality. This clock is designated the grandmaster, and it synchronizes all other clocks (slave clocks) in the network. If the grandmaster is removed from the network, or the BMCA determines that another clock has superior quality, the BMCA defines a new grandmaster and adjusts all other clocks accordingly. This process is fault tolerant, and no user input is required.

A node running as master clock can use the following inputs and outputs.

Table 27: Boundary Clock Input Options

Synchronization Input	Frequency/Phase
Ethernet packets from PTP 1588 Remote Master via radio or Ethernet interface	Phase
SyncE (including ESMC) via radio or Ethernet interface	Frequency

Table 28: Boundary Clock Output Options

Synchronization Input	Frequency/Phase
Ethernet packets towards PTP 1588 slaves via radio or Ethernet interface	Phase
SyncE (including ESMC) via radio or Ethernet interface	Frequency

IP-20C uses multicast Ethernet messages, per IEEE-1588 Annex F.

5.4.5 SSM Support and Loop Prevention

In order to provide topological resiliency for synchronization transfer, IP-20C implements the passing of SSM messages over the radio interfaces. SSM timing in IP-20C complies with ITU-T G.781.

In addition, the SSM mechanism provides reference source resiliency, since a network may have more than one source clock.

The following are the principles of operation:

- At all times, each source interface has a “quality status” which is determined as follows:
 - If quality is configured as fixed, then the quality status becomes “failure” upon interface failure (such as LOS, LOC, LOF, etc.).
 - If quality is automatic, then the quality is determined by the received SSMs or becomes “failure” upon interface failure (such as LOS, LOC, LOF, etc.).
- Each unit holds a parameter which indicates the quality of its reference clock. This is the quality of the current synchronization source interface.
- The reference source quality is transmitted through SSM messages to all relevant radio interfaces.
- Each unit determines the current active clock reference source interface:
 - The interface with the highest available quality is selected.
 - From among interfaces with identical quality, the interface with the highest priority is selected.
- In order to prevent loops, an SSM with quality “Do Not Use” is sent towards the active source interface

At any given moment, the system enables users to display:

- The current source interface quality.
- The current received SSM status for every source interface.
- The current node reference source quality.

As a reference, the following are the possible quality values (from highest to lowest):

- AUTOMATIC (available only in interfaces for which SSM support is implemented)
- G.811
- SSU-A
- SSU-B
- G.813/8262 - default
- DO NOT USE
- Failure (cannot be configured by user)

5.5 Radio Payload Encryption and FIPS

5.5.1 AES-256 Payload Encryption

IP-20C supports AES-256 payload encryption.

The Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is defined in Federal Information Processing Standard Publication 197 (FIPS 197) for symmetric encryption. AES-256 is widely considered to be secure and efficient and is therefore broadly accepted as the standard for both government and industry applications.

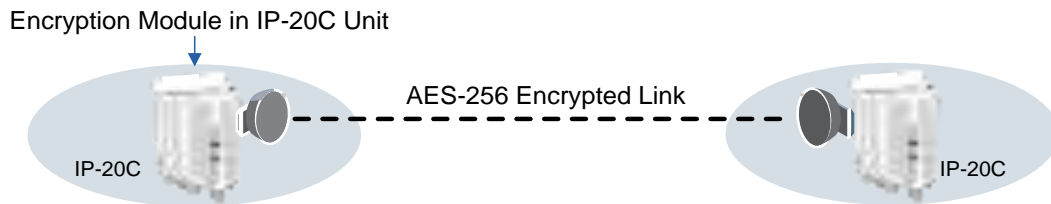


Figure 140 AES-256 Encrypted Link

Notes: The AES-256 payload encryption feature is a controlled item under applicable Export Laws. Please contact your Ceragon representative to confirm that the encryption feature can be delivered.

AES encryption is not supported with MIMO or Space Diversity links.

5.5.1.1 AES Benefits

- Provides protection against eavesdropping and man-in-the-middle attacks on the radio
- Full encryption for all radio traffic
- Wire-speed, lowest latency encryption
- Eliminates the need for external encryption devices:
 - Cost effective encryption solution
 - Low Capex and operational costs; fast and simple deployment

5.5.1.2 IP-20C AES Implementation

In IP-20C, AES provides full payload encryption for all L1 radio traffic. AES encryption operates on a point-to-point radio link level. It also encrypts control data passing through the radio link, such as the Link ID, ATPC data, and SSM messages. AES encryption operates on a point-to-point radio link level. AES is enabled and configured separately for each radio carrier.

IP-20C uses a dual-key encryption mechanism for AES.

- The user provides a master key. The master key can also be generated by the system upon user command. The master key is a 32-byte symmetric encryption key. The same master key must be manually configured on both ends of the encrypted link.

- The session key is a 32-byte symmetric encryption key used to encrypt the actual data. Each link uses two session keys, one for each direction. For each direction, the session key is generated by the transmit side unit and propagated automatically to the other side of the link via a Key Exchange Protocol. The Key Exchange Protocol exchanges session keys by encrypting them with the master key, using the AES-256 encryption algorithm. Session keys are regenerated at user-configured intervals.

AES key generation is completely hitless, and has no effect on ACM operation.

Once AES encryption has been enabled on both sides of the link, the Key Exchange Protocol periodically verifies that both ends of the link have the same master key. If a mismatch is detected, an alarm is raised and traffic transmission is stopped for the mismatched carrier at both sides of the link. The link becomes non-valid and traffic stops being forwarded.

5.5.1.3 AES Interoperability

IP-20's AES implementation is interoperable among IP-20 products that support AES. This means that for all IP-20 products that are otherwise interoperable with each other, AES can be used in links between two such products.

5.5.2 FIPS 140-2 Compliance

FibeAir IP-20C can be configured to be FIPS 140-2 level-2 compliant, in specific hardware and software configurations, as described in this section. FIPS is only available with the FibeAir IP-20 Assured platform.

Note: CeraOS 10.7 does not support the FibeAir IP-20 Assured platform. The latest release to support FibeAir IP-20 Assured, including FIPS, is CeraOS 8.3. CeraOS 10.7 *does* support AES-256 Radio Payload Encryption.

5.5.2.1 FIPS Overview

The objective of FIPS 140-2 is to provide a standard for secured communication devices, with an emphasis on encryption and cryptographic methods. The FIPS standards are promulgated by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), and provide an extensive set of requirements for both hardware and software. For a full list of FIPS requirements, refer to the *Ceragon IP-20 FIPS 140-2 Security Policy*, available upon request.

It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the above FIPS requirements are met.

5.5.2.2 Hardware Requirements

For an IP-20C node to be FIPS-compliant, the unit must be FIPS-compliant hardware. A FIPS-compliant IP-20C unit has a unique part number ending in the letters AF, in the following format: IP-20C-***-AF

Special labels must be affixed to a FIPS-compliant IP-20C unit. These labels are tamper-evident and must be applied in such a way that it is not possible to open or tamper with the unit. Replacement labels can be ordered from Ceragon Networks, part number BS-0341-0. Tamper-evident labels should be inspected for integrity at least once every six months. For further details, refer to the FibeAir IP-20C Installation Guide.

5.5.2.3 Software Requirements

FIPS compliance requires the user to operate the IP-20C in FIPS mode. FIPS mode must be enabled by the user. It can be enabled via the Web EMS, the CLI, or SNMPv3. Enabling FIPS mode requires a system reset.

6. FibeAir IP-20C Management

This chapter includes:

- Management Overview
- Automatic Network Topology Discovery with LLDP Protocol
- Management Communication Channels and Protocols
- Web-Based Element Management System (Web EMS)
- Command Line Interface (CLI)
- Configuration Management
- Software Management
- CeraPlan Service for Creating Pre-Defined Configuration Files
- IPv6 Support
- In-Band Management
- Local Management
- Alarms
- NTP Support
- UTC Support
- System Security Features

6.1 Management Overview

The Ceragon management solution is built on several layers of management:

- NEL – Network Element-level CLI
- EMS – HTTP web-based EMS
- NMS and SML –Ceragon NMS platform

Every FibeAir IP-10 and IP-20 network element includes an HTTP web-based element manager that enables the operator to perform element configuration, performance monitoring, remote diagnostics, alarm reports, and more.

In addition, Ceragon provides an SNMP v1/v2c/v3 northbound interface on the IP-20C.

Ceragon offers an NMS solution for providing centralized operation and maintenance capability for the complete range of network elements in an IP-20C system.

In addition, management, configuration, and maintenance tasks can be performed directly via the IP-20C Command Line Interface (CLI). The CLI can be used to perform configuration operations for IP-20C units, as well as to configure several IP-20C units in a single batch command.

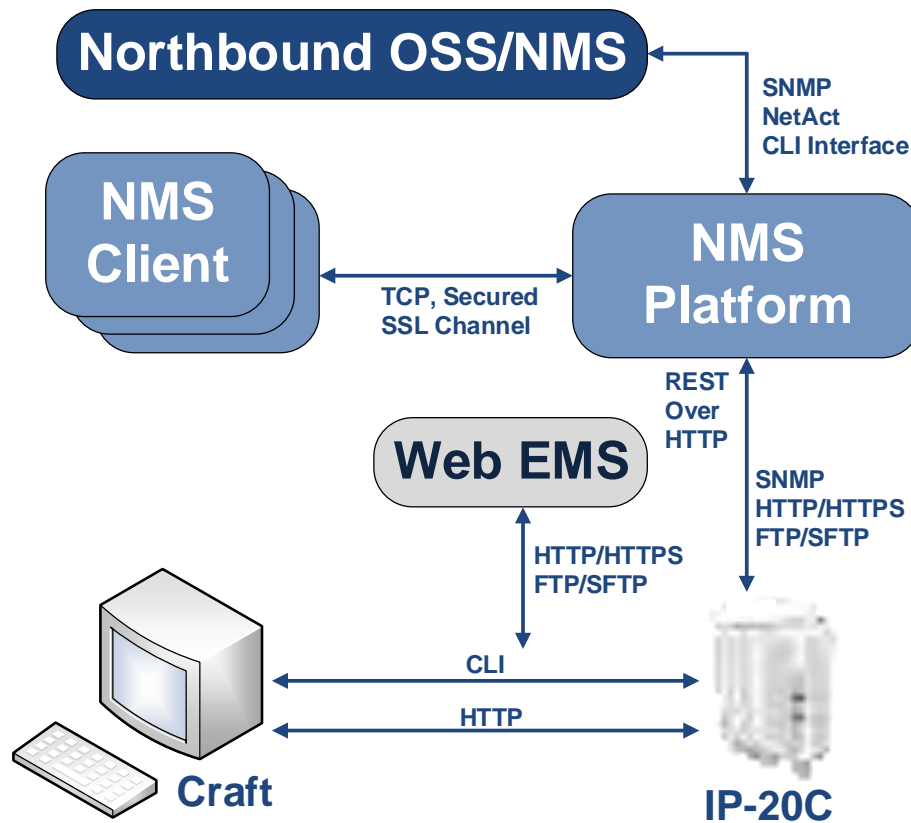


Figure 141: Integrated IP-20C Management Tools

6.2 Automatic Network Topology Discovery with LLDP Protocol

FibeAir IP-20C supports the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), a vendor-neutral layer 2 protocol that can be used by a station attached to a specific LAN segment to advertise its identity and capabilities and to receive identity and capacity information from physically adjacent layer 2 peers. IP-20C’s LLDP implementation is based on the IEEE 802.1AB – 2009 standard.

LLDP provides automatic network connectivity discovery by means of a port identity information exchange between each port and its peer. The port exchanges information with its peer and advertises this information to the NMS managing the unit. This enables the NMS to quickly identify changes to the network topology.

Enabling LLDP on IP-20 units enables the NMS to:

- Automatically detect the IP-20 unit neighboring the managed IP-20 unit, and determine the connectivity state between the two units.
- Automatically detect a third-party switch or router neighboring the managed IP-20 unit, and determine the connectivity state between the IP-20 unit and the switch or router.

6.3 Management Communication Channels and Protocols

Related Topics:

- Secure Communication Channels

Network Elements can be accessed locally via serial or Ethernet management interfaces, or remotely through the standard Ethernet LAN. The application layer is indifferent to the access channel used.

The NMS can be accessed through its GUI interface application, which may run locally or in a separate platform; it also has an SNMP-based northbound interface to communicate with other management systems.

Table 29: Dedicated Management Ports

Port number	Protocol	Frame structure	Details
161	SNMP	UDP	Sends SNMP Requests to the network elements
162 Configurable	SNMP (traps)	UDP	Sends SNMP traps forwarding (optional)
80	HTTP	TCP	Manages devices
443	HTTPS	TCP	Manages devices (optional)
From port 21 (default) to any remote port (>1023). Initial port (21) is configurable.	FTP Control Port	TCP	Downloads software and configuration files, uploads security and configuration logs, and unit info files. (FTP Server responds to client's control port) (optional)
From Any port (>1023) to any remote port (>1023)	FTP Data Port	TCP	Downloads software and configuration files, uploads security and configuration logs, and unit info files. The FTP server sends ACKs (and data) to client's data port.
From port 22 (default) to any remote port (>1023). Initial port (22) is configurable.	SFTP Control Port	TCP	Downloads software and configuration files, and CSR certificates, uploads security and configuration logs, and unit info files. (SFTP Server responds to client's control port) (optional)
From Any port (>1023) to any remote port (>1023)	SFTP Data Port	TCP	Downloads software and configuration files, and CSR certificates, uploads security and configuration logs, and unit info files. The SFTP server sends ACKs (and data) to client's data port.
23	telnet	TCP	Remote CLI access (optional)
22	SSH	TCP	Secure remote CLI access (optional)

All remote system management is carried out through standard IP communications. Each NE behaves as a host with a single IP address.

The communications protocol used depends on the management channel being accessed.

As a baseline, these are the protocols in use:

- Standard HTTP for web-based management
- Standard telnet for CLI-based management

6.4 Web-Based Element Management System (Web EMS)

The CeraWeb Element Management System (Web EMS) is an HTTP web-based element manager that enables the operator to perform configuration operations and obtain statistical and performance information related to the system, including:

- **Configuration Management** – Enables you to view and define configuration data for the IP-20C system.
- **Fault Monitoring** – Enables you to view active alarms.
- **Performance Monitoring** – Enables you to view and clear performance monitoring values and counters.
- **Diagnostics and Maintenance** – Enables you to define and perform loopback tests, and software updates.
- **Security Configuration** – Enables you to configure IP-20C security features.
- **User Management** – Enables you to define users and user profiles.

A Web-Based EMS connection to the IP-20C can be opened using an HTTP Browser (Explorer or Mozilla Firefox). The Web EMS uses a graphical interface. Most system configurations and statuses are available via the Web EMS. However, some advanced configuration options are only available via CLI.

Note: For optimal Web EMS performance, it is recommended to ensure that the network speed is at least 100 Kbps for most operations, and at least 5 Mbps for software download operations.

The Web EMS shows the actual unit configuration and provides easy access to any interface on the unit. The Web EMS opens to a Unit and Radio Summary page that displays the key unit, link, and radio parameters on a single page for quick viewing. This page can be customized to include only specific columns and tables, enabling the user to hide information that he does not need in order to focus on the information that is most relevant to his needs in monitoring and managing the unit.

The Web EMS includes a Quick Platform Setup page designed to simplify initial configuration and minimize the time it takes to configure a working link.

The Web EMS also includes quick link configuration wizards that guide the user, step-by-step, through the creation of:

- 1+0 links with Pipe services
- 1+0 repeater links (radio to radio) with Pipe services
- 2+0 Multi-Carrier ABC group

6.5 Command Line Interface (CLI)

A CLI connection to the IP-20C can be opened via telnet. All parameter configurations can be performed via CLI.

Note: Telnet access can be blocked by user configuration.

6.6 Configuration Management

The system configuration file consists of a set of all the configurable system parameters and their current values.

IP-20C configuration files can be imported and exported. This enables you to copy the system configuration to multiple IP-20C units.

System configuration files consist of a zip file that contains three components:

- A binary configuration file which is used by the system to restore the configuration.
- A text file which enables users to examine the system configuration in a readable format. The file includes the value of all system parameters at the time of creation of the backup file.
- An additional text file which enables users to write CLI scripts in order to make desired changes in the backed-up configuration. This file is executed by the system after restoring the configuration.²³

The system provides three restore points to manage different configuration files. Each restore point contains a single configuration file. Files can be added to restore points by creating backups of the current system state or by importing them from an external server.

Note: In the Web EMS, these restore points are referred to as “file numbers.”

For example, a user may want to use one restore point to keep a last good configuration, another to import changes from an external server, and the third to store the current configuration.

Any of the restore points can be used to apply a configuration file to the system.

The user can determine whether or not to include security-related settings, such as users and user profiles, in the exported configuration file. By default, security settings are included.

Note: The option to enable or disable import and export of security parameters is planned for future release.

²³ The option to edit the backup configuration is planned for future release.

6.7 Software Management

The IP-20C software installation and upgrade process includes the following steps:

- **Download** – The files required for the installation or upgrade are downloaded from a remote server.
- **Installation** – The files are installed in the appropriate modules and components of the IP-20C.
- **Reset** – The IP-20C is restarted in order to boot the new software and firmware versions.

IP-20C software and firmware releases are provided in a single bundle that includes software and firmware for all components supported by the system. When the user downloads a software bundle, the system verifies the validity of the bundle. The system also compares the files in the bundle to the files currently installed in the IP-20C and its components, so that only files that differ between the new version bundle and the current version in the system are actually downloaded. A message is displayed to the user for each file that is actually downloaded.

Note: When downloading an older version, all files in the bundle may be downloaded, including files that are already installed.

Software bundles can be downloaded via FTP, SFTP, HTTP, or HTTPS. When downloading software via HTTP or HTTPS, the IP-20C unit acts as an HTTP server, and the software can be downloaded directly to the unit. When downloading software via FTP or SFTP, the IP-20C functions as an FTP or SFTP client, and FTP or SFTP server software must be installed on the PC or laptop being used to perform the upgrade.

After the software download is complete, the user initiates the installation. A timer can be used to perform the installation after a defined time interval. The system performs an automatic reset after the installation.

6.7.1 Backup Software Version

Note: Backup software version support is planned for future release.

IP-20C maintains a backup copy of the software bundle. In the event that the working software version cannot be found, or the operating system fails to start properly, the system automatically boots from the backup version, and the previously active version becomes the backup version.

Users can also update the backup version manually. The Web EMS includes a field that indicates whether or not the active and backup software versions are identical.

6.8 CeraPlan Service for Creating Pre-Defined Configuration Files

IP-20 units running CeraOS 9.2 or higher can be configured from the Web EMS in a single step by applying a pre-defined configuration file. This drastically reduces the initial installation and setup time in the field.

Using pre-defined configuration files also reduces the risk of configuration errors and enables operators to invest less time and money training installation personnel. Installers can focus on hardware configuration, relying on the pre-defined configuration file to implement the proper software configuration on each device.

The pre-defined configuration file is generated by Ceragon Professional Services and provided as a service.

A pre-defined configuration file can be prepared for multiple IP-20 units, with the relevant configuration details specified and differentiated per-unit. This simplifies administration, since a single file can be used with multiple devices.

Pre-defined configuration files can include all the parameters necessary to configure basic links, including:

- Activation Key (or Demo mode) configuration
- Radio Parameters
- Interface Groups (LAG, Multi-Carrier ABC, XPIC, MIMO)
- Management Service

All configurations that can be implemented via the Web EMS Quick Configuration wizards can also be configured using pre-defined configuration files.

Pre-defined configuration files can be created by Ceragon Professional Services, according to customer specifications. For further information on CeraPlan, consult your Ceragon representative.

6.9 IPv6 Support

FibeAir IP-20C management communications can use both IPv4 and IPv6. The unit IP address for management can be configured in either or both formats.

Additionally, other management communications can utilize either IPv4 or IPv6. This includes:

- Software file downloads
- Configuration file import and export
- Trap forwarding
- Unit information file export (used primarily for maintenance and troubleshooting)

6.10 In-Band Management

FibeAir IP-20C can optionally be managed In-Band, via its radio and Ethernet interfaces. This method of management eliminates the need for a dedicated management interface. For more information, refer to *Management Service (MNG)* on page 132.

6.11 Local Management

IP-20C includes an FE port for local management. This port (MGT) is enabled by default, and cannot be disabled.

6.12 Alarms

6.12.1 Configurable BER Threshold for Alarms and Traps

Users can configure alarm and trap generation in the event of Excessive BER and Signal Degrade BER above user-defined thresholds. Users have the option to configure whether or not excessive BER is propagated as a fault and considered a system event.

6.12.2 RSL Threshold Alarm

Users can configure an alarm that is raised if the RSL falls beneath a user-defined threshold. This feature can be enabled or disabled per radio carrier. By default, it is disabled. The RSL threshold alarm provides a preventative maintenance tool for monitoring the health of the link and ensuring that problems can be identified and corrected quickly.

6.12.3 Editing and Disabling Alarms and Events

Users can change the description text (by appending extra text to the existing description) or the severity of any alarm in the system. Users can also choose to disable specific alarms and events. Any alarm or event can be disabled, so that no indication of the alarm or event is displayed, and no traps are sent for the alarm or event.

This is performed as follows:

- Each alarm and event in the system is identified by a unique name (see separate list of system alarms and events).
- The user can perform the following operations on any alarm:
 - View current description and severity
 - Define the text to be appended to the description and/or severity
 - Return the alarm to its default values
 - Disable or re-enable the alarm (or event)
- The user can also return all alarms and events to their default values.

6.12.4 Timeout for Trap Generation

Users can configure a wait time of 0 to 120 seconds after an alarm is cleared in the system before the alarm is actually reported as being cleared. This prevents traps flooding the NMS in the event that some external condition causes the alarm to be raised and cleared continuously.

This means that when the alarm is cleared, the alarm continues to be displayed and no *clear alarm* trap is sent until the timeout period is finished.

The timeout for trap generation can be configured via CLI. By default, the timeout is 10 seconds.

6.13 NTP Support

Related topics:

- Synchronization

IP-20C supports Network Time Protocol (NTP). NTP distributes Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) throughout the system, using a jitter buffer to neutralize the effects of variable latency.

IP-20C supports NTPv3 and NTPv4. NTPv4 provides interoperability with NTPv3 and with SNTP.

6.14 UTC Support

IP-20C uses the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) standard for time and date configuration. UTC is a more updated and accurate method of date coordination than the earlier date standard, Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

Every IP-20C unit holds the UTC offset and daylight savings time information for the location of the unit. Each management unit presenting the information (CLI and Web EMS) uses its own UTC offset to present the information in the correct time.

6.15 System Security Features

To guarantee proper performance and availability of a network as well as the data integrity of the traffic, it is imperative to protect it from all potential threats, both internal (misuse by operators and administrators) and external (attacks originating outside the network).

System security is based on making attacks difficult (in the sense that the effort required to carry them out is not worth the possible gain) by putting technical and operational barriers in every layer along the way, from the access outside the network, through the authentication process, up to every data link in the network.

6.15.1 Ceragon's Layered Security Concept

Each layer protects against one or more threats. However, it is the combination of them that provides adequate protection to the network. In most cases, no single layer protection provides a complete solution to threats.

The layered security concept is presented in the following figure. Each layer presents the security features and the threats addressed by it. Unless stated otherwise, requirements refer to both network elements and the NMS.

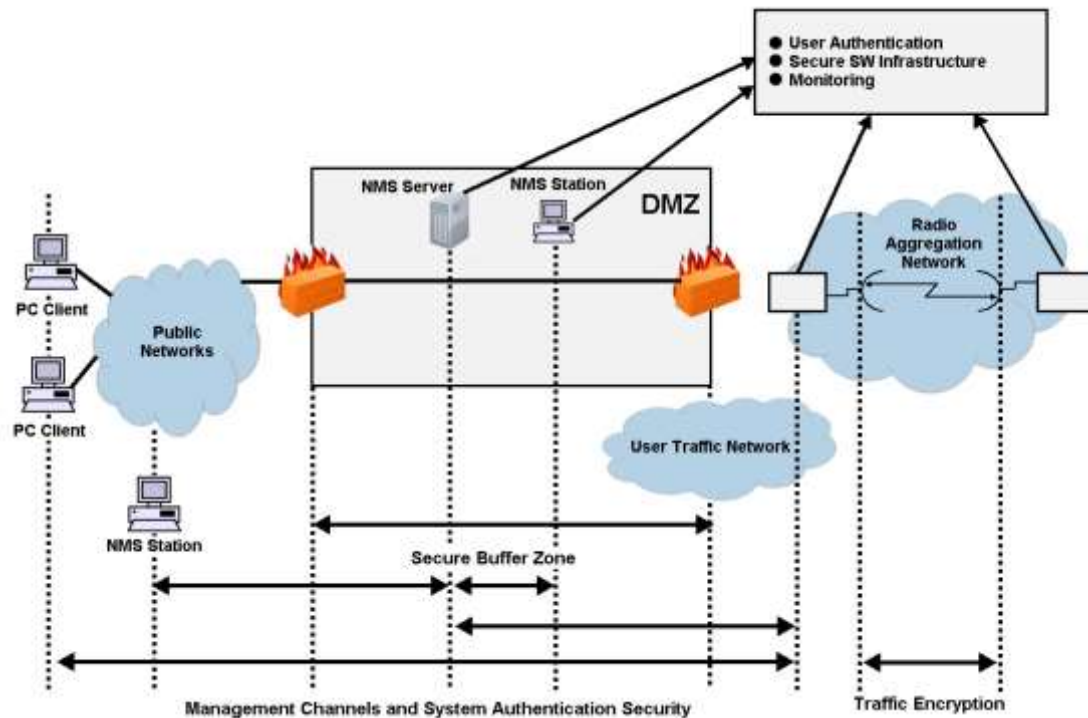


Figure 142: Security Solution Architecture Concept

6.15.2 Defenses in Management Communication Channels

Since network equipment can be managed from any location, it is necessary to protect the communication channels' contents end to end.

These defenses are based on existing and proven cryptographic techniques and libraries, thus providing standard secure means to manage the network, with minimal impact on usability.

They provide defense at any point (including public networks and radio aggregation networks) of communications.

While these features are implemented in Ceragon equipment, it is the responsibility of the operator to have the proper capabilities in any external devices used to manage the network.

In addition, inside Ceragon networking equipment it is possible to control physical channels used for management. This can greatly help deal with all sorts of DoS attacks.

Operators can use secure channels instead or in addition to the existing management channels:

- SNMPv3 for all SNMP-based protocols for both NEs and NMS
- HTTPS for access to the NE's web server
- SSH-2 for all CLI access SFTP for all software and configuration download between NMS and NEs

All protocols run with secure settings using strong encryption techniques. Unencrypted modes are not allowed, and algorithms used must meet modern and client standards.

Users are allowed to disable all insecure channels.

In the network elements, the bandwidth of physical channels transporting management communications is limited to the appropriate magnitude, in particular, channels carrying management frames to the CPU.

Attack types addressed

- Tempering with management flows
- Management traffic analysis
- Unauthorized software installation
- Attacks on protocols (by providing secrecy and integrity to messages)
- Traffic interfaces eavesdropping (by making it harder to change configuration)
- DoS through flooding

6.15.3 Defenses in User and System Authentication Procedures

6.15.3.1 User Configuration and User Profiles

User configuration is based on the Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) model. According to the RBAC model, permissions to perform certain operations are assigned to specific roles. Users are assigned to particular roles, and through those role assignments acquire the permissions to perform particular system functions.

In the IP-20C GUI, these roles are called user profiles. Up to 50 user profiles can be configured. Each profile contains a set of privilege levels per functionality group, and defines the management protocols (access channels) that can be used to access the system by users to whom the user profile is assigned.

The system parameters are divided into the following functional groups:

- Security
- Management
- Radio
- Ethernet
- Synchronization

A user profile defines the permitted access level per functionality group. For each functionality group, the access level is defined separately for read and write operations. The following access levels can be assigned:

- **None** – No access to this functional group.
- **Normal** – The user has access to parameters that require basic knowledge about the functional group.
- **Advance** – The user has access to parameters that require advanced knowledge about the functional group, as well as parameters that have a significant impact on the system as a whole, such as restoring the configuration to factory default settings.

6.15.3.2 User Identification

IP-20C supports the following user identification features:

- Configurable inactivity time-out for automatically closing unused management channels
- Optional password strength enforcement. When password strength enforcement is enabled; passwords must comply with the following rules:
 - Password must be at least eight characters long.
 - Password must include at least three of the following categories: lower-case characters, upper-case characters, digits, and special characters.
 - When calculating the number of character categories, upper-case letters used as the first character and digits used as the last character of a password are not counted.
 - The password cannot have been used within the user's previous five passwords.
- Users can be prompted to change passwords after a configurable amount of time (password aging).
- Users can be blocked for a configurable time period after a configurable number of unsuccessful login attempts.
- Users can be configured to expire at a certain date
- Mandatory change of password at first time login can be enabled and disabled upon user configuration. It is enabled by default.

6.15.3.3 Remote Authentication

Note: Remote authorization is planned for future release.

Certificate-based strong standard encryption techniques are used for remote authentication. Users may choose to use this feature or not for all secure communication channels.

Since different operators may have different certificate-based authentication policies (for example, issuing its own certificates vs. using an external CA or allowing the NMS system to be a CA), NEs and NMS software provide the tools required for operators to enforce their policy and create certificates according to their established processes.

Server authentication capabilities are provided.

6.15.3.4 RADIUS Support

The RADIUS protocol provides centralized user management services. IP-20C supports RADIUS server and provides a RADIUS client for authentication and authorization.

RADIUS can be enabled or disabled. When RADIUS is enabled, a user attempting to log into the system from any access channel (CLI, WEB, NMS) is not authenticated locally. Instead, the user's credentials are sent to a centralized standard RADIUS server which indicates to the IP-20C whether the user is known, and which privilege is to be given to the user. RADIUS uses the same user attributes and privileges defined for the user locally.

Note: When using RADIUS for user authentication and authorization, the access channels configured per IP-20 user profile are not applicable. Instead, the access channels must be configured as part of the RADIUS server configuration.

RADIUS login works as follows:

- If the RADIUS server is reachable, the system expects authorization to be received from the server:
 - The server sends the appropriate user privilege to the IP-20C, or notifies the IP-20C that the user was rejected.
 - If rejected, the user will be unable to log in. Otherwise, the user will log in with the appropriate privilege and will continue to operate normally.
- If the RADIUS server is unavailable, the IP-20C will attempt to authenticate the user locally, according to the existing list of defined users.

Note: Local login authentication is provided in order to enable users to manage the system in the event that RADIUS server is unavailable. This requires previous definition of users in the system. If the user is only defined in the RADIUS server, the user will be unable to login locally in case the RADIUS server is unavailable.

In order to support IP-20C - specific privilege levels, the vendor-specific field is used. Ceragon's IANA number for this field is 2281.

The following RADIUS servers are supported:

- FreeRADIUS
- RADIUS on Windows Server (IAS)
 - Windows Server 2008

6.15.4 Secure Communication Channels

IP-20C supports a variety of standard encryption protocols and algorithms, as described in the following sections.

6.15.4.1 SSH (Secured Shell)

SSH protocol can be used as a secured alternative to Telnet. In IP-20C:

- SSHv2 is supported.
- SSH protocol will always be operational. Admin users can choose whether to disable Telnet protocol, which is enabled by default. Server authentication is based on IP-20C's public key.
- RSA and DSA key types are supported.
- MAC (Message Authentication Code): SHA-1-96 (MAC length = 96 bits, key length = 160 bit). Supported MAC: hmac-md5, hmac-sha1, hmac-ripemd160, hmac-sha1-96, hmac-md5-96'
- The server authenticates the user based on user name and password. The number of failed authentication attempts is not limited.
- The server timeout for authentication is 10 minutes. This value cannot be changed.

6.15.4.2 HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure)

HTTPS combines the Hypertext Transfer protocol with the SSLv3/TLS (1.0, 1.1, 1.2) protocol to provide encrypted communication and secure identification of a network web server. IP-20C enables administrators to configure secure access via HTTPS protocol.

Users can configure the IP-20 to operate in HTTPS strong mode. In HTTPS strong mode, SSLv3, TLSv1.0, and TLSv1.1 are disabled completely and only certain ciphers are supported for TLSv1.2.

For a list of supported HTTPS ciphers, including an indication of which ciphers are supported in HTTPS strong mode, see *Annex B – Supported Ciphers for Secured Communication Protocols* in the Release Notes for the CeraOS version you are using.

6.15.4.3 SFTP (Secure FTP)

SFTP can be used for the following operations:

- Configuration upload and download,
- Uploading unit information
- Uploading a public key
- Downloading certificate files
- Downloading software

6.15.4.4 Creation of Certificate Signing Request (CSR) File

In order to create a digital certificate for the NE, a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) file should be created by the NE. The CSR contains information that will be included in the NE's certificate such as the organization name, common name (domain name), locality, and country. It also contains the public key that will be included in the certificate. Certificate authority (CA) will use the CSR to create the desired certificate for the NE.

While creating the CSR file, the user will be asked to input the following parameters that should be known to the operator who applies the command:

- **Common name** – The identify name of the element in the network (e.g., the IP address). The common name can be a network IP or the FQDN of the element.
- **Organization** – The legal name of the organization.
- **Organizational Unit** - The division of the organization handling the certificate.
- **City/Locality** - The city where the organization is located.
- **State/County/Region** - The state/region where the organization is located.
- **Country** - The two-letter ISO code for the country where the organization is location.
- **Email address** - An email address used to contact the organization.

6.15.4.5 SNMP

IP-20C supports SNMP v1, V2c, and v3. The default community string in NMS and the SNMP agent in the embedded SW are disabled. Users are allowed to set community strings for access to network elements.

IP-20C supports the following MIBs:

- RFC-1213 (MIB II)
- RMON MIB
- Ceragon (proprietary) MIB.

Access to all network elements in a node is provided by making use of the community and context fields in SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c/SNMPv3, respectively.

For additional information:

- FibeAir IP-20C MIB Reference, DOC- 00036524.

6.15.4.6 Server Authentication (SSLv3/TLS (1.0, 1.1, 1.1))

- All protocols making use of SSL (such as HTTPS) use SLLv3/TLS (1.0, 1.1, 1.2) and support X.509 certificates-based server authentication.
- Users with type of “administrator” or above can perform the following server (network element) authentication operations for certificates handling:
 - Generate server key pairs (private + public)
 - Export public key (as a file to a user-specified address)
 - Install third-party certificates
 - The Admin user is responsible for obtaining a valid certificate.
 - Load a server RSA key pair that was generated externally for use by protocols making use of SSL.
- Non-SSL protocols using asymmetric encryption, such as SSH and SFTP, can make use of public-key based authentication.
 - Users can load trusted public keys for this purpose.

6.15.4.7 Encryption

Note: Support for encryption is planned for future release.

- Encryption algorithms for secure management protocols include:
 - Symmetric key algorithms: 128-bit AES
 - Asymmetric key algorithms: 1024-bit RSA

6.15.5 Security Log

The security log is an internal system file which records all changes performed to any security feature, as well as all security related events.

Note: In order to read the security log, the user must upload the log to his or her server.

The security log file has the following attributes:

- The file is of a “cyclic” nature (fixed size, newest events overwrite oldest).

- The log can only be read by users with "admin" or above privilege.
- The contents of the log file are cryptographically protected and digitally signed.
 - In the event of an attempt to modify the file, an alarm will be raised.
- Users may not overwrite, delete, or modify the log file.

The security log records:

- Changes in security configuration
 - Carrying out "security configuration copy to mate"
 - Management channels time-out
 - Password aging time
 - Number of unsuccessful login attempts for user suspension
 - Warning banner change
 - Adding/deleting of users
 - Password changed
 - SNMP enable/disable
 - SNMP version used (v1/v3) change
 - SNMPv3 parameters change
 - Security mode
 - Authentication algorithm
 - User
 - Password
 - SNMPv1 parameters change
 - Read community
 - Write community
 - Trap community for any manager
 - HTTP/HTTPS change
 - FTP/SFTP change
 - Telnet and web interface enable/disable
 - FTP enable/disable
 - Loading certificates
 - RADIUS server
 - Radius enable/disable
 - Remote logging enable/disable (for security and configuration logs)
 - System clock change
 - NTP enable/disable
- Security events
- Successful and unsuccessful login attempts
- N consecutive unsuccessful login attempts (blocking)
- Configuration change failure due to insufficient permissions
- SNMPv3/PV authentication failures
- User logout

- User account expired

For each recorded event the following information is available:

- User ID
- Communication channel (WEB, terminal, telnet/SSH, SNMP, NMS, etc.)
- IP address, if applicable
- Date and time

7. Standards and Certifications

This chapter includes:

- Supported Ethernet Standards
- MEF Certifications for Ethernet Services

7.1 Supported Ethernet Standards

Table 30: Supported Ethernet Standards

Standard	Description
802.3	10base-T
802.3u	100base-T
802.3ab	1000base-T
802.3z	1000base-X
802.3ac	Ethernet VLANs
802.1Q	Virtual LAN (VLAN)
802.1p	Class of service
802.1ad	Provider bridges (QinQ)
802.3ad	Link aggregation
Auto MDI/MDIX for 1000baseT	
RFC 1349	IPv4 TOS
RFC 2474	IPv4 DSCP
RFC 2460	IPv6 Traffic Classes

7.2 MEF Certifications for Ethernet Services

Table 31: Supported MEF Specifications

Specification	Description
MEF-2	Requirements and Framework for Ethernet Service Protection
MEF-6.1	Metro Ethernet Services Definitions Phase 2
MEF-8	Implementation Agreement for the Emulation of PDH Circuits over Metro Ethernet Networks
MEF-10.3	Ethernet Services Attributes Phase 3
MEF 22.1	Mobile Backhaul Implementation Agreement Phase 2
MEF-30.1	Service OAM Fault Management Implementation Agreement Phase 2
MEF-35	Service OAM Performance Monitoring Implementation Agreement

Table 32: MEF Certifications

Certification	Description
CE 2.0	Second generation Carrier Ethernet certification
MEF-18	Abstract Test Suite for Circuit Emulation Services
MEF-9	Abstract Test Suite for Ethernet Services at the UNI. Certified for all service types (EPL, EVPL & E-LAN). This is a first generation certification. It is fully covered as part of CE2.0)
MEF-14	Abstract Test Suite for Traffic Management Phase 1. Certified for all service types (EPL, EVPL & E-LAN). This is a first generation certification. It is fully covered as part of CE2.0)

8. Specifications

This chapter includes:

- General Radio Specifications
- Frequency Accuracy
- Radio Scripts
- Radio Capacity Specifications
- Transmit Power Specifications
- Receiver Threshold Specifications
- Frequency Bands
- Mediation Device Losses
- Ethernet Latency Specifications
- Interface Specifications
- Carrier Ethernet Functionality
- Synchronization Functionality
- Network Management, Diagnostics, Status, and Alarms
- Mechanical Specifications
- Standards Compliance
- Environmental Specifications
- Antenna Specifications
- Power Input Specifications
- Power Consumption Specifications
- Power Connection Options
- PoE Injector Specifications
- Cable Specifications

Related Topics:

- Standards and Certifications

Note: All specifications are subject to change without prior notification.

8.1 General Radio Specifications

Table 33: Radio Frequencies

Frequency (GHz)	Operating Frequency Range (GHz)	Tx/Rx Spacing (MHz)
U5.7	5.725-5.875	65, 75
6L,6H	5.85-6.45, 6.4-7.1	252.04, 240, 266, 300, 340, 160, 170, 500
7,8	7.1-7.9, 7.7-8.5	154, 119, 161, 168, 182, 196, 208, 245, 250, 266, 300,310, 311.32, 500, 530
10	10.0-10.7	91, 168,350, 550
11	10.7-11.7	490, 520, 530
13	12.75-13.3	266
15	14.4-15.35	315, 420, 475, 644, 490, 728
18	17.7-19.7	1010, 1120, 1008, 1560
23	21.2-23.65	1008, 1200, 1232
24UL	24.0-24.25	Customer-defined
26	24.2-26.5	800, 1008
28	27.35-29.5	350, 450, 490, 1008
32	31.8-33.4	812
38	37-40	1000, 1260, 700
42	40.55-43.45	1500

Table 34: General Radio Specifications

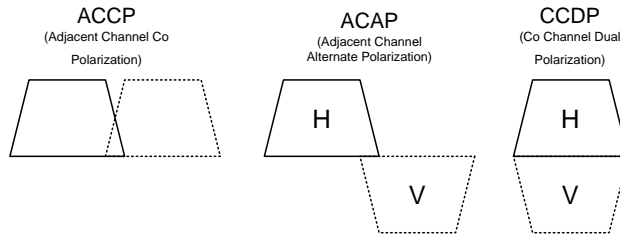
Standards	ETSI, ITU-R, CEPT
Frequency Source	Synthesizer
System Configurations	MultiCore 2+0 Single/Dual Polarization, MultiCore 2+2 SP/DP HSB, 2 x MultiCore 2+0 SP/DP LoS 4x4 MIMO, LoS 2x2 MIMO
RF Channel Selection	Via EMS/NMS
Tx Range (Manual/ATPC)	The dynamic TX range with ATPC is the same as the manual TX range, and depends on the frequency and the ACM profile. The maximum TX power with ATPC is no higher than the maximum manually configured TX power.

8.2 Frequency Accuracy

IP-20C provides frequency accuracy of ± 4 ppm²⁴.

8.3 Radio Scripts

Designated ETSI System Class Explanation:



The following table lists supported system MRMC (Multi-Rate-Multi-Constellation) configurations (determined by modem configuration scripts).

Although in some cases it may be possible to configure higher profiles, the maximum supported profiles are those listed in the table below.

Note: Indications of supported System Classes in the following table refer to the script characteristics only. Regulatory issues must be determined under the applicable local standards.

Table 35: Radio Scripts

Script ID	Channel BW	Occupied BW	System Class	XPIC (CCDP)	MIMO ASD AFR	Highest Spectral Efficiency Class	Max Profile (ACM)	Max Profile (Fixed)
1523	3.5	3.267	ACCP	No	No	6L	5 (256 QAM)	4 (128 QAM)
1508	7	6.5	ACCP	Yes	No	7B	9	8
1509	14	13.3	ACCP	Yes	No	7B	9	8
1504	28	26.5	ACCP	Yes	No	8B	10	9
1505	28	28	ACAP	Yes	No	8A	10	9
1801	28	26.91	ACCP	No	AFR	7B	10	9
1901	28	26	ACCP	Yes ²⁵	MIMO	7B	9 ²⁶	8 ²⁶
1534	28	26	ACCP	Yes	No	No	8B	10

²⁴ Over temperature.

²⁵ Only with 4x4 MIMO.

²⁶ When used in Space Diversity configurations, the maximum profile is 10 (2048 QAM) for ACM mode and 9 (1024 QAM) for Fixed mode. When used in MIMO configurations with 13, 15, and 18 GHz frequencies, the maximum profile is 10 (2048 QAM) for ACM mode and 9 (1024 QAM) for Fixed mode. For other frequencies, the maximum profile is 9 (1024 QAM) for ACM mode and 7 (516 QAM) for Fixed mode. Profile 10 (2048 QAM) is guaranteed only when working with optimal antenna distance.

Script ID	Channel BW	Occupied BW	System Class	XPIC (CCDP)	MIMO ASD AFR	Highest Spectral Efficiency Class	Max Profile (ACM)	Max Profile (Fixed)
1951	28	26	ACCP	Yes	ASD	7B	9	8
1507	40	37.4	ACCP	Yes	No	8B	10	9
1527 ²⁷	40	35.7	ACCP	Yes	No	8B	10	9
1902	40	37.6	ACCP	Yes ²⁵	MIMO	7B	9 ²⁸	8 ²⁸
1537	40	33.5	ACCP	Yes	No	No	8B	10
1502	56	53	ACCP	Yes	No	8B	10	9
1503	56	53	ACCP	No	No	8B	10	9
1506	56	55.7	ACAP	Yes	No	8A	10	9
1903	56	53	ACCP	Yes ²⁵	MIMO	7B	9 ²⁸	8 ²⁸
1953	56	53	ACCP	Yes	ASD	7B	9	8
1501	80	74	ACCP	Yes	No	6B	8	7

Important note: MRMC radio scripts for MIMO can only be used in MIMO and Space Diversity links. These scripts can be used in the following configurations: 2x2 MIMO, 4x4 MIMO, 1+0 SD, and 2+2 SD.

²⁷ Script 1527 is specially designed to meet Japanese specifications.

²⁸ When used in Space Diversity configurations, the maximum profile is 10 (2048 QAM) for ACM mode and 9 (1024 QAM) for Fixed mode.

8.4 Radio Capacity Specifications

Each table in this section includes ranges of capacity specifications per carrier according to frame size, with ranges given for no Header De-Duplication, Layer-2 Header De-Duplication, and LTE-optimized Header De-Duplication (per core).

Each table provides the capacity specifications for a specific MRMC script, as indicated in the table caption. For additional information about each script, see *Radio Scripts* on page 227.

Notes: Ethernet capacity depends on average frame size.

The capacity figures for LTE packets encapsulated inside GTP tunnels with IPv4/UDP encapsulation and double VLAN tagging (QinQ). Capacity for IPv6 encapsulation is higher.

ACAP and ACCP represent compliance with different ETSI mask requirements. ACCP represents compliance with more stringent interference requirements.

8.4.1 3.5 MHz – Script ID 1523

Table 36: Radio Capacity for 3.5 MHz – Script ID 1523

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	10	3-4	3-5	4-13
1	16 QAM	10	8-10	8-12	9-32
2	32 QAM	10	11-14	11-17	12-43
3	64 QAM	50	14-17	14-21	15-54
4	128 QAM	50	17-21	17-25	18-65
5	256 QAM	50	19-24	20-29	20-74

8.4.2 7 MHz – Script ID 1508

Table 37: Radio Capacity for 7 MHz – Script ID 1508

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	10	8-10	9-13	9-32
1	8 PSK	10	13-16	13-19	13-48
2	16 QAM	50	18-22	18-27	19-69
3	32 QAM	50	24-30	24-36	26-92
4	64 QAM	50	30-37	30-44	32-114
5	128 QAM	50	36-44	36-53	38-137
6	256 QAM	50	42-51	42-61	44-158
7	512 QAM	50	45-54	45-66	47-169
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	50	48-58	48-71	50-182
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	50	51-62	51-75	53-194

8.4.3 14MHz – Script ID 1509

Table 38: Radio Capacity for 14MHz – Script ID 1509

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	19-24	20-29	20-74
1	8 PSK	50	29-36	30-43	31-112
2	16 QAM	50	40-49	41-60	42-153
3	32 QAM	50	53-65	54-79	56-203
4	64 QAM	50	66-80	66-97	69-249
5	128 QAM	100	79-97	80-117	83-301
6	256 QAM	100	90-110	91-134	95-344
7	512 QAM	100	100-122	101-147	105-380
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	100	106-129	106-156	111-402
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	100	112-137	113-166	118-426

8.4.4 28 MHz – Script ID 1504

Table 39: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script ID 1504

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	40-49	41-59	42-153
1	8 PSK	50	60-74	61-89	63-229
2	16 QAM	100	82-101	83-122	86-313
3	32 QAM	100	108-132	109-160	114-412
4	64 QAM	150	134-163	135-197	140-508
5	128 QAM	150	161-196	162-237	169-612
6	256 QAM	200	183-224	184-270	192-696
7	512 QAM	200	202-247	203-298	212-769
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	225	215-262	216-317	225-817
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	225	228-279	230-337	239-868
10	2048 QAM	250	245-299	246-361	257-931

8.4.5 28 MHz – Script ID 1505

Table 40: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script ID 1505

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	43-52	43-63	45-162
1	8 PSK	50	62-76	63-92	65-236
2	16 QAM	100	87-107	88-129	92-332
3	32 QAM	100	115-140	116-170	121-437
4	64 QAM	150	141-173	143-209	149-538
5	128 QAM	150	170-208	172-252	179-648
6	256 QAM	200	196-239	197-289	206-745
7	512 QAM	200	209-255	210-308	219-794
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	225	228-278	229-336	239-866
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	225	241-295	243-356	253-917
10	2048 QAM	250	263-321	265-389	276-1000

8.4.6 28 MHz – Script IDs 1901 and 1951

Table 41: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script IDs 1901 and 1953

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	38-47	38-56	40-145
1	8 PSK	50	57-70	58-85	60-218
2	16 QAM	100	79-96	79-116	83-299
3	32 QAM	100	106-129	107-156	111-403
4	64 QAM	150	129-158	130-191	135-491
5	128 QAM	150	158-193	159-233	166-600
6	256 QAM	200	180-220	182-266	189-686
7	512 QAM	200	187-229	189-277	197-714
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	200	206-251	207-304	216-783
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	225	225-275	226-332	236-855
10	2048 QAM	250	242-296	244-358	254-921

8.4.7 28 MHz – Script ID 1534

Table 42: Radio Capacity for 28 MHz – Script ID 1534

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	39-48	39-58	41-148
1	8 PSK	50	58-71	59-86	61-222
2	16 QAM	100	80-97	80-118	84-303
3	32 QAM	100	105-128	106-155	110-399
4	64 QAM	150	129-158	130-191	136-491
5	128 QAM	150	156-190	157-230	163-592
6	256 QAM	200	177-217	179-262	186-674
7	512 QAM	200	196-239	197-289	205-744
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	200	208-254	210-307	218-791
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	225	221-270	222-326	232-840
10	2048 QAM	225	237-289	239-350	249-901

8.4.8 40 MHz – Script ID 1507

Table 43: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1507

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	58-71	58-85	61-220
1	8 PSK	100	86-105	87-127	90-328
2	16 QAM	100	117-143	118-173	123-446
3	32 QAM	150	154-189	156-228	162-588
4	64 QAM	200	190-232	191-280	199-722
5	128 QAM	225	229-280	231-339	241-873
6	256 QAM	250	247-302	249-365	259-939
7	512 QAM	300	270-330	272-399	284-1000
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	300	306-375	309-453	322-1000
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	300	325-398	328-481	342-1000
10	2048 QAM	350	352-430	355-520	370-1000

8.4.9 40 MHz – Script ID 1527

Table 44: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1527

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	55-68	56-82	58-210
1	8 PSK	100	82-101	83-122	87-314
2	16 QAM	100	112-137	113-166	118-427
3	32 QAM	150	148-181	149-219	155-563
4	64 QAM	200	182-222	183-269	191-692
5	128 QAM	225	220-269	221-325	231-836
6	256 QAM	225	237-289	238-350	249-901
7	512 QAM	250	259-317	261-383	272-986
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	300	294-359	296-434	308-1000
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	300	312-381	314-461	327-1000
10	2048 QAM	350	337-412	340-498	354-1000

8.4.10 40 MHz – Script ID 1902

Table 45: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1902

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	54-66	54-80	57-206
1	8 PSK	100	83-101	83-122	87-315
2	16 QAM	100	117-144	118-174	123-447
3	32 QAM	150	156-191	157-231	164-595
4	64 QAM	200	185-226	186-273	194-704
5	128 QAM	225	218-267	220-323	229-831
6	256 QAM	250	247-302	249-365	259-939
7	512 QAM	300	271-331	273-400	284-1000
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	300	306-374	308-452	321-1000
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	300	318-388	320-469	334-1000
10	2048 QAM	350	344-421	347-509	362-1000

8.4.11 40 MHz – Script ID 1537

Table 46: Radio Capacity for 40 MHz – Script ID 1537

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	50	50-62	51-75	53-192
1	8 PSK	100	75-92	76-111	79-287
2	16 QAM	100	103-126	104-152	108-391
3	32 QAM	150	135-166	136-200	142-515
4	64 QAM	150	166-203	168-246	175-633
5	128 QAM	200	201-246	203-297	211-766
6	256 QAM	225	217-265	218-320	228-824
7	512 QAM	250	250-305	252-369	262-950
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	300	272-332	274-402	286-1000
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	300	288-353	291-426	303-1000
10	2048 QAM	300	313-382	315-462	328-1000

8.4.12 56 MHz – Script ID 1502

Table 47: Radio Capacity for 56 MHz – Script ID 1502

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	100	83-101	83-122	87-314
1	8 PSK	100	123-150	124-182	129-468
2	16 QAM	150	167-205	169-247	176-637
3	32 QAM	225	220-269	222-325	231-838
4	64 QAM	300	270-331	273-400	284-1000
5	128 QAM	300	327-400	329-483	343-1000
6	256 QAM	400	374-457	377-553	393-1000
7	512 QAM	400	406-496	409-600	426-1000
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	450	441-540	445-652	464-1000
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	450	469-573	472-693	492-1000
10	2048 QAM	500	508-621	512-751	534-1000

8.4.13 56 MHz – Script ID 1506

Table 48: Radio Capacity for 56 MHz – Script ID 1506

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	100	87-106	88-128	91-331
1	8 PSK	150	127-155	128-187	133-482
2	16 QAM	200	176-215	177-260	185-670
3	32 QAM	225	232-283	233-342	243-881
4	64 QAM	300	284-348	286-420	299-1000
5	128 QAM	350	344-420	346-508	361-1000
6	256 QAM	400	397-485	400-586	416-1000
7	512 QAM	450	426-521	430-630	448-1000
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	450	464-567	467-685	487-1000
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	500	493-602	497-728	517-1000
10	2048 QAM	500	534-653	538-789	561-1000

8.4.14 56 MHz – Script IDs 1903 and 1953

Table 49: Radio Capacity for 56 MHz – Script IDs 1903 and 1953

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	100	77-94	78-114	81-293
1	8 PSK	100	121-148	122-179	128-462
2	16 QAM	150	169-206	170-249	177-642
3	32 QAM	225	223-273	225-330	234-849
4	64 QAM	250	262-321	265-388	276-999
5	128 QAM	300	313-382	315-462	328-1000
6	256 QAM	350	358-437	360-528	376-1000
7	512 QAM	400	400-489	403-591	420-1000
8	1024 QAM (Strong FEC)	450	425-519	428-628	446-1000
9	1024 QAM (Light FEC)	450	451-551	454-666	473-1000
10	2048 QAM	500	498-609	502-737	523-1000

8.4.15 80 MHz – Script ID 1501

Table 50: Radio Capacity for 80 MHz – Script ID 1501

Profile	Modulation	Minimum required capacity activation key	Ethernet throughput		
			No Compression	L2 Compression	Header De-Duplication
0	QPSK	100	114-140	115-169	120-435
1	8 PSK	150	162-198	164-240	170-618
2	16 QAM	225	231-283	233-342	243-880
3	32 QAM	300	304-371	306-449	319-1000
4	64 QAM	400	371-454	374-549	390-1000
5	128 QAM	450	439-536	442-649	461-1000
6	256 QAM	500	505-618	509-747	531-1000
7	512 QAM	500	555-679	560-821	583-1000
8	1024 QAM	650	604-738	609-892	634-1000

8.5 Transmit Power Specifications

Note: Nominal TX power is subject to change until the relevant frequency band is formally released. See the frequency rollout plan.

The values listed in this section are typical. Actual values may differ in either direction by up to 1dB.

Table 51: IP-20C Standard Power

Modulation	5.7 - 6 GHz	7 GHz	8 GHz	10-11 GHz	13-15 GHz	18 GHz	23 GHz	24 GHz UL ²⁹	26 GHz	28, 32, 38 GHz	42 GHz
QPSK	25	25	25	23	24	22	20	-17	21	18	15
8 PSK	25	25	25	23	24	22	20	-18	21	18	15
16 QAM	25	24	24	23	23	21	20	-19	20	17	14
32 QAM	24	23	23	22	22	20	20	-19	19	16	13
64 QAM	24	23	23	22	22	20	20	-19	19	16	13
128 QAM	24	23	23	22	22	20	20	-19	19	16	13
256 QAM	24	23	21	22	20	20	18	-19	17	14	11
512 QAM	22	21	21	21	20	18	18	-21	17	14	11
1024 QAM	22	21	21	20	20	18	17	-21	16	13	10
2048 QAM	20	19	19	18	18	16	16	-23	15	12	9

Table 52: IP-20C High Power

Modulation	5.7 - 6 GHz	7 GHz	8 GHz	10-11 GHz
QPSK	28	28	28	26
8 PSK	28	28	28	26
16 QAM	28	27	27	26
32 QAM	27	26	26	25
64 QAM	27	26	26	25
128 QAM	27	26	26	25
256 QAM	27	26	24	25
512 QAM	25	24	24	24
1024 QAM	25	24	24	23
2048 QAM	23	22	22	21

²⁹ Customers in countries following EC Directive 2006/771/EC (incl. amendments) must observe the 100mW EIRP obligation by adjusting transmit power according to antenna gain and RF line losses.

8.5.1 Pmin Power

Table 53: IP-20C Pmin Power

Frequency Band	Pmin
6-15 GHz	2
18-24 GHz	-1
24 GHz ETSI	-39
26-42 GHz	-1

8.6 Receiver Threshold Specifications

Note: The values listed in this section are typical. Tolerance range is -1dB/+ 2dB.

Table 54: Receiver Threshold

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)														
			5.7- 6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³⁰	26	28-31	32	38	42
0	QPSK	3.5 MHz	-96.5	-96.0	-96.0	-95.5	-96.5	-95.5	-94.5	-96.0	-95.0	-94.5	-94.5	-94.5	-94.0	-94.0	-93.5
1	16 QAM		-90.0	-89.0	-89.0	-89.0	-89.5	-88.5	-88.0	-89.0	-88.0	-87.5	-88.0	-87.5	-87.5	-87.0	-86.5
2	32 QAM		-86.5	-85.5	-85.5	-85.5	-86.0	-85.0	-84.5	-85.5	-84.5	-84.0	-84.5	-84.0	-84.0	-83.5	-83.0
3	64 QAM		-83.0	-82.5	-82.5	-82.0	-83.0	-82.0	-81.0	-82.5	-81.5	-81.0	-81.0	-81.0	-80.5	-80.5	-80.0
4	128 QAM		-79.5	-79.0	-79.0	-78.5	-79.5	-78.5	-77.5	-79.0	-78.0	-77.5	-77.5	-77.5	-77.0	-77.0	-76.5
5	256 QAM		-76.5	-75.5	-75.5	-75.5	-76.5	-75.0	-74.5	-75.5	-75.0	-74.5	-74.5	-74.0	-74.0	-73.5	-73.0

³⁰ Customers in countries following EC Directive 2006/771/EC (incl. amendments) must observe the 100mW EIRP obligation by adjusting transmit power according to antenna gain and RF line losses.

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)														
			5.7- 6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³⁰	26	28-31	32	38	42
0	QPSK	7 MHz	-93.5	-93.0	-93.0	-92.5	-93.5	-92.5	-91.5	-93.0	-92.0	-91.5	-91.5	-91.5	-91.0	-91.0	-90.5
1	8 PSK		-87.5	-87.0	-87.0	-86.5	-87.5	-86.5	-85.5	-87.0	-86.0	-85.5	-85.5	-85.5	-85.0	-85.0	-84.5
2	16 QAM		-87.0	-86.5	-86.5	-86.0	-87.0	-86.0	-85.0	-86.5	-85.5	-85.0	-85.0	-85.0	-84.5	-84.5	-84.0
3	32 QAM		-83.5	-83.0	-83.0	-82.5	-83.5	-82.5	-81.5	-83.0	-82.0	-81.5	-81.5	-81.5	-81.0	-81.0	-80.5
4	64 QAM		-80.5	-80.0	-80.0	-79.5	-80.5	-79.5	-78.5	-80.0	-79.0	-78.5	-78.5	-78.5	-78.0	-78.0	-77.5
5	128 QAM		-77.5	-76.5	-76.5	-76.5	-77.5	-76.0	-75.5	-76.5	-76.0	-75.5	-75.5	-75.0	-75.0	-74.5	-74.0
6	256 QAM		-74.0	-73.5	-73.5	-73.0	-74.0	-73.0	-72.0	-73.5	-72.5	-72.0	-72.0	-72.0	-71.5	-71.5	-71.0
7	512 QAM		-72.0	-71.5	-71.5	-71.0	-72.0	-71.0	-70.0	-71.5	-70.5	-70.0	-70.0	-70.0	-69.5	-69.5	-69.0
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-68.5	-68.0	-68.0	-67.5	-68.5	-67.5	-66.5	-68.0	-67.0	-66.5	-66.5	-66.5	-66.0	-66.0	-65.5
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)	-68.0	-67.0	-67.0	-67.0	-67.5	-66.5	-66.0	-67.0	-66.0	-65.5	-66.0	-65.5	-65.5	-65.0	-64.5	
0	QPSK	14 MHz	-90.5	-90.0	-90.0	-89.5	-90.5	-89.5	-88.5	-90.0	-89.0	-88.5	-88.5	-88.5	-88.0	-88.0	-87.5
1	8 PSK		-84.5	-84.0	-84.0	-83.5	-85.5	-83.5	-82.5	-84.0	-83.0	-82.5	-82.5	-82.5	-82.0	-82.0	-81.5
2	16 QAM		-83.5	-83.0	-83.0	-82.5	-83.5	-82.5	-81.5	-83.0	-82.0	-81.5	-81.5	-81.5	-81.0	-81.0	-80.5
3	32 QAM		-80.5	-79.5	-79.5	-79.5	-80.5	-79.0	-78.5	-79.5	-79.0	-78.5	-78.5	-78.0	-78.0	-77.5	-77.0
4	64 QAM		-77.5	-76.5	-76.5	-76.5	-77.0	-76.0	-75.5	-76.5	-76.0	-75.5	-75.5	-75.0	-75.0	-74.5	-74.0
5	128 QAM		-74.0	-73.5	-73.5	-73.0	-74.0	-73.0	-72.0	-73.5	-72.5	-72.0	-72.0	-72.0	-71.5	-71.5	-71.0
6	256 QAM		-71.5	-70.5	-70.5	-70.5	-71.0	-70.0	-69.5	-70.5	-69.5	-69.0	-69.5	-69.0	-69.0	-68.5	-68.0
7	512 QAM		-68.5	-68.0	-68.0	-67.5	-68.5	-67.5	-66.5	-68.0	-67.0	-66.5	-66.5	-66.5	-66.0	-66.0	-65.5
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-65.5	-65.0	-65.0	-64.5	-65.5	-64.5	-63.5	-65.0	-64.0	-63.5	-63.5	-63.5	-63.0	-63.0	-62.5
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)	-65.0	-64.0	-64.0	-64.0	-64.5	-63.5	-63.0	-64.0	-63.5	-63.0	-63.0	-62.5	-62.5	-62.0	-61.5	

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)															
			5.7- 6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³⁰	26	28-31	32	38	42	
0	QPSK	28 MHz ACCP	-87.5	-87.0	-87.0	-86.5	-87.5	-86.5	-85.5	-87.0	-86.0	-85.5	-85.5	-85.5	-85.0	-85.0	-84.5	
1	8 PSK		-83.0	-82.5	-82.5	-82.0	-83.0	-82.0	-81.0	-82.5	-81.5	-81.0	-81.0	-81.0	-81.0	-80.5	-80.5	-80.0
2	16 QAM		-81.0	-80.5	-80.5	-80.0	-81.0	-79.5	-79.0	-80.5	-79.5	-79.0	-79.0	-79.0	-79.0	-78.5	-78.0	-78.0
3	32 QAM		-77.5	-77.0	-77.0	-76.5	-77.5	-76.0	-75.5	-77.0	-76.0	-75.5	-75.5	-75.5	-75.5	-75.0	-74.5	-74.5
4	64 QAM		-74.5	-74.0	-74.0	-73.5	-74.5	-73.0	-72.5	-74.0	-73.0	-72.5	-72.5	-72.5	-72.5	-72.0	-71.5	-71.5
5	128 QAM		-71.5	-70.5	-70.5	-70.5	-71.0	-70.0	-69.5	-70.5	-69.5	-69.0	-69.5	-69.0	-69.0	-69.0	-68.5	-68.0
6	256 QAM		-68.5	-67.5	-67.5	-67.5	-68.0	-67.0	-66.5	-67.5	-66.5	-66.0	-66.5	-66.0	-66.0	-66.0	-65.5	-65.0
7	512 QAM		-66.0	-65.0	-65.0	-65.0	-66.0	-64.5	-64.0	-65.0	-64.5	-64.0	-64.0	-64.0	-63.5	-63.5	-63.0	-62.5
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-63.0	-62.5	-62.5	-62.0	-63.0	-61.5	-61.0	-62.5	-61.5	-61.0	-61.0	-61.0	-61.0	-60.5	-60.0	-60.0
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		-62.0	-61.5	-61.5	-61.0	-62.0	-60.5	-60.0	-61.5	-60.5	-60.0	-60.0	-60.0	-60.0	-59.5	-59.0	-59.0
10	2048 QAM	-58.5	-58.0	-58.0	-57.5	-58.5	-57.0	-56.5	-58.0	-57.0	-56.5	-56.5	-56.5	-56.5	-56.0	-55.5	-55.5	

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)														
			5.7- 6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³⁰	26	28-31	32	38	42
0	QPSK	28 MHz ACAP	-87.5	-87.0	-87.0	-86.5	-87.5	-86.0	-85.5	-87.0	-86.0	-85.5	-85.5	-85.5	-85.0	-84.5	-84.5
1	8 PSK		-82.5	-81.5	-81.5	-81.5	-82.5	-81.0	-80.5	-81.5	-81.0	-80.5	-80.5	-80.0	-80.0	-79.5	-79.0
2	16 QAM		-81.0	-80.0	-80.0	-80.0	-80.5	-79.5	-79.0	-80.0	-79.0	-78.5	-79.0	-78.5	-78.5	-78.0	-77.5
3	32 QAM		-77.0	-76.5	-76.5	-76.0	-77.0	-76.0	-75.0	-76.5	-75.5	-75.0	-75.0	-75.0	-74.5	-74.5	-74.0
4	64 QAM		-74.5	-73.5	-73.5	-73.5	-74.0	-73.0	-72.5	-73.5	-72.5	-72.0	-72.5	-72.0	-72.0	-71.5	-71.0
5	128 QAM		-71.0	-70.5	-70.5	-70.0	-71.0	-70.0	-69.0	-70.5	-69.5	-69.0	-69.0	-69.0	-68.5	-68.5	-68.0
6	256 QAM		-68.0	-67.5	-67.5	-67.0	-68.0	-67.0	-66.0	-67.5	-66.5	-66.0	-66.0	-66.0	-65.5	-65.5	-65.0
7	512 QAM		-66.0	-65.5	-65.5	-65.0	-66.0	-64.5	-64.0	-65.5	-64.5	-64.0	-64.0	-64.0	-63.5	-63.0	-63.0
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-63.0	-62.0	-62.0	-62.0	-62.5	-61.5	-61.0	-62.0	-61.0	-60.5	-61.0	-60.5	-60.5	-60.0	-59.5
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		-62.0	-61.0	-61.0	-61.0	-62.0	-60.5	-60.0	-61.0	-60.5	-60.0	-60.0	-59.5	-59.5	-59.0	-58.5
10	2048 QAM	-58.0	-57.5	-57.5	-57.0	-58.0	-56.5	-56.0	-57.5	-56.5	-56.0	-56.0	-56.0	-55.5	-55.0	-55.0	

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)														
			5.7- 6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³⁰	26	28-31	32	38	42
0	QPSK	40 MHz	-86.0	-85.5	-85.5	-85.0	-86.0	-85.0	-84.0	-85.5	-84.5	-84.0	-84.0	-84.0	-83.5	-83.5	-83.0
1	8 PSK		-81.0	-80.5	-80.5	-80.0	-81.0	-79.5	-79.0	-80.5	-79.5	-79.0	-79.0	-79.0	-78.5	-78.0	-78.0
2	16 QAM		-79.5	-79.0	-79.0	-78.5	-79.5	-78.0	-77.5	-79.0	-78.0	-77.5	-77.5	-77.5	-77.0	-76.5	-76.5
3	32 QAM		-76.0	-75.0	-75.0	-75.0	-75.5	-74.5	-74.0	-75.0	-74.0	-73.5	-74.0	-73.5	-73.5	-73.0	-72.5
4	64 QAM		-73.0	-72.0	-72.0	-72.0	-73.0	-71.5	-71.0	-72.0	-71.5	-71.0	-71.0	-70.5	-70.5	-70.0	-69.5
5	128 QAM		-70.0	-69.0	-69.0	-69.0	-70.0	-68.5	-68.0	-69.0	-68.5	-68.0	-68.0	-67.5	-67.5	-67.0	-66.5
6	256 QAM		-67.0	-66.0	-66.0	-66.0	-66.5	-65.5	-65.0	-66.0	-65.0	-64.5	-65.0	-64.5	-64.5	-64.0	-63.5
7	512 QAM		-64.0	-63.5	-63.5	-63.0	-64.0	-62.5	-62.0	-63.5	-62.5	-62.0	-62.0	-62.0	-61.5	-61.0	-61.0
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-61.5	-61.0	-61.0	-60.5	-61.5	-60.0	-59.5	-61.0	-60.0	-59.5	-59.5	-59.5	-59.0	-58.5	-58.5
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		-60.5	-60.0	-60.0	-59.5	-60.5	-59.5	-58.5	-60.0	-59.0	-58.5	-58.5	-58.5	-58.0	-58.0	-57.5
10	2048 QAM		-58.0	-57.0	-57.0	-57.0	-58.0	-56.5	-56.0	-57.0	-56.5	-56.0	-56.0	-55.5	-55.5	-55.0	-54.5

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)														
			5.7- 6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³⁰	26	28-31	32	38	42
0	QPSK	56 MHz ACCP	-84.0	-83.5	-83.5	-83.0	-84.0	-83.0	-82.0	-83.5	-82.5	-82.0	-82.0	-82.0	-81.5	-81.5	-81.0
1	8 PSK		-80.0	-79.5	-79.5	-79.0	-80.0	-79.0	-78.0	-79.5	-78.5	-78.0	-78.0	-78.0	-77.5	-77.5	-77.0
2	16 QAM		-77.5	-77.0	-77.0	-76.5	-77.5	-76.5	-75.5	-77.0	-76.0	-75.5	-75.5	-75.5	-75.0	-75.0	-74.5
3	32 QAM		-74.5	-73.5	-73.5	-73.5	-74.0	-73.0	-72.5	-73.5	-72.5	-72.0	-72.5	-72.0	-72.0	-71.5	-71.0
4	64 QAM		-71.0	-70.5	-70.5	-70.0	-71.0	-70.0	-69.0	-70.5	-69.5	-69.0	-69.0	-69.0	-68.5	-68.5	-68.0
5	128 QAM		-68.5	-67.5	-67.5	-67.5	-68.0	-67.0	-66.5	-67.5	-66.5	-66.0	-66.5	-66.0	-66.0	-65.5	-65.0
6	256 QAM		-65.0	-64.5	-64.5	-64.0	-65.0	-64.0	-63.0	-64.5	-63.5	-63.0	-63.0	-63.0	-62.5	-62.5	-62.0
7	512 QAM		-63.0	-62.5	-62.5	-62.0	-63.0	-61.5	-61.0	-62.5	-61.5	-61.0	-61.0	-61.0	-60.5	-60.0	-60.0
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-59.5	-59.0	-59.0	-58.5	-59.5	-58.5	-57.5	-59.0	-58.0	-57.5	-57.5	-57.5	-57.0	-57.0	-56.5
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		-58.5	-58.0	-58.0	-57.5	-58.5	-57.5	-56.5	-58.0	-57.0	-56.5	-56.5	-56.5	-56.0	-56.0	-55.5
10	2048 QAM	-54.0	-53.5	-53.5	-53.0	-54.0	-53.0	-52.0	-53.5	-52.5	-52.0	-52.0	-52.0	-51.5	-51.5	-51.0	

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)														
			5.7- 6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³⁰	26	28-31	32	38	42
0	QPSK	56 MHz ACAP	-84.5	-84.0	-84.0	-83.5	-84.5	-83.0	-82.5	-84.0	-83.0	-82.5	-82.5	-82.5	-82.0	-81.5	-81.5
1	8 PSK		-80.0	-79.0	-79.0	-79.0	-79.5	-78.5	-78.0	-79.0	-78.0	-77.5	-78.0	-77.5	-77.5	-77.0	-76.5
2	16 QAM		-77.5	-77.0	-77.0	-76.5	-77.5	-76.0	-75.5	-77.0	-76.0	-75.5	-75.5	-75.5	-75.0	-74.5	-74.5
3	32 QAM		-74.0	-73.0	-73.0	-73.0	-73.5	-72.5	-72.0	-73.0	-72.0	-71.5	-72.0	-71.5	-71.5	-71.0	-70.5
4	64 QAM		-70.5	-70.0	-70.0	-69.5	-70.5	-69.5	-68.5	-70.0	-69.0	-68.5	-68.5	-68.5	-68.0	-68.0	-67.5
5	128 QAM		-68.0	-67.0	-67.0	-67.0	-67.5	-66.5	-66.0	-67.0	-66.0	-65.5	-66.0	-65.5	-65.5	-65.0	-64.5
6	256 QAM		-64.5	-64.0	-64.0	-63.5	-64.5	-63.5	-62.5	-64.0	-63.0	-62.5	-62.5	-62.5	-62.0	-62.0	-61.5
7	512 QAM		-62.5	-62.0	-62.0	-61.5	-62.5	-61.5	-60.5	-62.0	-61.0	-60.5	-60.5	-60.5	-60.0	-60.0	-59.5
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-59.0	-58.5	-58.5	-58.0	-59.0	-58.0	-57.0	-58.5	-57.5	-57.0	-57.0	-57.0	-56.5	-56.5	-56.0
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		-58.0	-57.5	-57.5	-57.0	-58.0	-57.0	-56.0	-57.5	-56.5	-56.0	-56.0	-56.0	-55.5	-55.5	-55.0
10	2048 QAM	-55.5	-54.5	-54.5	-54.5	-55.0	-54.0	-53.5	-54.5	-53.5	-53.0	-53.5	-53.0	-53.0	-52.5	-52.0	

Profile	Modulation	Channel Spacing	Frequency (GHz)														
			5.7-6	7	8	10	11	13	15	18	23	24 ³¹	26	28-31	32	38	42
0	QPSK	80 MHz ACCP	-82.5	-82.0	-82.0	-81.5	-82.5	-81.5	-80.5	-82.0	-81.0	-80.5	-80.5	-80.5	-80.0	-80.0	-79.5
1	8 PSK		-78.5	-78.0	-78.0	-77.5	-78.5	-77.5	-76.5	-78.0	-77.0	-76.5	-76.5	-76.5	-76.0	-76.0	-75.5
2	16 QAM		-76.0	-75.5	-75.5	-75.0	-76.0	-75.0	-74.0	-75.5	-74.5	-74.0	-74.0	-74.0	-73.5	-73.5	-73.0
3	32 QAM		-73.0	-72.0	-72.0	-72.0	-72.5	-71.5	-71.0	-72.0	-71.0	-70.5	-71.0	-70.5	-70.5	-70.0	-69.5
4	64 QAM		-69.5	-69.0	-69.0	-68.5	-69.5	-68.5	-67.5	-69.0	-68.0	-67.5	-67.5	-67.5	-67.0	-67.0	-66.5
5	128 QAM		-67.0	-66.0	-66.0	-66.0	-66.5	-65.5	-65.0	-66.0	-65.0	-64.5	-65.0	-64.5	-64.5	-64.0	-63.5
6	256 QAM		-63.5	-63.0	-63.0	-62.5	-63.5	-62.5	-61.5	-63.0	-62.0	-61.5	-61.5	-61.5	-61.0	-61.0	-60.5
7	512 QAM		-61.5	-61.0	-61.0	-60.5	-61.5	-60.0	-59.5	-61.0	-60.0	-59.5	-59.5	-59.5	-59.0	-58.5	-58.5
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		-58.0	-57.5	-57.5	-57.0	-58.0	-57.0	-56.0	-57.5	-56.5	-56.0	-56.0	-56.0	-55.5	-55.5	-55.0
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		-57.0	-56.5	-56.5	-56.0	-57.0	-56.0	-55.0	-56.5	-55.5	-55.0	-55.0	-55.0	-54.5	-54.5	-54.0

8.6.1 Overload Thresholds

- For modulations up to and including 1024 QAM (strong FEC): -20dBm
- For modulations of 1024 (light FEC) and 2048 QAM: -25dBm

³¹ Customers in countries following EC Directive 2006/771/EC (incl. amendments) must observe the 100mW EIRP obligation by adjusting transmit power according to antenna gain and RF line losses.

8.7 Frequency Bands

Table 55: Frequency Bands

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
U5.7 GHz	5725-5785	5790-5850	65
	5725-5765	5810-5850	85
6L GHz	6332.5-6393	5972-6093	300A
	5972-6093	6332.5-6393	
	6191.5-6306.5	5925.5-6040.5	266A
	5925.5-6040.5	6191.5-6306.5	
	6303.5-6418.5	6037.5-6152.5	
	6037.5-6152.5	6303.5-6418.5	
	6245-6290.5	5939.5-6030.5	260A
	5939.5-6030.5	6245-6290.5	
	6365-6410.5	6059.5-6150.5	
	6059.5-6150.5	6365-6410.5	
	6226.89-6286.865	5914.875-6034.825	252B
	5914.875-6034.825	6226.89-6286.865	
	6345.49-6405.465	6033.475-6153.425	
	6033.475-6153.425	6345.49-6405.465	
	6179.415-6304.015	5927.375-6051.975	252A
	5927.375-6051.975	6179.415-6304.015	
	6238.715-6363.315	5986.675-6111.275	
	5986.675-6111.275	6238.715-6363.315	
	6298.015-6422.615	6045.975-6170.575	
	6045.975-6170.575	6298.015-6422.615	
6235-6290.5	5939.5-6050.5	240A	
5939.5-6050.5	6235-6290.5		
6355-6410.5	6059.5-6170.5		
6059.5-6170.5	6355-6410.5		

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
6H GHz	6920-7080	6420-6580	500A
	6420-6580	6924.5-7075.5	
	7032.5-7091.5	6692.5-6751.5	340C
	6692.5-6751.5	7032.5-7091.5	
	6764.5-6915.5	6424.5-6575.5	340B
	6424.5-6575.5	6764.5-6915.5	
	6924.5-7075.5	6584.5-6735.5	
	6584.5-6735.5	6924.5-7075.5	340A
	6781-6939	6441-6599	
	6441-6599	6781-6939	
	6941-7099	6601-6759	
	6601-6759	6941-7099	160A
	6707.5-6772.5	6537.5-6612.5	
	6537.5-6612.5	6707.5-6772.5	
	6767.5-6832.5	6607.5-6672.5	
	6607.5-6672.5	6767.5-6832.5	
6827.5-6872.5	6667.5-6712.5		
6667.5-6712.5	6827.5-6872.5		

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
7 GHz	7783.5-7898.5	7538.5-7653.5	245A
	7538.5-7653.5	7783.5-7898.5	
	7301.5-7388.5	7105.5-7192.5	196A
	7105.5-7192.5	7301.5-7388.5	
	7357.5-7444.5	7161.5-7248.5	
	7161.5-7248.5	7357.5-7444.5	182A
	7440.5-7499.5	7622.5-7681.5	
	7678.5-7737.5	7496.5-7555.5	
	7496.5-7555.5	7678.5-7737.5	
	7580.5-7639.5	7412.5-7471.5	168C
	7412.5-7471.5	7580.5-7639.5	
	7608.5-7667.5	7440.5-7499.5	168B
	7440.5-7499.5	7608.5-7667.5	
	7664.5-7723.5	7496.5-7555.5	
	7496.5-7555.5	7664.5-7723.5	
	7609.5-7668.5	7441.5-7500.5	
	7441.5-7500.5	7609.5-7668.5	
	7637.5-7696.5	7469.5-7528.5	
	7469.5-7528.5	7637.5-7696.5	
	7693.5-7752.5	7525.5-7584.5	168A
	7525.5-7584.5	7693.5-7752.5	
	7273.5-7332.5	7105.5-7164.5	
	7105.5-7164.5	7273.5-7332.5	
	7301.5-7360.5	7133.5-7192.5	
	7133.5-7192.5	7301.5-7360.5	
	7357.5-7416.5	7189.5-7248.5	
	7189.5-7248.5	7357.5-7416.5	
	7280.5-7339.5	7119.5-7178.5	161P
7119.5-7178.5	7280.5-7339.5		
7308.5-7367.5	7147.5-7206.5		
7147.5-7206.5	7308.5-7367.5		
7336.5-7395.5	7175.5-7234.5		
7175.5-7234.5	7336.5-7395.5		

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	7364.5-7423.5	7203.5-7262.5	
	7203.5-7262.5	7364.5-7423.5	
	7597.5-7622.5	7436.5-7461.5	1610
	7436.5-7461.5	7597.5-7622.5	
	7681.5-7706.5	7520.5-7545.5	
	7520.5-7545.5	7681.5-7706.5	
	7587.5-7646.5	7426.5-7485.5	161M
	7426.5-7485.5	7587.5-7646.5	
	7615.5-7674.5	7454.5-7513.5	
	7454.5-7513.5	7615.5-7674.5	
	7643.5-7702.5	7482.5-7541.5	161K
	7482.5-7541.5	7643.5-7702.5	
	7671.5-7730.5	7510.5-7569.5	
	7510.5-7569.5	7671.5-7730.5	
	7580.5-7639.5	7419.5-7478.5	161J
	7419.5-7478.5	7580.5-7639.5	
	7608.5-7667.5	7447.5-7506.5	
	7447.5-7506.5	7608.5-7667.5	
	7664.5-7723.5	7503.5-7562.5	
	7503.5-7562.5	7664.5-7723.5	
	7580.5-7639.5	7419.5-7478.5	161I
	7419.5-7478.5	7580.5-7639.5	
	7608.5-7667.5	7447.5-7506.5	
	7447.5-7506.5	7608.5-7667.5	
	7664.5-7723.5	7503.5-7562.5	
	7503.5-7562.5	7664.5-7723.5	
	7273.5-7353.5	7112.5-7192.5	161F
	7112.5-7192.5	7273.5-7353.5	
	7322.5-7402.5	7161.5-7241.5	
	7161.5-7241.5	7322.5-7402.5	
	7573.5-7653.5	7412.5-7492.5	
	7412.5-7492.5	7573.5-7653.5	
	7622.5-7702.5	7461.5-7541.5	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	7461.5-7541.5	7622.5-7702.5	
	7709-7768	7548-7607	161D
	7548-7607	7709-7768	
	7737-7796	7576-7635	
	7576-7635	7737-7796	
	7765-7824	7604-7663	
	7604-7663	7765-7824	
	7793-7852	7632-7691	
	7632-7691	7793-7852	
	7584-7643	7423-7482	161C
	7423-7482	7584-7643	
	7612-7671	7451-7510	
	7451-7510	7612-7671	
	7640-7699	7479-7538	
	7479-7538	7640-7699	
	7668-7727	7507-7566	
	7507-7566	7668-7727	
	7409-7468	7248-7307	161B
	7248-7307	7409-7468	
	7437-7496	7276-7335	
	7276-7335	7437-7496	
	7465-7524	7304-7363	
	7304-7363	7465-7524	
	7493-7552	7332-7391	
	7332-7391	7493-7552	
	7284-7343	7123-7182	161A
	7123-7182	7284-7343	
	7312-7371	7151-7210	
	7151-7210	7312-7371	
	7340-7399	7179-7238	
	7179-7238	7340-7399	
	7368-7427	7207-7266	
	7207-7266	7368-7427	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	7280.5-7339.5	7126.5-7185.5	154C
	7126.5-7185.5	7280.5-7339.5	
	7308.5-7367.5	7154.5-7213.5	
	7154.5-7213.5	7308.5-7367.5	
	7336.5-7395.5	7182.5-7241.5	
	7182.5-7241.5	7336.5-7395.5	
	7364.5-7423.5	7210.5-7269.5	
	7210.5-7269.5	7364.5-7423.5	
	7594.5-7653.5	7440.5-7499.5	154B
	7440.5-7499.5	7594.5-7653.5	
	7622.5-7681.5	7468.5-7527.5	
	7468.5-7527.5	7622.5-7681.5	
	7678.5-7737.5	7524.5-7583.5	
	7524.5-7583.5	7678.5-7737.5	
	7580.5-7639.5	7426.5-7485.5	154A
	7426.5-7485.5	7580.5-7639.5	
	7608.5-7667.5	7454.5-7513.5	
	7454.5-7513.5	7608.5-7667.5	
	7636.5-7695.5	7482.5-7541.5	
	7482.5-7541.5	7636.5-7695.5	
	7664.5-7723.5	7510.5-7569.5	
	7510.5-7569.5	7664.5-7723.5	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
8 GHz	8396.5-8455.5	8277.5-8336.5	119A
	8277.5-8336.5	8396.5-8455.5	
	8438.5 – 8497.5	8319.5 – 8378.5	
	8319.5 – 8378.5	8438.5 – 8497.5	
	8274.5-8305.5	7744.5-7775.5	530A
	7744.5-7775.5	8274.5-8305.5	
	8304.5-8395.5	7804.5-7895.5	500A
	7804.5-7895.5	8304.5-8395.5	
	8023-8186.32	7711.68-7875	311C-J

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	7711.68-7875	8023-8186.32	
	8028.695-8148.645	7717.375-7837.325	311B
	7717.375-7837.325	8028.695-8148.645	
	8147.295-8267.245	7835.975-7955.925	
	7835.975-7955.925	8147.295-8267.245	
	8043.52-8163.47	7732.2-7852.15	311A
	7732.2-7852.15	8043.52-8163.47	
	8162.12-8282.07	7850.8-7970.75	
	7850.8-7970.75	8162.12-8282.07	
	8212-8302	7902-7992	310D
	7902-7992	8212-8302	
	8240-8330	7930-8020	
	7930-8020	8240-8330	
	8296-8386	7986-8076	
	7986-8076	8296-8386	
	8212-8302	7902-7992	310C
	7902-7992	8212-8302	
	8240-8330	7930-8020	
	7930-8020	8240-8330	
	8296-8386	7986-8076	
	7986-8076	8296-8386	
	8380-8470	8070-8160	
	8070-8160	8380-8470	
	8408-8498	8098-8188	
	8098-8188	8408-8498	
	8039.5-8150.5	7729.5-7840.5	310A
	7729.5-7840.5	8039.5-8150.5	
	8159.5-8270.5	7849.5-7960.5	
	7849.5-7960.5	8159.5-8270.5	
	8024.5-8145.5	7724.5-7845.5	300A
	7724.5-7845.5	8024.5-8145.5	
	8144.5-8265.5	7844.5-7965.5	
	7844.5-7965.5	8144.5-8265.5	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	8302.5-8389.5	8036.5-8123.5	266C
	8036.5-8123.5	8302.5-8389.5	
	8190.5-8277.5	7924.5-8011.5	266B
	7924.5-8011.5	8190.5-8277.5	
	8176.5-8291.5	7910.5-8025.5	266A
	7910.5-8025.5	8176.5-8291.5	
	8288.5-8403.5	8022.5-8137.5	
	8022.5-8137.5	8288.5-8403.5	
	8226.52-8287.52	7974.5-8035.5	252A
	7974.5-8035.5	8226.52-8287.52	
	8270.5-8349.5	8020.5-8099.5	250A
	8016.5-8156.5	7733-7873	283A
	7733-7873	8016.5-8156.5	
	8128.5-8268.5	7845-7985	
	7845-7985	8128.5-8268.5	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
10 GHz	10501-10563	10333-10395	168A
	10333-10395	10501-10563	
	10529-10591	10361-10423	
	10361-10423	10529-10591	
	10585-10647	10417-10479	
	10417-10479	10585-10647	
	10501-10647	10151-10297	350A
	10151-10297	10501-10647	
	10498-10652	10148-10302	350B
	10148-10302	10498-10652	
	10561-10707	10011-10157	550A
	10011-10157	10561-10707	
	10701-10847	10151-10297	
	10151-10297	10701-10847	
	10590-10622	10499-10531	91A

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	10499-10531	10590-10622	
	10618-10649	10527-10558	
	10527-10558	10618-10649	
	10646-10677	10555-10586	
	10555-10586	10646-10677	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
11 GHz	11425-11725	10915-11207	All
	10915-11207	11425-11725	
	11185-11485	10695-10955	
	10695-10955	11185-11485	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
13 GHz	13002-13141	12747-12866	266
	12747-12866	13002-13141	
	13127-13246	12858-12990	
	12858-12990	13127-13246	
	12807-12919	13073-13185	266A
	13073-13185	12807-12919	
	12700-12775	12900-13000	200
	12900-13000	12700-12775	
	12750-12825	12950-13050	
	12950-13050	12750-12825	
	12800-12870	13000-13100	
	13000-13100	12800-12870	
	12850-12925	13050-13150	
	13050-13150	12850-12925	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
15 GHz	15110-15348	14620-14858	490
	14620-14858	15110-15348	
	14887-15117	14397-14627	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	14397-14627	14887-15117	
	15144-15341	14500-14697	644
	14500-14697	15144-15341	
	14975-15135	14500-14660	475
	14500-14660	14975-15135	
	15135-15295	14660-14820	
	14660-14820	15135-15295	
	14921-15145	14501-14725	420
	14501-14725	14921-15145	
	15117-15341	14697-14921	
	14697-14921	15117-15341	
	14963-15075	14648-14760	315
	14648-14760	14963-15075	
	15047-15159	14732-14844	
	14732-14844	15047-15159	
	15229-15375	14500-14647	728
	14500-14647	15229-15375	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
18 GHz	19160-19700	18126-18690	1010
	18126-18690	19160-19700	
	18710-19220	17700-18200	
	17700-18200	18710-19220	
	19260-19700	17700-18140	1560
	17700-18140	19260-19700	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
23 GHz	23000-23600	22000-22600	1008
	22000-22600	23000-23600	
	22400-23000	21200-21800	1232 /1200
	21200-21800	22400-23000	
	23000-23600	21800-22400	
	21800-22400	23000-23600	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
24UL GHz ³²	24000 - 24250	24000 - 24250	All

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
26 GHz	25530-26030	24520-25030	1008
	24520-25030	25530-26030	
	25980-26480	24970-25480	
	24970-25480	25980-26480	
	25266-25350	24466-24550	800
	24466-24550	25266-25350	
	25050-25250	24250-24450	
	24250-24450	25050-25250	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
28 GHz	28150-28350	27700-27900	450
	27700-27900	28150-28350	
	27950-28150	27500-27700	
	27500-27700	27950-28150	
	28050-28200	27700-27850	350
	27700-27850	28050-28200	
	27960-28110	27610-27760	
	27610-27760	27960-28110	
	28090-28315	27600-27825	490
	27600-27825	28090-28315	
	29004-29453	27996-28445	1008
	27996-28445	29004-29453	
	28556-29005	27548-27997	
	27548-27997	28556-29005	
	29100-29125	29225-29250	125

³² Customers in countries following EC Directive 2006/771/EC (incl. amendments) must observe the 100mW EIRP obligation by adjusting transmit power according to antenna gain and RF line losses.

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
	29225-29250	29100-29125	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
31 GHz	31000-31085	31215-31300	175
	31215-31300	31000-31085	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
32 GHz	31815-32207	32627-33019	812
	32627-33019	31815-32207	
	32179-32571	32991-33383	
	32991-33383	32179-32571	

Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
38 GHz	38820-39440	37560-38180	1260
	37560-38180	38820-39440	
	38316-38936	37045-37676	
	37045-37676	38316-38936	
	39650-40000	38950-39300	700
	38950-39300	39500-40000	
	39300-39650	38600-38950	
	38600-38950	39300-39650	
	37700-38050	37000-37350	
	37000-37350	37700-38050	
	38050-38400	37350-37700	
	37350-37700	38050-38400	

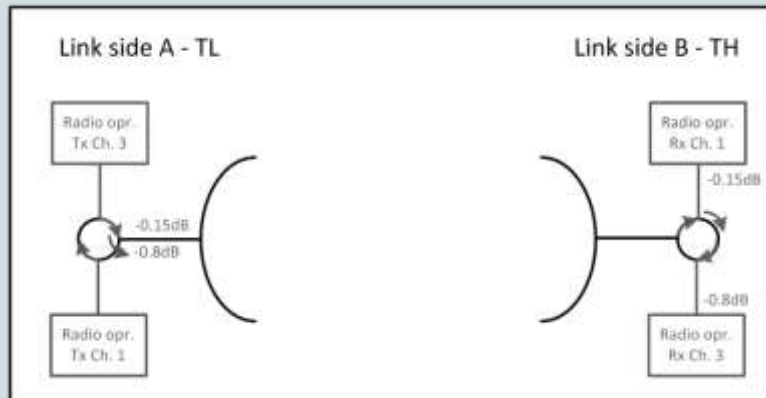
Frequency Band	TX Range	RX Range	Tx/Rx Spacing
42 GHz	40550-41278	42050-42778	1500
	42050-42778	40550-41278	
	41222-41950.5	42722-43450	
	42722-43450	41222-41950.5	

8.8 Mediation Device Losses

Table 56: Mediation Device Losses

Mediation Devices	Signal Path / Remarks	Maximum Insertion Loss [dB]						
		5.7-8 GHz	11 GHz	13-15 GHz	18 GHz	23-26 GHz	28-38 GHz	42 GHz
Flex WG	Size varies per frequency.	0.5	0.5	1.2	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.5
OMT	Radio to antenna ports (V or H)	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.5	0.5	0.5
Splitter	Radio to antenna port	3.6	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7	4.0	4.0
Dual Coupler	Main Paths	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.8	1.8	2.0	2.0
	Secondary Paths	6±0.7	6±0.7	6±0.7	6±0.8	6±0.8	6±1.0	6±1.0
Dual Splitter	Radio to antenna port	3.6	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7	4.0	4.0
Dual Circulator	High Ch radio to antenna port	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
	Low Ch radio to antenna port	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5

Notes: The antenna interface is always the IP-20C interface.
 If other antennas are to be used, an adaptor with a 0.1 dB loss should be considered.
 The numbers above represent the maximum loss per component.
 The following diagram explains the circulators insertion loss:



8.9 Ethernet Latency Specifications

8.9.1 Latency – 3.5 MHz Channel Bandwidth

Table 57: Latency – 3.5 MHz Channel Bandwidth

ACM Working Point	Modulation	Frame Size	Latency (µsec) with GbE Interface					
			64	128	256	512	1024	1518
0	QPSK		1659	1734	1883	2180	2774	3348
1	16 QAM		903	936	1001	1130	1389	1639
2	32 QAM		783	808	856	952	1146	1333
3	64 QAM		704	724	763	842	999	1149
4	128 QAM		650	668	701	767	901	1027
5	256 QAM		587	603	632	692	811	923

8.9.2 Latency – 7 MHz Channel Bandwidth

Table 58: Latency – 7 MHz Channel Bandwidth

ACM Working Point	Modulation	Frame Size	Latency (µsec) with GbE Interface					
			64	128	256	512	1024	1518
0	QPSK		701	763	882	1129	1621	2094
1	8 PSK		516	558	643	810	1144	1466
2	16 QAM		403	432	494	612	852	1081
3	32 QAM		357	381	427	518	702	878
4	64 QAM		326	345	383	459	610	753
5	128 QAM		307	321	353	417	545	666
6	256 QAM		309	324	352	409	522	628
7	512 QAM		346	358	385	437	544	644
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		327	340	365	415	516	610
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		302	314	338	385	481	569

8.9.3 Latency – 14 MHz Channel Bandwidth

Table 59: Latency – 14 MHz Channel Bandwidth

ACM Working Point	Modulation	Frame Size	Latency (μsec) with GbE Interface					
			64	128	256	512	1024	1518
0	QPSK		276	304	360	473	698	913
1	8 PSK		222	242	281	358	512	659
2	16 QAM		178	193	222	280	398	506
3	32 QAM		166	178	201	247	339	424
4	64 QAM		159	168	187	226	303	374
5	128 QAM		191	199	216	248	315	375
6	256 QAM		136	142	158	187	248	302
7	512 QAM		172	179	193	221	277	327
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		161	168	182	209	263	310
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		158	164	177	202	254	299

8.9.4 Latency – 28 MHz Channel Bandwidth

Table 60: Latency – 28 MHz Channel Bandwidth

ACM Working Point	Modulation	Frame Size	Latency (μsec) with GbE Interface					
			64	128	256	512	1024	1518
0	QPSK		144	156	183	236	343	446
1	8 PSK		113	122	142	179	256	330
2	16 QAM		98	105	120	148	206	261
3	32 QAM		94	100	112	135	181	225
4	64 QAM		90	95	106	125	165	203
5	128 QAM		84	89	98	115	149	183
6	256 QAM		92	95	104	119	151	181
7	512 QAM		99	103	111	125	155	184
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		92	95	103	117	145	173
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		93	96	104	117	145	171
10	2048 QAM		88	91	99	111	137	162

8.9.5 Latency – 40 MHz Channel Bandwidth

Table 61: Latency – 40 MHz Channel Bandwidth

ACM Working Point	Modulation	Frame Size	Latency (μsec) with GbE Interface					
			64	128	256	512	1024	1518
0	QPSK		113	123	144	185	266	346
1	8 PSK		96	103	118	147	205	262
2	16 QAM		81	86	98	120	166	210
3	32 QAM		78	83	92	111	148	184
4	64 QAM		75	79	87	103	135	166
5	128 QAM		71	74	82	96	124	151
6	256 QAM		60	63	71	84	111	137
7	512 QAM		72	75	82	95	120	145
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		73	76	82	94	117	141
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		75	78	84	95	118	140
10	2048 QAM		70	72	78	89	111	132

8.9.6 Latency – 56 MHz Channel Bandwidth

Table 62: Latency – 56 MHz Channel Bandwidth

ACM Working Point	Modulation	Frame Size	Latency (μsec) with GbE Interface					
			64	128	256	512	1024	1518
0	QPSK		85	92	107	138	199	255
1	8 PSK		95	100	112	135	180	222
2	16 QAM		62	67	76	95	132	164
3	32 QAM		59	63	71	87	118	145
4	64 QAM		57	60	67	81	109	133
5	128 QAM		55	58	64	77	103	124
6	256 QAM		55	58	64	76	100	120
7	512 QAM		58	61	67	78	102	121
8	1024 QAM (strong FEC)		55	58	64	75	97	116
9	1024 QAM (light FEC)		56	58	64	75	97	115
10	2048 QAM		53	55	61	72	93	110

8.9.7 Latency – 80 MHz Channel Bandwidth

Table 63: Latency – 80 MHz Channel Bandwidth

ACM Working Point	Modulation	Frame Size	Latency (μsec) with GbE Interface					
			64	128	256	512	1024	1518
0	QPSK		72	78	90	114	163	211
1	8 PSK		58	63	73	91	130	168
2	16 QAM		53	57	65	79	111	141
3	32 QAM		50	54	61	73	101	127
4	64 QAM		48	52	57	69	94	118
5	128 QAM		46	50	55	66	89	111
6	256 QAM		53	56	61	71	93	114
7	512 QAM		50	53	58	67	88	109
8	1024 QAM		47	51	55	65	85	105

8.10 Interface Specifications

8.10.1 Ethernet Interface Specifications

Table 64: Ethernet Interfaces

Supported Ethernet Interfaces for Traffic	1 x 10/100/1000Base-T (RJ-45) 2x1000base-X (Optical SFP) or 1000Base-T (Electrical SFP)
Supported Ethernet Interfaces for Management	10/100 Base-T (RJ-45)
Recommended SFP Types	Optical 1000Base-LX (1310 nm) or SX (850 nm) Note: SFP devices must be of industrial grade (-40°C to +85°C)

The following table lists Ceragon-approved SFP devices:

Table 65: SFP Devices

Ceragon Marketing Model	Part Number	Item Description
SFP-GE-LX-EXT-TEMP	AO-0097-0	XCVR,SFP,1310nm,1.25Gb, SM,10km,W.DDM,INDUSTRIAL
SFP-GE-SX-EXT-TEMP	AO-0098-0	XCVR,SFP,850nm,MM,1.0625 FC/ 1.25 GBE, INDUSTRIAL
SFP-GE-COPER-EXT-TMP-LOS-DIS	AO-0228-0	XCVR,SFP,COOPER 1000BASE-T,RX_LOS DISABLE,INDUSTR
SFP-BX-D-OPT-EXT-TEMP	AO-0269-0	XCVR,SFP,SINGLE FIBER,1310nm RX/1490nm TX,1.25Gb,SM,10km,W.DDM,INDUSTRIAL,SINGLE PACK KIT
SFP-BX-U-OPT-EXT-TEMP	AO-0268-0	XCVR,SFP,SINGLE FIBER,1310nm TX/1490nm RX,1.25Gb,SM,10km,W.DDM,INDUSTRIAL,SINGLE PACK KIT
SFP-XD-D-OPT-EXT-TEMP	AO-0271-0	XCVR,SFP,SINGLE FIBER,1310nm RX/1490nm TX,1.25Gb,SM,40km,W.DDM,INDUSTRIAL,SINGLE PACK KIT
SFP-XD-U-OPT-EXT-TEMP	AO-0270-0	XCVR,SFP,SINGLE FIBER,1310nm TX/1490nm RX,1.25Gb,SM,40km,W.DDM,INDUSTRIAL,SINGLE PACK KIT
SFP-XD15-D-OPT-EXT-TEMP	AO-0279-0	XCVR,SFP,SINGLE FIBER,1310nm RX/1550nm TX,1.25Gb,SM,40km,W.DDM,INDUSTRIAL,SINGLE PACK KIT
SFP-XD15-U-OPT-EXT-TEMP	AO-0278-0	XCVR,SFP,SINGLE FIBER,1310nm TX/1550nm RX,1.25Gb,SM,40km,W.DDM,INDUSTRIAL,SINGLE PACK KIT

The following table lists recommended SFP+ modules that can be used with the MIMO Extension port, including P4 on an IP-20C 2E2SX when used with MIMO 4x4 and Space Diversity 2+2 configurations.

Table 66: Approved SFP+ Modules for MIMO Extension Ports

Ceragon Marketing Model	Item Description
MIMO_SFP_10G	XCVR,SFP+,850nm,MM,10 Gbit/s, INDUSTRIAL GRADE

8.11 Carrier Ethernet Functionality

Table 67: Carrier Ethernet Functionality

Latency over the radio link	< 0.15 ms @ 400 Mbps
"Jumbo" Frame Support	Up to 9600 Bytes
General	Enhanced link state propagation Header De-Duplication
Integrated Carrier Ethernet Switch	Switching capacity: 5Gbps / 3.12Mpps Maximum number of Ethernet services: 64 plus one pre-defined management service MAC address learning with 128K MAC addresses 802.1ad provider bridges (QinQ) 802.3ad link aggregation
QoS	Advanced CoS classification and remarking Per interface CoS based packet queuing/buffering (8 queues) Per queue statistics Tail-drop and WRED with CIR/EIR support Flexible scheduling schemes (SP/WFQ/Hierarchical) Per interface and per queue traffic shaping Hierarchical-QoS (H-QoS) – 2K service level queues 2 Gbit packet buffer
Network resiliency	MSTP ERP (G.8032)
Service OAM	FM (Y.1731) PM (Y.1731) ³³
Performance Monitoring	Per port Ethernet counters (RMON/RMON2) Radio ACM statistics Enhanced radio Ethernet statistics (Frame Error Rate, Throughput, Capacity, Utilization)

³³ PM is planned for future release.

Supported Ethernet/IP Standards	802.3 – 10base-T
	802.3u – 100base-T
	802.3ab – 1000base-T
	802.3z – 1000base-X
	802.3ac – Ethernet VLANs
	802.1Q – Virtual LAN (VLAN)
	802.1p – Class of service
	802.1ad – Provider bridges (QinQ)
	802.3ad – Link aggregation
	Auto MDI/MDIX for 1000baseT
	RFC 1349 – IPv4 TOS
	RFC 2474 – IPv4 DSCP
	RFC 2460 – IPv6 Traffic Classes

8.12 Synchronization Functionality

- SyncE
 - SyncE input and output (G.8262)
- IEEE 1588v2 (Precision Time Protocol)
 - Transparent Clock

8.13 Network Management, Diagnostics, Status, and Alarms

Table 68: Network Management and Monitoring

Network Management System	Ceragon NMS
NMS Interface protocol	SNMPv1/v2c/v3 XML over HTTP/HTTPS toward NMS
Element Management	Web based EMS, CLI
Management Channels & Protocols	HTTP/HTTPS Telnet/SSH-2 FTP/SFTP
Authentication, Authorization & Accounting	User access control X-509 Certificate
Management Interface	Dedicated Ethernet interfaces or in-band in traffic ports
In-Band Management	Support dedicated VLAN for management
TMN	Ceragon NMS functions are in accordance with ITU-T recommendations for TMN
RSL Indication	Accurate power reading (dBm) available at IP-20C ³⁴ , and NMS
Performance Monitoring	Integral with onboard memory per ITU-T G.826/G.828

8.14 Mechanical Specifications

Table 69: Mechanical Specifications

Module Dimensions	(H)230mm x (W)233mm x (D)98mm
Module Weight	6.5 kg
Pole Diameter Range (for Remote Mount Installation)	8.89 cm – 11.43 cm

³⁴ The voltage at the BNC port is 1.XX where XX is the RSL level. For example: 1.59V means an RSL of -59 dBm. Note that the voltage measured at the BNC port is not accurate and should be used only as an aid).

8.15 Standards Compliance

Table 70: Standards Compliance

Specification	Standard
Radio	EN 302 217-2-2
EMC	EN 301 489-1, EN 301 489-4, Class B (Europe) FCC 47 CFR, part 15, class B (US) ICES-003, Class B (Canada) TEC/EMI/TEL-001/01, Class B (India)
Surge	EN61000-4-5, Class 4 (for PWR and ETH1/PoE ports)
Safety	EN 60950-1 IEC 60950-1 UL 60950-1 CSA-C22.2 No.60950-1 EN 60950-22 UL 60950-22 CSA C22.2.60950-22

8.16 Environmental Specifications

- Operating: ETSI EN 300 019-1-4 Class 4.1
 - Temperature range for continuous operating temperature with high reliability:
-33°C to +55°C
 - Temperature range for exceptional temperatures; tested successfully, with limited margins:
-45°C to +60°C
 - Humidity: 5%RH to 100%RH
IEC529 IP66
- Storage: ETSI EN 300 019-1-1 Class 1.2
- Transportation: ETSI EN 300 019-1-2 Class 2.3

8.17 Antenna Specifications

- Direct Mount:
CommScope (VHLP), RFS, Xian Putian (WTG), and Radio Wave
- Remote Mount:

Table 71: Antenna Specifications, Remote Mount

Frequency (GHz)	Waveguide Standard	Waveguide Flange	Antenna Flange
5.7/6	WR137	PDR70	UDR70
7/8	WR112	PBR84	UBR84
10/11	WR90	PBR100	UBR100
13	WR75	PBR120	UBR120
15	WR62	PBR140	UBR140
18-26	WR42	PBR220	UBR220
28-38	WR28	PBR320	UBR320
42	WR22	UG383/U	UG383/U

If a different antenna type (CPR flange) is used, a flange adaptor is required. Please contact your Ceragon representative for details.

8.18 Power Input Specifications

Table 72: Power Input

Standard Input	-48 VDC
DC Input range	-40 to -60 VDC

8.19 Power Consumption Specifications

Table 73: Power Consumption

Maximum Power Consumption	5.7-6 GHz	7-8 GHz	11 GHz	13-15 GHz	18-24 GHz	26-42 GHz
2+0 Operation	65W	75W	65W	55W	48W	55W
1+0 Operation (one of the carriers is muted)	40W	50W	53W	41W	39W	41W
Both carriers are muted	15W	25W	41W	27W	30W	27W

Note: Typical values are 5% less than the values listed above.

8.20 Power Connection Options

Table 74: Power Connection Options

Power Source and Range	Data Connection Type	Connection Length	DC Cable Type / Gage
Ext DC -(40.5 ÷ 60)VDC	Optical	≤ 100m	18AWG
		100m ÷ 300m	12AWG
	Electrical	≤ 100m	18AWG
PoE_Inj_AO (All outdoor PoE Injector, -40 ÷ 60VDC)	Electrical	≤ 100m (13 GHz and above) ≤ 75m (5.7-11 GHz)	CAT5e (24AWG)
PoE_Inj_AO_2DC_24V_48V (All outdoor PoE Injector, -(18 ÷ 60)VDC ³⁵ , DC input redundancy)	Electrical	≤ 100m	CAT5e (24AWG)

³⁵

Optional.

8.21 PoE Injector Specifications

8.21.1 Power Input

Table 75: PoE Injector Power Input

Standard Input	-48
DC Input range	-(18/40.5 to 60) VDC

8.21.2 Environmental

- Operating: ETSI EN 300 019-1-4 Class 4.1
 - Temperature range for continuous operating temperature with high reliability: **-33°C to +55°C**
 - Temperature range for exceptional temperatures; tested successfully, with limited margins: **-45°C to +60°C**
 - Humidity: 5%RH to 100%RH
IEC529 IP66
- Storage: ETSI EN 300 019-1-1 Class 1.2
- Transportation: ETSI EN 300 019-1-2 Class 2.3

8.21.3 Standards Compliance

Table 76: PoE Injector Standards Compliance

Specification	Standard
EMC	EN 301 489-1, EN 301 489-4, Class A (Europe) FCC 47 CFR, part 15, class B (US) ICES-003, Class B (Canada) TEC/EMI/TEL-001/01, Class A (India)
Safety	EN 60950-1 IEC 60950-1 UL 60950-1 CSA-C22.2 No.60950-1 EN 60950-22 UL 60950-22 CSA C22.2.60950-22

8.21.4 Mechanical

Table 77: PoE Injector Standards Compliance

Module Dimensions	(H)134mm x (W)190mm x (D)62mm
Module Weight	1kg

8.22 Cable Specifications

8.22.1 Outdoor Ethernet Cable Specifications

Table 78: Outdoor Ethernet Cable – Electrical Requirements

Cable type	CAT-5e SFUTP , 4 pairs, according to ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B-2
Wire gage	24 AWG
Stranding	Solid
Voltage rating	70V
Shielding	Braid + Foil
Pinout	

Table 79: Outdoor Ethernet Cable – Mechanical/ Environmental Requirements

Jacket	PVC, double, UV resistant
Outer diameter	7-10 mm
Operating and Storage temperature range	-40°C - 85°C
Flammability rating	According to UL-1581 VW1, IEC 60332-1
RoHS	According to Directive/2002/95/EC

8.22.2 Outdoor DC Cable Specifications

Table 80: Outdoor DC Cable – Electrical Requirements

Cable type	2 tinned copper wires
Wire gage	18 AWG (for <100m installations) 12 AWG (for >100m installations)
Stranding	stranded
Voltage rating	600V

Spark test	4KV
Dielectric strength	2KV AC min

Table 81: Outdoor DC Cable – Mechanical/ Environmental Requirements

Jacket	PVC, double, UV resistant
Outer diameter	7-10 mm
Operating & Storage temperature range	-40°C - 85°C
Flammability rating	According to UL-1581 VW1, IEC 60332-1
RoHS	According to Directive/2002/95/EC

8.22.3 ATEX Glands and Cables

Table 82: ATEX Glands and Cables

Marketing Model	Marketing Description	Item Description
IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_AR_1m	IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_1m-ARMORED	Pigtail 1m for SFP Cable Armored
IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_1m	IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_1m	Pigtail 1m for SFP Cable
IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_AR_1m	IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_1m-ARMORED	Pigtail 1m for DC Cable Armored
IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_1m	IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_1m	Pigtail 1m for DC Cable
IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_AR_1m	IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_1m-ARMORED	Pigtail 1m for Cat5E Cable Armored
IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_1m	IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_1m	Pigtail 1m for Cat5E Cable
IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_AR_0.2m	IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_0.2m-ARMORED	Pigtail 0.2m for SFP Cable Armored
IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_0.2m	IP-20_ATEX_FO_MM_0.2m	Pigtail 0.2m for SFP Cable
IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_AR_0.2m	IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_0.2m-ARMORED	Pigtail 0.2m for DC Cable Armored
IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_0.2m	IP-20_ATEX_DC_16AWG_0.2m	Pigtail 0.2m for DC Cable
IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_AR_0.2m	IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_0.2m-ARMORED	Pigtail 0.2m for Cat5E Cable Armored
IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_0.2m	IP-20_ATEX_RJ45_CAT5_0.2m	Pigtail 0.2m for Cat5E Cable
IP-20C_ATEX_ZONE2	IP-20C ATEX Zone 2	IP-20C ATEX Zone 2

9. Appendix A – Marketing Model Construction

This appendix explains how to read marketing models for the IP-20C. Constructing a marketing model for the purpose of equipment order should always be done using a configurator.

Note: Not all fields are always necessary to define a valid marketing model. If a specific field is not applicable, it should be omitted.

Table 83: IP-20C- PP-a-fw-xxxY-ccc-h-abc

Placeholder in Marketing Model	Description	Possible Values
PP	Power version	Blank for standard power HP – High Power
a	Regional standard	E-ETSI F-FCC Applicable only for 13GHz and up
f w	Frequency band	U5,7,6L,6H,7,8,10,11,13,15,18,23,24,26,28,32,38,42 When followed by w, indicates support for channels up to 80MHz as defined by FCC standards (11,18 GHz). For example: 11w.
xxxY	TX-RX separation and block indication(Ceragon internal)	xxx - TRS 3 figures in [MHz]. Y - Letter to indicate frequency block. Example: 266A The frequency block is a Ceragon internal parameter which defines different channelization using the same TRS and frequency band.
ccc	Channel indication or LOW/HIGH or blank	{Start ch}W{End ch} Example: 10W15
h	TX low / TX high indication	L – TX Low H – TX high
abc	Ethernet Ports Options. a- Port1, b-Port2, c-Port3	Port structure: E - Electrical, S - SFP, X – Data sharing port for MIMO application. X in this location denotes MIMO HW ready. Alternatively, 2E2SX is used for a model with two electrical ports, one SFP port, and one dual-use SFP or MIMO port.

The following are some examples of specific IP-20C marketing models based on the syntax specified above.

Table 84: IP-20C Marketing Model Example

Marketing Model Example	Explanation
IP-20C-E-15-315-4W7-H- ESX	IP-20C Dual Core, ETSI standard, 15GHz, TRS=315MHz, two identical diplexers covering channels 4 to 7, TX high, Ports: Electrical, SFP, Extension, MIMO HW ready
IP-20C-HP-11w-500-4W9-H-ESX	IP-20C, Dual Core, High Power, 11GHz, 80MHz channels support, 500MHz TRS, two identical diplexers covering channels 4-9 TX high, Ports: Electrical, SFP, Extension, MIMO HW ready
IP-20C-E-15-420-1W8-H-2E2SX	IP-20C Dual Core, ETSI standard, 15GHz, 420MHz TRS, two identical diplexers covering channels 1 to 8 TX high, Ports: Two Electrical, One SFP, Extension, MIMO HW ready

10. Appendix B – ATEX Certification

This appendix provides a sample ATEX certification certificates for IP-20C.



Physical-Technical Testing Institute
Ostrava - Radvanice



(1) Supplementary Type Examination Certificate No. 1

(2) **Equipment or Protective Systems Intended for Use
in Potentially Explosive Atmospheres
(Directive 2014/34/EU)**

(3) Type Examination Certificate number:

FTZÚ 15 ATEX 0157

(4) Product: **Microwave Link FibeAir Radio IP20C**

(5) Manufacturer: **Ceragon Networks AS**

(6) Address: **Espehaugen 32, 5258 Blomsterdalen, Norway**

(7) This supplementary certificate extends Type Examination Certificate No. FTZÚ 15 ATEX 0157 to apply to products designed and constructed in accordance with the specification set out in the Schedule of the said certificate but having any variations specified in the Schedule attached to this certificate and the documents therein referred to.

(8) The Physical-Technical Testing Institute certifies that this product, as modified by this supplementary certificate, has been found to comply with the Essential Health and Safety Requirements relating to the design and construction of products intended for use in potentially explosive atmospheres given in Annex II to the Directive 2014/34/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council, dated 26.02.2014.

(9) In accordance with Article 41 of Directive 2014/34/EU, Type Examination Certificates referring to 94/9/EC that were in existence prior to the date of application of 2014/34/EU (20.04.2016) may be referenced as if they were issued in accordance with Directive 2014/34/EU. Supplementary Certificates to such Type Examination Certificates, and new issues of such certificates, may continue to bear the original certificate number issued prior to 20.04.2016.

(10) Compliance with the Essential Health and Safety Requirements has been assured by compliance with:
EN 60079-0:2012, EN 60079-15:2010

(11) The marking of the product shall include the following:

 **II 3G Ex nR IIC T6 Gc**

(12) This certificate is valid till: **31.12.2020**

Responsible person:



Dipl. Ing. Lukáš Martinák
Head of Certification Body



Date of issue: 24.06.2016

Page: 1/2

This certificate is granted subject to the general conditions of the FTZÚ, s.p.
 This certificate may only be reproduced in its entirety and without any charge, schedule included.
 Physical-Technical Testing Institute, s.p., Pikařská 1337/7, 716 07 Ostrava - Radvanice, Czech Republic
 tel +420 595 223 111, fax +420 596 232 672, tzu@ftzu.cz, www.ftzu.cz

Figure 143: ATEX Certification for FibeAir IP-20C – Page 1 (Sample)



FYZIKÁLNĚ TECHNICKÝ ZKUŠEBNÍ ÚSTAV
Ostrava - Radvanice



(1) **Dodatek č. 1 k Certifikátu přezkoušení typu**

(2) Zařízení nebo ochranné systémy určené pro použití
v prostředí s nebezpečím výbuchu
podle směrnice 2014/34/EU (NV 116/2016 Sb.)

(3) Číslo certifikátu přezkoušení typu:

FTZÚ 15 ATEX 0157

(4) Výrobek: **Mikrovlnné směrové FibeAir Radio IP20C**

(5) Výrobce: **Ceragon Networks AS**

(6) Adresa: **Espehaugen 32, 5258 Blomsterdalen, Norsko**

(7) Tento dodatek rozšiřuje certifikát o přezkoušení typu č. FTZÚ 15 ATEX 0157, vztahující se k návrhu a konstrukci výrobku a je v souladu se specifikací stanovenou v popisu zmíněného certifikátu a jakékoliv jeho schválené varianty jsou specifikovány v popisu a v dokumentaci, jejíž seznam je uveden dále.

(8) FYZIKÁLNĚ TECHNICKÝ ZKUŠEBNÍ ÚSTAV potvrzuje, že u výše uvedeného výrobku bylo ověřeno splnění základních požadavků na ochranu zdraví a bezpečnost vztahujících se k návrhu a konstrukci produktu určeného pro použití v prostředí s nebezpečím výbuchu, které jsou uvedené v příloze II směrnice Evropského parlamentu a Rady č. 2014/34/EU z 26.02.2014.

(9) Certifikáty o přezkoušení typu vydané podle směrnice 94/9/ES a platné před účinností směrnice 2014/34/EU (20.04.2016), mohou být, v souladu s článkem 41 směrnice 2014/34/EU, považovány za certifikáty vydané ve shodě se směrnicí 2014/34/EU. Dodatky k těmto certifikátům o přezkoušení typu mohou nést i nadále původní číslo certifikátu vydaného před 20.04.2016.

(10) Bezpečnost výrobku byla ověřena podle norem:

ČSN EN 60079-0:2013

ČSN EN 60079-15:2010

(11) Označení výrobku musí obsahovat:

II 3G Ex nR IIC T6 Gc

(12) Tento certifikát platí do: **31.12.2020**

Odpovědná osoba:

Ing. Lukáš Martinák
vedoucí certifikačního orgánu



Datum vydání: 24.06.2016

Strana: 1/2

Vydání tohoto certifikátu je podmíněno plněním všeobecných podmínek FTZÚ, s.p.
Tento certifikát může být rozmnožován pouze vcelku a bez jakýchkoliv změn (včetně dalších stran).
FYZIKÁLNĚ TECHNICKÝ ZKUŠEBNÍ ÚSTAV, státní podnik, Píkařská 1337/7, 716 07 Ostrava - Radvanice
tel +420 595 223 111, fax +420 595 232 672, ftzu@ftzu.cz, www.ftzu.cz

Figure 144: ATEX Certification for FibeAir IP-20C – Page 2 (Sample)